R E P O R T R E S U M E S

ED 014 046 AL 000 592

CHINESE-MANDARIN, LEVEL I.
BY- HSU, KAI-YU AND OTHERS
SAN FRANCISCO STATE COLL., CALIF.
REPORT NUMBER BR-5-1091-1 PUB DATE 65
CONTRACT OEC-6-14-008
EDRS PRICE MF-$2.00 HC-$20.60 513P.

DESCRIPTORS- *MANDARIN CHINESE, *HIGH SCHOOL CURRICULUM, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, CHINESE CULTURE, AUDIOLINGUAL SKILLS, *JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS, *SECONDARY SCHOOLS, PATTERN DRILLS (LANGUAGE), GRADE 9, BEGINNING READING, TAPE RECORDINGS, CALIFORNIA,

THIS TEXTBOOK, THE FIRST OF A FOUR-VOLUME SERIES, WAS WRITTEN FOR 9TH GRADE AMERICAN STUDENTS BEGINNING CHINESE LANGUAGE STUDY, BUT CAN ALSO BE MODIFIED FOR USE IN 7TH OR 8TH GRADE CLASSES. THE 15 UNITS BEGIN WITH A SHORT DIALOGUE WHICH INTRODUCES NEW VOCABULARY AND SENTENCE PATTERNS. THE DIALOGUES ARE EXPLAINED THROUGH PICTURES AS WELL AS A RESUME AND TRANSLATION IN ENGLISH. EACH NEW GRAMMAR POINT IS EXPLAINED ON A NON-TECHNICAL LEVEL AND NUMEROUS ORAL DRILLS REINFORCE THE PATTERNS ALREADY PRESENTED. FURTHER AIDS TO THE STUDENT AND TEACHER ARE CULTURAL EXPLANATIONS, PEDAGOGICAL SUGGESTIONS, INSTRUCTIONS FOR PREPARATION AND USE OF TAPE RECORDINGS, AND AN APPENDED SECTION INTRODUCING THE CHINESE WRITING SYSTEM IN CORRELATION WITH THE TEXT UNITS. YALE ROMANIZATION IS USED THROUGHOUT. THE DIALOGUES REFLECT COMMON INTERESTS OF AMERICAN AND CHINESE HIGH SCHOOL AGE STUDENTS. THE ALTOAN PRESS, PALO ALTO, CALIFORNIA, IS THE PUBLISHER OF THESE TEXTBOOKS. (JD)

CHINESE-MANDARIN

Level I

Kai-yu Hsu
Henry Yang
John Liao
Alan Fong

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY Kai-Yu Hsu

TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U.S. OFFICE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER."

The Altoan Press, Palo Alto, California, 1965

Chinese-Mandarin I

This text, the first of a series of four levels, was developed by the Chinese-Mandarin Project at San Francisco State College with support from the United States Office of Education. The publication in the present form has been made possible through cooperation with the Carnegie Chinese Project, also at San Francisco State College.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 66-63239
Copyright c 1965 by Kai-yu Hsu
All rights reserved
Printed in the United States of America
First edition

FOREWORD

Before appearing in its present form, this book has gone through five major revisions which took into consideration the experience of 52 pilot classes over three years. To the numerous scholars, teachers, and students who have generously contributed to the improvement of the book, the authors wish to express their deep gratitude.

Originally the book, first of a four-volume series, was designed to appear in two versions, one for the student and the other for the teacher. Technical difficulty has made it necessary to modify the plan. Such adjustments, easily detected from a comparison of the description in the Teacher's Handbook and this volume, should not noticeably inconvenience the user. The Teacher's Handbook, issued separately, has been prepared for the entire series and should be consulted first as it contains full statements on what is in the book and how it could best be used.

No textbook is ever through revising. The authors continue to welcome any and all comments.

Kai-yu Hsu
San Francisco State College

December 1965

Chinese-Mandarin I

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIALOGUE AND DRILLS

Unit I The First Day of School 1
Unit II Conversation During Class Break 21
Unit III Going to the Library 46
Unit IV Going to the Dining Room 71
Unit V Shopping for Stationery 96
Unit VI Returning Home after School 122
Unit VII A Telephone Conversation 143
Unit VIII New Year Greeting 165
Unit IX A Festive Day at School 186
Unit X Going to a Movie 212
Unit XI Going to the Post Office 236
Unit XII A Train Ride 263
Unit XIII A Visit to the Clinic 293
Unit XIV Watching a Ball Game 318
Unit XV Planning a Summer Vacation 342

CHINESE CHARACTERS 370

APPENDIX I

Abbreviations 454

APPENDIX II

Structural Patterns 455

APPENDIX III

Vocabulary 458

Chinese-Mandarin I

UNIT I

THE FIRST DAY OF SCHOOL

On the first day of school, Student A encounters his teacher, Mr. Wáng, at the entrance to the school. He greets his teacher. A moment later his schoolmate, Student B, also arrives at the gate. The students exchange remarks and proceed to enter the school.

DIALOGUE

Sywésheng Yī:	Lǎushr̄ dzǎu.
Wáng Lǎushr̄:	Dzǎu, nǐ hǎu a!
Sywésheng Yī:	Hǎu. Lǎushr̄, nín máng bumáng.
Wáng Lǎushr̄:	Wǒ hěn máng, nǐ bùmáng ma?
Sywésheng Yī:	Wǒ bùhěn máng.
Wáng Lǎushr̄:	Dzàijyàn.
Sywésheng Yī:	Lǎushr̄ dzàijyàn.
Sywésheng Èr:	Tā shì shéi a?
Sywésheng Yī:	Tā shì Wáng Lǎushr̄.
Sywésheng Èr:	Tā shì Yīngwen laushr̄ ma?
Sywésheng Yī:	Tā búshì Yīngwen laushr̄. Tā shì Jūngwen laushr̄.

Student A:	Good morning, sir.
Mr. Wang:	Good morning, how are you!
Student A:	Fine. Are you busy?
Mr. Wang:	I am very busy. Aren't you?
Student A:	Not too busy.
Mr. Wang:	Good-bye.
Student A:	Good-bye, sir.

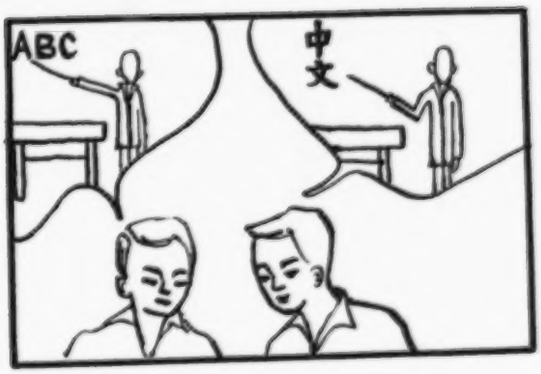
Student B:	Who is he?
Student A:	He is Mr. Wáng.
Student B:	Is he an English teacher?
Student A:	He is not a teacher of English.
	He is a teacher of Chinese.

Lǎushr̄ dzǎu.
Dzǎu, nǐ hǎu a!

Hǎu. Lǎushr̄, nǐn
máng bùmáng.
Wǒ hěn máng. Nǐ
bùmáng ma?
Wǒ bùhěn máng.

Dzàijyàn.
Lǎushr̄ dzàijyàn.

Tā shì shéi a?
Tā shì Wáng Lǎushī.



Tā shì Yīngwen
laushī ma?
Tā búshì Yīngwen
laushī. Tā shì
Jūngwen laushī.

THE SOUNDS

1. Initials

The following are the initials introduced in Unit I:

dz	dzǎu, dzàijyàn
n	nǐ, nín
t	tā
sh	shì, lǎushī, shéi, sywésheng
w	Wáng, Yīngwén, wǒ
l	lǎushī
y	Yīngwén, yī
m	ma, -men, máng
j (retroflex)	Jūngwén
h	hǎu, hěn
b	bù
s(y)	sywésheng
j(y)	dzàijyàn

2. Finals

The following are the finals introduced in Unit I:

au	dzǎu, lǎushī, hǎu
i	nǐ
a	tā, ma
r	shì, lǎushī
ei	shéi
ang	Wáng, máng
ing	Yīngwén
u	bù
ung	Jungwén
en	wǒmen, nǐmen, tāmen, hěn, Yīngwén, Jungwén
o	Wǒ
ai	dzàijyàn
an (y)	dzàijyàn

in	nín
e (yw)	sywésheng
eng	sywésheng

3. Tones

a. There are in this lesson the following examples of tone sandhi:

Nǐ hǎu becomes Nǐ hǎu

Hěn máng becomes hěn (pronounced low but without a rising ending) máng

b. The lau in Yīngwen laushī becomes toneless because the natural flow of the sounds does not, if without any special reason for it, make the speaker dip his pitch for lau. Hereafter in this text, all unstressed syllables are shown without tone marks. The stress in a sentence often varies according to the mood and intention of the speaker, and even in normal circumstances the stress on certain words may be optional instead of obligatory.

c. The negative adverb bù is pronounced with a falling tone, except when it is followed by another falling tone, in which case it changes to a rising tone:

bùmáng, bùhěn, but búshì.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

Wáng	a common Chinese surname
lǎushī	teacher (especially used when a student addresses his teacher)
Yīngwén	the English language
Jūngwén	the Chinese language

2. Pronoun

wǒ	I; me
nǐ	you (singular)

	tā	he; him
	nǐn	a polite form of nǐ, commonly used in North China
	shéi	who
3.	Verb	
	shì	be
4.	Adjective	
	hǎu	good; well
	máng	busy
5.	Adverb	
	hěn	very; quite
	bù	not; no (to facilitate reading the Romanized transcription, bu will be attached to the word it qualifies.)
6.	Particle	
	ma	sentence suffix used to convert a declarative sentence into an interrogative sentence. Tā shì Yīngwen laushī ma? Nǐ bùmáng ma?
	a	sentence suffix, suggesting exclamation Tā shì shéi a?
7.	Idiomatic Expression	
	dzàijyàn	goodbye; see you again
	dzǎu	good morning
	Nǐ hǎu a?	How are you?

Chinese-Mandarin I

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

Lǐ	a Chinese surname
sywésheng	student
syānsheng	Mr.; sir

2. Pronoun

wǒmen	we; us
nǐmen	you (plural)
tāmen	they; them

3. Verb

wèn	ask

4. Number

yī	one
èr	two

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Simple sentence with adjective — S Adj

   Nǐ hǎu (a).

2. Simple sentence with adverbial modifier — S A Adj

   Wǒ hěn máng.

3. Equational sentence — S V N

   Tā shì shéi (a)?

   Tā shì Wáng Lǎushī.

4. Nouns modified by other nouns — N N

   Jūngwen laushī.

   But Wáng Lǎushī is an apposition.

5. Negative sentence with the negative adverb bù attached to verbs, adjectives, or adverbs.

   Tā búshì Yīngwen laushī.

   Nǐ bùmáng ma?

   Wǒ bùhén máng.

6. Question forms

a. The most common type of question is structured by adding the article ma to a statement. The word order of the sentence, whether negative or affirmative, is not changed.

Declarative (affirmative): Tā shì Yīngwen laushī.

Interrogative: Tā shì Yīngwen laushī ma?

A question of the simple type may also take the negative form:

Declarative (negative): Tā bùmáng.

Interrogative: Tā bùmáng ma?

b. Another common pattern for a question is the choice type, formed by coupling the positive and negative forms of a verb or adjective. The stress always falls on the first or positive half of the verb or adjective unit in this type of question:

Declarative: Nín máng.

Interrogative: Nín máng bumáng?

Note: The particle ma is not used in a choice type question.

c. A question may be formed by the use of "question words"; e.g., shéi, shémma (who, what), etc. When using these question words in English, the word order of a statement is changed in order to make a question. Thus, "Who is he?" In Chinese, the same word order is used for both the declarative and the interrogative:

Tā shì shéi (a)?

Tā shì Wáng Lǎushī.

7. Answer forms

a. Answers to questions calling for "yes" or "no" answers are formed by repeating the verb of the question with or without a modifier.

Lǎushī máng bumáng?

Wǒ hěn máng. (or Wǒ máng; or Wǒ bùmáng.)

b. In short answers the subject is frequently omitted.

Tā shì shéi a?	Lǎushī máng bumáng?
Shì Wáng Lǎushī.	Hěn máng.

8. Form of address

The proper name always precedes the title or any form of address:

Wáng Lǎushī

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

a. In this unit a few most common expressions used in daily greetings are presented. Nǐn dzǎu (Good morning, or You are early) and Nǐ hǎu a! (How are you, or You are well) are such expressions. An a is frequently suffixed but never stressed. In addition, it must be borne in mind that some Chinese still quite commonly greet each other by asking "Have you eaten (breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc. depending on the appropriate hour)?" or "Where are you going?" A slight bow usually accompanies. Handshaking is practiced among familiar friends or on very formal presentations. A teacher almost never shakes hands with his students.

b. The most common way of addressing a person politely in Chinese society is syānsheng which may be applied to men and not infrequently to women. The Chinese high school student, however, invariably addresses his teacher, man or woman, as lǎushī, placing it after the teacher's surname when a surname is used.

c. As in most other living languages, there are several common expressions in Chinese used at the parting of two conversants. Dzàijyàn is but one of them and perhaps the most generally used.

2. Pedagogical Notes

a. During the very first hour, explain briefly the principles of learning a foreign language and what the students are expected to do and why.

b. Describe briefly, with the aid of a wall map, the land and the people of China, and the main significance of her culture.

c. Introduce one or two exchanges of classroom expressions each until all the needed expressions, as listed in The Teacher's Handbook, p. 55, are learned.

d. Use chalk board or a felt board to illustrate the situation of the unit and the characters involved.

e. As has been discussed in The Teacher's Handbook, pp. 43-46 under the "Unit Teaching Procedures," the teacher is to keep constantly in mind the precise objectives of each unit. In this unit the teacher's responsibility is to familiarize the student with the sound patterns, structural features, and vocabulary items and their functions thus far introduced. These points are described in the notes.

f. It is to be noted that the answer forms explained in the notes and elsewhere are not identified as separate forms. The answer forms are, strictly speaking, not new forms drastically different from the question forms. To stress them as clearly identifiable forms might mislead the student into thinking that there are too many sentence patterns to be mastered.

g. In the "Progress Evaluation" at the end of this unit, there is a section designed to check on the student's "Reading". This means, at this stage, an evaluation of the student's ability to recognize the romanized transcription and to use it effectively as a helpful tool to his future study. This section of evaluation cannot be

used until the transcription system has been explained, drilled, and learned.

A reminder: If your students have not yet mastered the sounds you have taught them so far, don't show them the transcription because it will tend to mislead them and make their imitation of the correct models twice as difficult. In such a case, just postpone the use of this part of the evaluation.

If the students have already become quite fluent in reproducing the dialogue and its variations with correct pronunciation, and if it is observed that they are inventing their own transcription system, then you may proceed with the introduction of the Romanization system. Don't give it to them all at once. Give them enough only to cover the sounds they have already learned. Exercises and drills similar to the "Reading" in the evaluation section may be easily structured and used as variations from the classroom oral drill whenever needed.

FLUENCY DRILL

Dzǎu
Nǐn dzǎu
Lǎushr̄ dzǎu.
Wáng Lǎushr̄ dzǎu.

Hǎu
Nǐn hǎu.
Nǐn hǎu ma?
Lǎushr̄, nǐn hǎu a!

Máng.
Nǐn máng.
Lǎushr̄ máng.
Wáng Lǎushr̄ máng.

Máng.
Bùmáng.
Máng bumáng?
Nǐmen máng bumáng?
Tām̄en máng bumáng?

Máng.
Hěn máng.
Bùhěn máng.
Wǒ bùhěn máng.
Wǒmen bùhěn máng.

Máng.
Bùmáng.
Wǒ bùmáng.
Nǐ bùmáng.
Tā bùmáng.

Lǎushr̄.
Lǐ Lǎushr̄.
Shì Lǐ Lǎushr̄.
Tā shì Lǐ Lǎushr̄.

Sywésheng.
Shì sywésheng.
Búshr sywésheng.
Tā búshr sywésheng.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr̄ Sywésheng

Adjectives

(Student repeats after the model.)

Nǐn dzǎu.
Lǎushr̄ dzǎu.
Nǐn hǎu a!
Lǎushr, nǐn hǎu a!
Wǒmen hěn máng.
Tāmen bùhěn máng.

Shì

Wǒ shì sywésheng.
Nǐ shì sywésheng.
Tā shì lǎushr̄.
Tā shì Wáng Lǎushr̄.
Nǐn shì Jūngwen laushr̄.
Lǐ Lǎushr̄ shì Yīngwen laushr̄.

Búshì

Wǒ búshì lǎushr̄.
Nǐ búshì lǎushr̄.
Tā búshì sywésheng.
Nǐn búshì sywésheng.
Wáng Lǎushr̄ búshì Yīngwen laushr̄.
Lǐ Lǎushr̄ búshì Jūngwen laushr̄.

Chinese-Mandarin I

Question Form - Ma

Tā máng ma?

Nǐ hěn máng ma?

Tā shì sywésheng ma?

Nín shì lǎushī ma?

Lǐ Lǎushī shì Jūngwen laushī ma?

Question Form - Negative

Tā bùmáng ma?

Tāmen bùmáng ma?

Nǐmen búshì sywésheng ma?

Nín búshì Wáng Lǎushī ma?

Tā búshì Jūngwen laushī ma?

Lǐ Lǎushī búshì Yīngwen laushī ma?

Question Form - Choice-Type

Nín máng bumáng?

Nǐ shì bushì sywésheng?

Lǐ Lǎushī máng bumáng?

Nǐmen shì bushì sywésheng?

Tāmen shì bushì lǎushī?

Lǐ syānsheng shì bushì lǎushī?

Question Form - Question Word

Tā shì shéi a?

Nín shì shéi a?

Lǐ Lǎushī shì shéi a?

Wáng Lǎushī shì shéi a?

Lǐ Syānsheng shì shéi a?

Wáng Syānsheng shì shéi a?

Chinese-Mandarin I

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Laushr	Sywesheng
Nǐ máng ma?	Nǐ máng ma?
Tā	Tā máng ma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen máng ma?
Tāmen	Tāmen máng ma?
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī máng ma?
Lǐ Syānsheng	Lǐ Syānsheng máng ma?
Wǒ hěn máng.	Wǒ hěn máng.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen hěn máng.
Lǎushī	Lǎushī hěn máng.
Sywésheng	Sywésheng hěn máng.
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī hěn máng.
Wáng Syānsheng	Wáng Syānsheng hěn máng.
Tā bùmáng ma?	Tā bùmáng ma?
Nǐn	Nǐn bùmáng ma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen bùmáng ma?
Tāmen	Tāmen bùmáng ma?
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī bùmáng ma?
Lǐ Syānsheng	Lǐ Syānsheng bùmáng ma?
Wǒ bùmáng.	Wǒ bùmáng.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen bùmáng.
Lǎushī	Lǎushī bùmáng.
Sywésheng	Sywésheng bùmáng.
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī bùmáng.
Wáng Syānsheng	Wáng Syānsheng bùmáng.

Wǒ bùhěn máng.	Wǒ bùhěn máng.
Nǐ	Nǐ bùhěn máng.
Tā	Tā bùhěn máng.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen bùhěn máng.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen bùhěn máng.
Tāmen	Tāmen bùhěn máng.
Nǐ máng bumáng?	Nǐ máng bumáng?
Tā	Tā máng bumáng?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen máng bumáng?
Tāmen	Tāmen máng bumáng?
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī máng bumáng?
Lǐ Syānsheng.	Lǐ Syānsheng máng bumáng?
Tā shì shéi a?	Tā shì shéi a?
Nín	Nín shì shéi a?
Tāmen	Tāmen shì shéi a?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen shì shéi a?
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī shì shéi a?
Wáng Syānsheng	Wáng Syānsheng shì shéi a?
Wǒ shì sywésheng.	Wǒ shì sywésheng.
Nǐ	Nǐ shì sywésheng.
Tā	Tā shì sywésheng.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen shì sywésheng.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen shì sywésheng.
Tāmen	Tāmen shì sywésheng.
Tā shì Jūngwen laushī.	Tā shì Jūngwen laushī.
Wǒ	Wǒ shì Jūngwen laushī.
Tāmen	Tāmen shì Jūngwen laushī.

Wǒmen	Wǒmen shì Jūngwen laushī.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī shì Jūngwen laushī.
Lǐ Syānsheng	Lǐ Syānsheng shì Jūngwen laushī.
Wǒ búshì Yīngwen laushī.	Wǒ búshì Yīngwen laushī.
Tā	Tā búshì Yīngwen laushī.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen búshì Yīngwen laushī.
Tāmen	Tāmen búshì Yīngwen laushī.
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī búshì Yīngwen laushī.
Wáng Syānsheng	Wáng Syānsheng búshì Yīngwen laushī.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Lǎushī	Sywésheng
Nǐ hǎu a!	Nǐ hǎu a!
máng	Nǐ máng a!
Nǐmen	Nǐmen máng a!
hǎu	Nǐmen hǎu a!
Tā shì Jūngwen laushī.	Tā shì Jūngwen laushī.
Yīngwen laushī	Tā shì Yīngwen laushī.
Wǒ	Wǒ shì Yīngwen laushī.
sywésheng	Wǒ shì sywésheng.
Tā búshì Wáng Lǎushī.	Tā búshì Wáng Lǎushī.
Lǐ Syānsheng	Tā búshì Lǐ Syānsheng.
Nǐ	Nǐ búshì Lǐ Syānsheng.
Wáng Syānsheng	Nǐ búshì Wáng syānsheng.

Chinese-Mandarin I

RESPONSE DRILL

Lǎushr̄	Sywésheng
Nǐ máng ma?	
(hěn)	Wǒ hěn máng.
(bù)	Wǒ bùmáng.
(bùhěn)	Wǒ bùhěn máng.
Nǐ bùmáng ma?	
(hěn)	Wǒ hěn máng.
(bù)	Wǒ bùmáng.
(bùhěn)	Wǒ bùhěn máng.
Nǐmen máng bumáng?	
(hěn)	Wǒmen hěn máng.
(bù)	Wǒmen bùmáng.
(bùhěn)	Wǒmen bùhěn máng.
Tā shì shéi?	
(Wáng Lǎushr̄)	Tā shì Wáng Lǎushr̄.
(Lǐ Syānsheng)	Tā shì Lǐ Syānsheng.
(Yīngwen laushr̄)	Tā shì Yīngwen laushr̄.
(Jūngwen laushr̄)	Tā shì Jūngwen laushr̄.
Tā shì Wáng Lǎushr̄ ma?	
(shì)	Tā shì Wáng Lǎushr̄.
(búshì)	Tā búshì Wáng Lǎushr̄.
Tā búshì Lǐ Syānsheng ma?	
(shì)	Tā shì Lǐ Syānsheng.
(búshì)	Tā búshì Lǐ Syānsheng.
Tā shì bushì Jūngwen laushr̄?	
(shì)	Tā shì Jūngwen laushr̄.
(búshì)	Tā búshì Jūngwen laushr̄.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Lǎushr̄	Sywésheng
Nǐ wèn tā, tā shì shéi.	Nǐ shì shéi?
	Wǒ shì..... (student's name)
Nǐ wèn tā, tā máng bumáng.	Nǐ máng bumáng?
	Wó hěn máng.
	Wǒ bùmáng.
	Wǒ bùhěn máng.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā shì sywésheng ma?	Nǐ shì sywésheng ma?
	Wǒ shì sywésheng.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā shì lǎushr̄ ma?	Nǐ shì lǎushr̄ ma?
	Wǒ búshì lǎushr̄.
	Wǒ búshì lǎushr̄, wǒ shì sywésheng.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Wáng Lǎushr̄, nǐn hau a?
Wǒ hén hǎu.
Nǐn máng bumáng.
Wǒ bùhěn máng.
Lǐ Syānsheng shì shéi a?
Tā shì Jūngwen laushr̄.
Nǐn shì bushì Yīngwen laushr̄?
Wǒ búshì Yīngwen laushr̄. Wǒ shì sywésheng.
Tā shì Wáng Syānsheng ma?
Tā búshì Wáng Syānsheng. Tā shì Lǐ Syānsheng.

RHYMES

Wǒ dzǎu, nǐn dzǎu,
Lǎushr̄ dzǎu.
Wǒ máng, nǐ máng,
Tā bùmáng.
Wǒ hǎu, nǐn hǎu,
Lǎushr̄ hǎu.
Dzàijyàn, dzàijyàn,
Lǎushr̄ dzàijyàn.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Pronunciation (On tape - utterances are spaced to permit the student to imitate.)

   Lǎushr̄ dzǎu.
   Nǐ hǎu a.
   Nǐn máng bumáng.
   Wǒ shr̀ sywésheng.
   Wǒmen bùhěn máng.
   Tā shr̀ shéi a?
   Tā shr̀ Wáng Lǎushr̄ ma?
   Wǒ búshr̀ Jūngwen laushr̄.
   Lǐ Syānsheng shr̀ Yīngwen laushr̄.
   Dzàijyàn.

2. Listening and Speaking (Student listens to the tape and responds according to the proper sentence he has learned. Several correct responses to each utterance may be possible, but the most direct one taught and practiced in this unit is suggested in parentheses.)

   Dzǎu.
   (Nǐn dzǎu.)
   Nǐ hǎu a.
   (Hǎu.)

Nǐ máng bumáng?

(Wǒ bùhěn máng.)

Nǐ shì sywésheng ma?

(Wǒ shì sywésheng.)

Wáng Lǎushī shì Jūngwen laushī ma?

(Wáng Lǎushī shì Jūngwen laushī.)

Nǐ shì shéi a?

(Wǒ shì.....)

Dzàijyàn.

(Dzàijyàn.)

3. Reading (To be used after Romanization has been learned.)

Nǐn dzǎu.

Nǐmen máng ma?

Wǒ hěn máng.

Nǐ hǎu a.

Tā shì Jūngwen laushī.

Lǐ Syānsheng shì Yīngwen laushī.

Tā shì shéi a?

Wǒ shì sywésheng.

Lǎushī dzàijyàn.

UNIT II

CONVERSATION DURING CLASS BREAK

Two students (the first one preferably a girl) talk about their clothing, schoolwork, and after school life at home, during a class break.

DIALOGUE

Sywésheng Yī: Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.

Sywésheng Èr: Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn.

Sywésheng Yī: Nǎrde hwà!

Sywésheng Èr: Jīntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Yīngwén?

Sywésheng Yī: Wǒ méiyou Yīngwén, wó yǒu Jūngwén.

Sywésheng Èr: Nǐde jūngwen laushī shì bushì Jūnggwo ren?

Sywésheng Yī: Tā búshì Jūnggwo ren, tā shì Měigwo ren.

Sywésheng Èr: Jūngwén nán, Yīngwén nán?

Sywésheng Yī: Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu bùnán.

Sywésheng Èr: Nǐ syīhwan dzrán, syīhwan shèhwèi?

Sywésheng Yī: Dzrán, shèhwèi, wǒ dōu syīhwan.

Sywésheng Èr: Nǐ jīntyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?

Sywésheng Yī: Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.

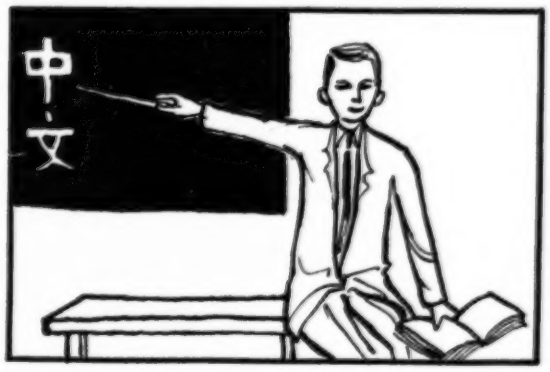
Sywésheng Èr: Nǐ kàn dyànshì bukàn?

Sywésheng Yī: Wǒ chángchang kàn dyànshì.

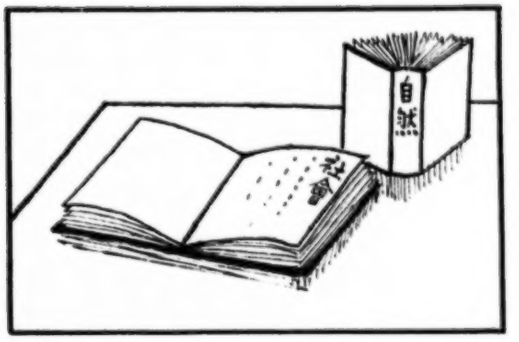
Student A:	Jāng Měi-fang's clothes are pretty.
Student B:	So are yours.
Student A:	Thank you! (No, that's not true!)
Student B:	Do you have English today?
Student A:	I don't have English, I have Chinese.
Student B:	Is your Chinese teacher a Chinese?
Student A:	He is not Chinese, he is American.
Student B:	Is Chinese difficult, or is English difficult? (Which is more difficult, Chinese or English?)
Student A:	Both Chinese and English are not difficult.
Student B:	Do you like natural science or social science?
Student A:	I like both natural and social science.
Student B:	What are you doing this evening?
Student A:	I'll play some records this evening.
Student B:	Do you ever watch television?
Student A:	I watch television quite often.

Jāng Měi-fāngde
yīshang hén hǎukàn.
Nǐde yīshang yé
hǎukàn.
Nǎrde hwà!

Nǐde Jūngwén lǎushī
shì bushì Jūnggwo
rén?
Tā búshr Jūnggwo ren,
tā shì Měigwo ren.



Jūngwén nán, Yīngwén
nán?
Jūngwén Yīngwén dōu
bùnán.



Nǐ syǐhwan dàzrán,
syǐhwan shèhwèi?
Dàzrán shèhwèi, wǒ
dōu syǐhwan.

Nǐ jīntyan wǎnshang
dzwò shémma?
Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang
tīng chàngpyār.

Nǐ kàn dyànshì bukàn?
Wǒ chángchang kàn
dyànshì.

Chinese-Mandarin I

THE SOUNDS

1. Initials

The following are the new initials introduced in Unit II:

f	Měi-fāng
k	hǎukàn, kàn
d	nǐde, dōu, dyànshì
g	Jūnggwo, Měigwo
r	rén, rúngyi, Dìrán
ch (retroflex)	chàngpyār, chángchang
ch(y,i)	chyántyan
p	chàngpyār

2. Finals

The following are the new finals introduced in Unit II:

e	-de, shèhwèi, shémma
ou	yǒu, dōu, hòutyan
ar	chàngpyār
an	dìrán

3. Tones

As has been explained in "Some Basic Facts about the Chinese Language," Handbook, p. 20, the Chinese syllable transcribed as yǒu sounds like the English word "you" when pronounced with the first or second tone. With a third or fourth tone, however, it sounds rather like the "yeo" in "yeoman."

VOCABULARY

1. Nouns

Jāng	one of the most common Chinese surnames
Měi-fāng	a Chinese girl's name
yīshang	clothes
rén	man; person
dìrán	natural science

shèhwèi — social science
changpyār — phonograph record
dyànshì — television

2. Place Word

Jūnggwo — China
Měigwo — America (U.S.A.)

Names of non-Chinese countries are mostly transliterations; i.e., approximations of the sounds of their native names. Thus, America becomes Měi-lì-jyān, or in abbreviation, Měi plus the ending -gwo (nation, country). Many Asian countries, however, are known to the Chinese by their ancient names mentioned in Chinese history.

England	Yīnggwo
Russia	Ègwo
France	Fàgwo
Germany	Dégwo
Italy	Yìgwo
Spain	Syībānyá
Japan	Rběn (Mandarin pronunciation of native name)

3. Pronoun

shémma — what?

4. Adjective

hǎukàn — good-looking
nán — difficult

5. Verb

yǒu — have
syǐhwan — like; be fond of
dzwò — do

tīng	listen
kàn	watch; look

6. Adverb

yě	also; too
dōu	all; both; in all cases
chángchang	often; usually. Frequently abbreviated into a monosyllabic cháng. When in the negative, it is always bùcháng.
méi	no; not; have not; did not. Méi is the only adverb used for the verb yǒu to make a negative statement.

Note: As with the negative adverb bù, méi in transcription will be attached to the word it qualifies. (cf. Unit I)

7. Time Word

jīntyan	today
wǎnshang	evening; night

In indicating time "when", a time word, such as jīntyan, is made the topic (or one of the topics) of the sentence. (cf. Teacher's Handbook, pp. 32-33). If the time word is considered to be the most important element under discussion, it comes first; otherwise, it will be the second topic within the predicate.

Jīntyan nǐ méiyou Yīngwén ma?

Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.

In the first example, jīntyan is the main topic under discussion. The whole point of the sentence is to say something about today; hence, jīntyan is in the first position, and, hence, the principle topic. In the second example, wǒ is the main topic, not jīntyan wǎnshang. Of course, if the speaker stresses with his voice one instead of the other topic as the focus of attention, then the above distinction

between the main and the secondary topic according to their positions in the sentence may not hold.

8. Particle

-de	noun suffix which makes a modifier out of the noun to which it is attached.
	Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hěn hǎukàn.
	Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn.

9. Idiomatic Expression

nărde hwà.	not at all (polite expression, always accompanied by a smile, used to decline a compliment)

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

-wen	-language
Fàwén	French
Déwén	German
Syībānyáwén	Spanish
-yī	-garment
máuyī	sweater
dàyī	overcoat

2. Place Word

-gwo	-country; -nation
Fàgwo	France
Dégwo	Germany
Syībānyá	Spain

3. Adjective

rúngyi	easy

4. Time Word

-tyan	-day
míngtyan	tomorrow
dzwótyan	yesterday

hòutyan	the day after tomorrow
chyántyan	the day before yesterday
dzǎushang	morning

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Subject-Verb-Object sentences — S V O

   Wǒ yǒu Jūngwén.

   Wǒ chángchang kàn dyànshì.

2. Multiple subjects with dōu — or — S,S...dōu V / S,S...dōu Adj

   Jūngwén, Yīngwén dōu rúngyi. — Both Chinese and English are easy.

3. Inverted SVO sentences — O S V

   Dìzrán, shèhwèi, wǒ dōu syīhwan

   Multiple inverted subjects are also usually summarized by the adverb dōu just before the verb.

4. Negative sentence with negative adverb méi attached to verb yǒu. — S méiyou

   Wǒ méiyou Yīngwén. (or, Wǒ méi Yīngwén.)

5. Different positions of adverb dōu make different senses:

   Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu rúngyi. — Both Chinese and English are easy.

   Jūngwén, Yīngwén, bùdōu rúngyi. — Not both Chinese and English are easy.

   Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu bùrúngyi. — Neither Chinese nor English is easy.

6. Question forms

   a. A choice-type question with object may be expressed in two ways:

      (1) The object may stand between the positive and negative forms of the verb: — S V O negV?

      Nǐ kàn dyànshì bukàn?

      (2) The object may follow both verb forms: — S V negV O?

Nǐ yǒu méiyou Yīngwén?

Nǐde lǎushī shì bushì Jūnggwo ren?

b. Choice between two subjects

Alternative subjects may be used with both adjectives and verbs: S Adj, S Adj? or S V, S V?

Jūngwén nán, Yīngwén nán?

c. Choice between two predicates

The choice may occur between two predicates, either differing in the verb or the object, or both. S V O, V O?

Nǐ syǐhwan dǎrán, syǐhwan shèhwei?

7. Noun with suffix -de to modify another noun N-de N

In Unit I we have studied the function of a noun modifying another noun; e.g., Jūnggwo shū. As a general rule, the appearance of the suffix -de makes the word or phrase preceding it a modifying or possessive unit. Thus, in Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang, the de makes Jāng Měi-fāng a possessor qualifying yīshang. By the same token Nǐde lǎushī means "your teacher," and Jūnggwode shū becomes "the books of China," or "China's books," but Jūnggwo shū ordinarily suggests "Chinese books," (books in Chinese). Where a suffix -de can or cannot be omitted and if omitted what difference it makes in meaning is a rather complex question. Without going into details we may use as a rule of thumb that the -de is omitted when the modifier and the modified words are too commonly associated together, or when the modifier is monosyllabic.

8. Surname always precedes given name

Jāng Měi-fang

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

   a. The Chinese names of many Asian countries are inherited from the references to these lands in ancient Chinese historical records, such as Cháusyān or Gāulì for Korea. Japan's name is her own, pronounced "nihon" in Japanese but Rběn in Mandarin. Some of these names have clearly identifiable meanings; e.g., Rběn in Chinese means, as well as in Japanese, "the place where the sun rises." Other names have had archaic senses but are no longer commonly remembered. Jūnggwo for China means, "the central nation, or the central kingdom," as the Chinese used to think that their country was at the center of the universe. The English name "China" comes from an ancient Chinese dynasty, the Chin Dynasty of the Third Century, B.C. The Chinese words used in transliterating foreign nations' names may have certain meanings, but these meanings are to be ignored because the words are used to represent sounds only.

   b. The life of Chinese high school students dealt with in this unit clearly does not coincide completely with the way of life of American high school students. The common ground, however, appears to be steadily expanding, so that it has become quite universal among Chinese students to talk about listening to phonograph records at home after school. Television, wherever it is available, also draws a great deal of attention among the high school students. Other than these recreational activities, the Chinese high school student may quite often have parties, go to visit his schoolmates at their homes, or enjoy a variety of sports, but more often he has to stay home to help his parents a bit and apply himself to homework.

c. The regular secondary curriculum in China is parallel to its American counterpart. The Chinese high school students are given the same range of subjects as the American students. The only significant difference seems to be that such subjects as history and geography are separate courses in the Chinese curriculum. They are not combined in social studies as in most American high schools. The hours of study per week are also about the same.

2. Pedagogical Notes

a. Beginning in this unit, certain sentence patterns already introduced and learned in Unit I are repeated. The teacher is to pay special attention to the repetitive appearance of these familiar patterns, just as with the already familiar vocabulary items, and drill the students with them in order to reinforce their command of the material.

b. Use chalk board or a felt board to illustrate the situation and the characters involved.

c. If props are conveniently available, arrange to have in the classroom two new garments; a set of textbooks of Chinese, English, Social Science, and Natural Science; a phonograph and a television. Label these articles in Chinese (Romanization). Use large posters showing these articles if props are not available. While the phonograph is in the classroom, use a few minutes during the hour when phonograph records are mentioned to listen to some Chinese music.

d. When drilling with such expressions as "watch," "listen," "Chinese," and "American," use enough illustrations to make the meanings of these words as concrete as possible. The students will then be able to retain the words more readily.

e. Toward the end of the unit, after the students have mastered all the drills and the dialogue, assign the students to do individual role-playing for a few minutes every hour to ascertain that they can use the dialogue naturally and that they are not merely producing a mechanical recitation.

FLUENCY DRILL

Hǎukàn.
Yīshang hǎukàn.
Yīshang hén hǎukàn.
Wǒde yīshang hén hǎukàn.
Nǐde yīshang yé hén hǎukàn.
Wǒmende yīshang dōu hén hǎukàn.

Kàn.
Kàn dyànshì.
Wǒ kàn dyànshì.
Nǐ búkàn dyànshì.
Tā yě búkàn dyànshì.
Tāmen dōu búkàn dyànshì.

Yǒu.
Yǒu Yīngwén.
Méiyou Yīngwén.
Wǒ méiyou Yīngwén.
Tā yě méiyou Yīngwén.
Wǒmen dōu méiyou Yīngwén.

Rén.
Jūnggwo ren.
Shì Jūnggwo ren.
Tā shì Jūnggwo ren.
Nǐ yě shì Jūnggwo ren.
Tāmen dōu shì Jūnggwo ren.

Syīhwan.
Wǒ syīhwan.
Nǐ bùsyīhwan.

Tīng.
Chángchang tīng.
Chángchang tīng chàngpyār.
Tā chángchang tīng chàngpyār.
Nǐmen bùcháng tīng chàngpyār.
Tāmen yě bùcháng tīng chàng-pyār.
Wǒmen dōu bùcháng tīng chàng-pyār.

Tā yě bùsyīhwan.
Lǐ Syānsheng yě bùsyīhwan.
Nǐmen dōu bùsyīhwan.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr̄ — Sywésheng

-De

Wǒde yīshang hén hǎukàn. (Student repeats after
Nǐde yīshang hén hǎukàn. the model.)
Tāmende yīshang hén hǎukàn.
Wáng Lǎushr̄de yīshang hén hǎukàn.
Lǐ Syānshengde yīshang hén hǎukàn.
Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.

Yě

Tāde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Nǐmende yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Lǐ Lǎushr̄de yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Wáng Syānshengde yīshang yé hǎukàn.

Yǒu méiyou

Jīntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Jūngwén?
Míngtyan tā yǒu méiyou Yīngwén?
Hòutyan nǐmen yǒu méiyou dìzrán?
Dzwótyan nǐn yǒu méiyou shèhwèi?
Chyántyan tā yǒu méiyou Syībānyáwén?

Méiyou..., ...yǒu...

Wǒ méiyou Jūngwén, wǒ yǒu Yīngwén.
Nǐ méiyou Fàwén, nǐ yǒu Déwén.
Tāmen méiyou dìzrán, tāmen yǒu shèhwèi.
Wǒmen méiyou Yīngwén, wǒmen yǒu Fàwén.
Nǐmen méiyou Déwén, nǐmen yǒu Syībānyáwén.
Jāng Měi-fāng méiyou shèhwèi, tā yǒu Jūngwén.

Shì búshì?

Nǐn shì bushì Jūnggwo ren?
Tā shì bushì Měigwo ren?
Nǐmen shì bushì Dégwo ren?
Tāmen shì bushì Fàgwo ren?
Lǐ Lǎushī shì bushì Syībānyá ren?
Wáng Syānsheng shì bushì Jūnggwo ren?

Búshì (X), shì (Y)

Wǒ búshì lǎushī, wǒ shì sywésheng.
Tā búshì Měigwo ren, tā shì Fàgwo ren.
Wǒmen búshì Dégwo ren, wǒmen shì Syībānyá ren.
Tā búshì Wáng Syānsheng, tā shì Lǐ Syānsheng.
Tāmen búshì Yīngwen laushī, tāmen shì Jūngwen laushī.
Jāng Syānsheng búshì Fàgwo ren, tā shì Jūnggwo ren.

Dōu

Jūngwén Yīngwén dōu bùnán.
Dìzrán shèhwèi dōu rúngyi.
Wǒmen dōu shì Měigwo rén.
Tāmen dōu búshì Jūnggwo rén.
Fàwén, Déwén, wǒ dōu syǐhwan.
Dìzrán, shèwèi, wǒ dōu bùsyǐhwan.

Dzwò shémma?

Nǐ jīntyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?
Tā míngtyan dzǎushang dzwò shémma?
Nǐn hòutyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?
Lǐ Lǎushī dzwótyan dzǎushang dzwò shémma?
Wáng Syānsheng chyántyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?
Jāng Měi-fāng jīntyan dzǎushang dzwò shémma?

Tīng

Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Tā míngtyan dzǎushang tīng chàngpyār.
Wǒ hòutyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Lǐ Lǎushī dzwótyan dzǎushang tīng chàngpyār.

Wáng Syānsheng chyántyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.

Jāng Měi-fāng jīntyan dzǎushang tīng chàngpyār.

Kàn ... búkàn?

Nǐ kàn dyànshì búkàn?

Tā kàn dyànshì búkàn?

Nǐmen kàn dyànshì búkàn?

Wáng Lǎushī kàn dyànshì búkàn?

Lǐ Syānsheng kàn dyànshì búkàn?

Jāng Měi-fāng kàn dyànshì búkàn?

(X) Nán, (Y) nán?

Jūngwén nán, Yīngwén nán?

Fàwén nán, Déwén nán?

Dìzrán nán, shèhwèi nán?

Déwén nán, Syībānyáwén nán?

Shèhwèi nán, Yīngwén nán?

Syībānyáwén nán, Jūngwén nán?

Syǐhwan (X), syǐhwan (Y)?

Nǐ syǐhwan dìzrán, syǐhwan shèhwèi?

Tā syǐhwan Fàwén, syǐhwan Yīngwén?

Nǐmen syǐhwan Déwén, syǐhwan dìzrán?

Tāmen syǐhwan shèhwèi, syǐhwan Jungwen?

Lǐ Syānsheng syǐhwan Yīngwén, syǐhwan Déwén?

Jāng Měi-fāng syǐhwan Fàwén, syǐhwan Syībānyáwén?

Chángchang

Wǒ chángchang tīng chàngpyār.

Nǐ chángchang kàn dyànshì.

Nǐmen chángchang tīng chàngpyār.

Tāmen chángchang kàn dyànshì.

Jāng Lǎushī chángchang tīng chàngpyār.

Wáng Syānsheng chángchang kàn dyànshì.

Bùcháng

Tā bùcháng kàn dyànshì.
Wǒ bùcháng tīng chàngpyār.
Wǒmen bùcháng kàn dyànshì.
Nǐn bùcháng tīng chàngpyār.
Lǐ Lǎushī bùcháng kàn dyànshì.
Jāng Syānsheng bùcháng tīng chàngpyār.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Lǎushī	Sywésheng
Jāng Měi-fāngde yǐshang hén hǎukàn.	Jāng Měi-fāngde yǐshang hén hǎukàn.
máuyī	Jāng Měi-fāngde máuyī hén hǎukàn.
dàyī	Jāng Měi-fāngde dàyī hén hǎukàn.
Jǐntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Yīngwén?	Jǐntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Yīngwén?
Jūngwén	Jǐntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Jūngwén?
dzrán	Jintyan ni yǒu meiyou dzrán?
shèhwèi	Jǐntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou shèhwèi?
Fàwén	Jǐntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Fàwén?
Syībānyáwén	Jǐntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Syībānyáwén?
Nǐn shì bushì Jūnggwo ren?	Nǐn shì bushì Jūnggwo ren?
Dégwo	Nǐn shì bushì Dégwo ren?
Fàgwo	Nǐn shì bushì Fàgwo ren?
Měigwo	Nǐn shì bushì Měigwo ren?
Syībānyá	Nǐn shì bushì Syībānyá ren?
Dzrán, shèhwèi, wǒ dōu syǐhwan.	Dzrán, shèhwèi, wǒ dōu syǐhwan.
Jūngwén, Yīngwén	Jūngwén, Yīngwén, wǒ dōu syǐhwan.

Fàwén, Syībānyáwén	Fàwén, Syībānyáwén, wǒ dōu syīhwan.
Yīngwén, Déwén	Yīngwén, Déwén, wǒ dōu syīhwan.
Shèhwèi, Jūngwén	Shèhwèi, Jūngwén, wǒ dōu syīhwan.
Déwén, dìrán	Déwén, dìrán, wǒ dōu syīhwan.
Jūngwén, Yīngwén dōu bùnán.	Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu bùnán.
Dìrán, shèhwèi	Dìrán, shèhwèi, dōu bùnán.
Fàwén, Syībānyáwén	Fàwén, Syībānyáwén, dōu bùnán.
Déwén, dìrán	Déwén, dìrán, dōu bùnán.
Yīngwén, Fàwén	Yīngwén, Fàwén, dōu bùnán.
Syībānyáwén, Jūngwén	Syībānyáwén, Jūngwén, dōu bùnán.
Tā jīntyan wānshang dzwò shémma?	Tā jīntyan wānshang dzwò shémma?
míngtyan	Tā míngtyan wānshang dzwò shémma?
chyántyan	Tā chyántyan wānshang dzwò shémma?
hòutyan	Tā hòutyan wānshang dzwò shémma?
dzwótyan	Tā dzwótyan wānshang dzwò shémma?
Wǒ méiyou Yīngwén, wó yǒu Jūngwén.	Wǒ méiyou Yīngwén, wó yǒu Jūngwén.
Nín	Nín méiyou Yīngwén, nín yǒu Jūngwén.
Tāmen	Tāmen méiyou Yīngwén, tāmen yǒu Jūngwén.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen méiyou Yīngwén, wǒmen yǒu Jūngwén.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī méiyou Yīngwén, tā yǒu Jūngwén.
Li Syānsheng	Li Syānsheng méiyou Yīngwén, tā yǒu Jūngwén.

Tā búshì Jūnggwo ren, tā shì Měigwo ren.	Tā búshì Jūnggwo ren, tā shì Měigwo ren.
Wǒ	Wǒ búshì Jūnggwo ren, wǒ shì Měigwo ren.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen búshì Jūnggwo ren, wǒmen shì Měigwo ren.
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī búshì Jūnggwo ren, tā shì Měigwo ren.
Wáng Syānsheng	Wáng Syānsheng búshì Jūnggwo ren, tā shì Měigwo ren.
Jāng Měi-fāng	Jāng Měi-fāng búshì Jūnggwo ren, tā shì Měigwo ren.
Nǐ kàn dyànshì búkàn?	Nǐ kàn dyànshì búkàn?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen kàn dyànshì búkàn?
Tāmen	Tāmen kàn dyànshì búkàn?
Jāng Měi-fāng	Jāng Měi-fāng kàn dyànshì búkàn?
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī kàn dyànshì búkàn?
Jāng Syānsheng	Jāng Syānsheng kàn dyànshì búkàn?
Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.	Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Tā	Tā jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Lǐ Syānsheng	Lǐ Syānsheng jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Jāng Měi-fāng	Jāng Měi-fāng jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.

Wǒ chángchang kàn dyànshì.	Wǒ chángchang kàn dyànshì.
Nǐn	Nǐn chángchang kàn dyànshì.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen chángchang kàn dyànshì.
Tāmen	Tāmen chángchang kàn dyànshì.
Tā	Tā chángchang kàn dyànshì.
Jāng Syānsheng	Jāng Syānsheng chángchang kàn dyànshì.
Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn.	Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Tā	Tāde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Nǐmen	Nǐmende yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Wǒ	Wǒde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushīde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
Lǐ Syānsheng	Lǐ Syānshengde yīshang yé hǎukàn.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Lǎushī	Sywésheng
Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.	Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.
máuyī	Jāng Měi-fāngde máuyī hén hǎukàn.
Wáng Lǎushīde	Wáng Lǎushīde máuyī hén hǎukàn.
dàyī	Wáng Lǎushīde dàyī hén hǎukàn.
Lǐ Syānshengde	Lǐ Syānshengde dàyī hén hǎukàn.
Jīntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Yīngwén?	Jīntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Yīngwén?
Jūngwén	Jīntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Jūngwén?
Míngtyan	Míngtyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Jūngwén?
Syībānyáwén	Míngtyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Syībānyáwén?
Dzwótyan	Dzwótyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Syībānyáwén?

Nǐde lǎushī shì bushì	
Jūnggwo ren?	Nǐde lǎushī shì bushì Jūnggwo ren?
Měigwo	Nǐde lǎushī shì bushì Měigwo ren?
Tāde	Tāde lǎushī shì bushì Měigwo ren?
Fàgwo	Tāde lǎushī shì bushì Fàgwo ren?
Wǒmende	Wǒmende lǎushī shì bushì Fàgwo ren?
Nín jīntyan dzǎushang	
dzwò shémma?	Nín jīntyan dzǎushang dzwò shémma?
chyántyan wǎnshang	Nín chyántyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?
Tā	Tā chyántyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?
hòutyan dzǎushang	Tā hòutyan dzǎushang dzwò shémma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen hòutyan dzǎushang dzwò shémma?
Wǒ chángchang kàn	
dyànshì.	Wǒ chángchang kàn dyànshì.
tīng chàngpyār	Wǒ chángchang tīng chàngpyār.
Tā	Tā chángchang tīng chàngpyār.
yǒu Jūngwén	Tā chángchang yǒu Jūngwén.
Jāng Měi-fāng	Jāng Měi-fāng chángchang yǒu Jūngwén.

RESPONSE DRILL

Lǎushī	Sywésheng
Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hǎukàn ma?	
(Hén hǎukàn)	Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.
(bùhǎukàn)	Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang buhǎukàn.
Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn ma?	
(hǎukàn)	Wǒde yīshang yé hǎukàn.
(bùhǎukàn)	Wǒde yīshang bùhǎukàn.
Jīntyan nǐ yǒu méiyou Fàwén?	
(yǒu)	Jīntyan wǒ yǒu Fàwén.

(méiyou) Jīntyan wǒ méiyou fàwén.

Nǐde Jūngwen laushr̄ shr̀ bushr̀ Jūnggwo rén?
(shr̀) Wǒde Jūngwen laushr̄ shr̀ Jūnggwo ren.
(búshr̀) Wǒde Jūngwen laushr̄ búshr̀ Jūnggwo ren.

Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu bùnán ma?
(dōu bùnán) Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu bùnán.
(dōu nán) Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu nán.

Dz̀rán, shèhwèi, dōu rúngyi ma?
(dōu rúngyi) Dz̀rán, shèhwèi, dōu rúngyi.
(dōu bùrúngyi) Dz̀rán, shèhwèi, dōu bùrúngyi.

Déwén, Syībānyáwén, nǐ dōu syǐhwan ma?
(dōu syǐhwan) Déwén, Syībānyáwén, wǒ dōu syǐhwan.
(dōu bùsyǐhwan) Déwén, Syībānyáwén, wǒ dōu bùsyǐhwan.
(bùdóu syǐhwan) Déwén, Syībānyáwén, wǒ bùdōu syǐhwan.

Tā jīntyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?
(tīng chàngpyār) Tā jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
(kàn dyànshr̀) Tā jīntyan wǎnshang kàn dyànshr̀.

Nǐ kàn dyànshr̀ búkàn?
(chángchang kàn) Wǒ chángchang kàn dyànshr̀.
(bùcháng kàn) Wǒ bùcháng kàn dyànshr̀.
(búkàn) Wǒ búkàn dyànshr̀.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Lǎushr̄	Sywésheng
Nǐ wèn tā, Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hǎukàn buhǎukàn.	Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hǎukàn buhǎukàn?
	Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.
	Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang bùhǎukàn.

Nǐ wèn tā, tāde yīshang yé hǎukàn ma.	Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn ma? Wǒde yīshang yé hǎukàn. Wǒde yīshang bùhǎukàn.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā jīntyan yǒu méiyou Yīngwén.	Nǐ jīntyan yǒu méiyou Yīngwén? Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Yīngwén. Wǒ jīntyan méiyou Yīngwén. Wǒ jīntyan méiyou Yīngwén, wó yǒu Jūngwén.
Nǐ wèn tā, tāde Jūngwen laushr̄ shì bushì Jūnggwo ren.	Nǐde Jūngwen laushr̄ shì bushì Jūnggwo ren? Wǒde Jūngwen laushr̄ shì Jūnggwo ren. Wǒde Jūngwen laushr̄ búshì Jūnggwo ren, tā shì Měigwo ren.
Nǐ wèn tā, Jūngwén nán, Yīngwén nán.	Jūngwén nán, Yīngwén nán? Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu bùnán. Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu hěn nán. Jūngwén bùnán, Yīngwén nán. Jūngwén, Yīngwén, dōu rúngyi.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā syīhwan dzrán, syīhwan shèhwèi.	Nǐ syīhwan dzrán, syīhwan shèhwèi? Dzrán, shèhwèi, wǒ dōu syīhwan. Dzrán, shèhwèi, wǒ dōu bùsyīhwan. Wó syīhwan dzrán, bùsyīhwan shèhwèi.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā jīntyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma.	Nǐ jīntyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma? Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār. Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang kàn dyànshì.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā kàn dyànshì búkàn.	Nǐ kàn dyànshì búkàn? Wǒ búkàn dyànshì.

Wǒ chángchang kàn dyànshì.
Wǒ bùcháng kàn dyànshì.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Míngtyan nǐ yǒu Syībānyáwén ma?
Míngtyan wǒ méiyou Syībānyáwén, wǒ yǒu Fàwén.
Fàwén nán bunán?
Fàwén bùhěn nán.
Nǐ syīhwan busyīhwan Déwén?
Déwén hěn nán, wǒ bùsyīhwan.
Dìzrán, shèhwèi, dōu rúngyi ma?
Dìzrán, shèhwèi, dōu hěn rúngyi.
Nǐ dzwótyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?
Wǒ dzwótyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Nǐ chángchang tīng chàngpyār ma?
Wǒ chángchang tīng chàngpyār.
Nǐ yě chángchang kàn dyànshì ma?
Wǒ bùcháng kàn dyànshì.
Tāde máuyī hén hǎukàn.
Nǐde dàyī yé hén hǎukàn.
Nǎrde hwà.

NARRATION

Wáng Lǎushī shì wǒmende Jūngwen laushī. Tā shì Měigwo ren. Tā hěn máng. Tā jīntyan yǒu Jūngwén. Wǒ jīntyan yé hěn máng. Wǒ yǒu Yīngwén.

Jāng Měi-fāng shì Jūnggwo ren, tāde yīshang hén hǎukàn. Wǒmen dōu syīhwan tā. Tā chángchang tīng chàngpyār. Tā yě chángchang kàn dyànshì.

RHYMES

Dzrán, shèhwèi, dōu rúngyi
Jūngwén, Yīngwén, yě bùnán.
Dzwótyan kàn dyànshì,
Jīntyan tīng chàngpyār.
Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn,
Nǐ syīhwan,
Wó syīhwan,
Tāmen, wǒmen, dōu syīhwan.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Pronunciation (On tape - utterances are spaced to permit the student to imitate.)

Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.
Dzrán, shèhwèi, dōu rúngyi.
Tā shì Měigwo rén.
Nǐ chángchang kàn dyànshì ma?
Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.
Wǒmen dōu syīhwan Jūngwén.
Chyántyan wó hěn màng.

2. Listening and Speaking (Student listens to the tape and responds according to the proper sentence he has learned. Several correct responses to each utterance may be possible, but the most direct one taught and practiced in this unit is suggested in parentheses.)

Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hǎukàn ma?
(Jāng Měi-fāngde yīshang hén hǎukàn.)
Nǐde yīshang yé hǎukàn ma?
(Wǒde yīshang yé hǎukàn.)
Dzrán nán, shèhwèi nán?
(Dzrán, shèhwèi, dōu bùnán.)
Nǐmen chángchang kàn dyànshì ma?
(Wǒmen chángchang kàn dyànshì.)

Nǐ jīntyan yǒu Jūngwén ma?

(Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Jūngwén.)

Míngtyan nǐ yǒu Yīngwén ma?

(Míngtyan wǒ méiyou Yīngwén.)

Nǐ shì bushì Syībānyá ren?

(Wǒ búshì Syībānyá ren.)

Nǐ jīntyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?

(Wǒ jīntyan wǎnshang tīng chàngpyār.)

3. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passage in English.)

Wáng Lǎushī shì wǒmende Jūngwen laushī. Tā hěn máng. Tā jīntyan yǒu Jūngwén. Wǒ yé hěn máng. Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Yīngwén.

Jāng Měi-fāng shì Jūnggwo rén. Tāde yǐshang hén hǎukàn. Wǒmen dōu syǐhwan tā. Tā chángchang kàn dyànshì. Tā yě chángchang tīng chàngpyār.

4. Reading (To be used after Romanization has been learned.)

Wǒ shì Jūnggwo ren.

Tā búshì Měigwo ren.

Nǐde yǐshang yé hǎukàn.

Wǒ chángchang tīng chàngpyār.

Dzrán hěn rúngyi.

Shèhwèi bùhěn nán.

Nǐn hòutyan wǎnshang dzwò shémma?

Fàwén, Syībānyáwén, wǒ dōu syǐhwan.

Jāng Měi-fāng méiyou dyànshì.

UNIT III

GOING TO THE LIBRARY

The first part of the dialogue deals with two students going to the library after class. The second part is their conversation in the library regarding a Chinese dictionary.

DIALOGUE

Sywésheng Yī: Chén Jyā-jyùn. Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?
Sywésheng Èr: Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.
Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ dàu nèr chyù dzwò shémma?
Sywésheng Èr: Wǒ dàu nèr dzwò syǐtí chyù.
Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ jīrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé ma?
Sywésheng Èr: Dàgài Shírywe báhau kǎu.
Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ yùbeile ma?
Sywésheng Èr: Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.

Sywésheng Yī: Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò. Nǐ dzài nǎr dzwò?
Sywésheng Èr: Wǒ syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyu.
Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ jǎu shémma shū?
Sywésheng Èr: Wó jǎu Jūngwen dǯdyǎn. Nǐ yǒu ma?
Sywésheng Yī: Wǒ méiyǒu. Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shang yǒu méiyou.
Sywésheng Èr: Wó yǐjing kànle. Nèr yě máiyou.
Sywésheng Yī: Jèige shūjyàdz shang jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǯdyǎn.
Sywésheng Èr: Búyaujǐn. Yǐhwěr wǒ dzài jǎu.

Student A:	Chén Jyā-jyùn, where are you going?
Student B:	I'm going to the library.
Student A:	What are you going to do there?
Student B:	I'm going there to work on my exercises.
Student A:	Do you know on which day we have our math exam?
Student B:	Probably October 8.
Student A:	Have you prepared?
Student B:	No, not yet.
Student A:	I'll sit here, where are you going to sit?
Student B:	I'll go over there to look for a book first.
Student A:	What book are you looking for?
Student B:	I'm looking for a Chinese dictionary. Do you have one?
Student A:	No, I don't. Look over there on that table and see if there is one.
Student B:	I have already looked. There isn't one there.
Student A:	There are only English dictionaries on this bookshelf.
Student B:	That's all right. I'll look for it a little later.

Chinese-Mandarin I

THE SOUNDS

1. Initial

s	sān

2. Final

yu	chyù
yun	jyā-jyùn
er	jèr, nèr, èr
z	sž

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

Chén	a common Chinese surname
Jyā-jyùn	a Chinese boy's name
túshūgwăn	library
syítí	exercise
shū	book
shùsywé	mathematics
dždyăn	dictionary
jwōdz	desk; table
shūjyàdz	bookshelves

2. Place Word

năr	where? (question word)
jèr	here
nèr	there
-tou	head; end; side
shàng(tou)	top; upper end or side

Tou is often omitted in shàngtou (top), wàitou (outside), lĭtou (inside), etc.

Nĭ kànkan nèige jwōdz shàng(tou) yŏu méiyou.

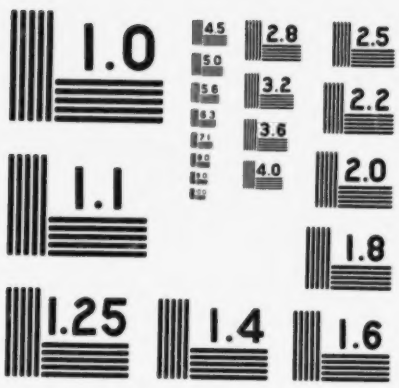
3. Verb

chyù	go, indicating motion toward a point away from the speaker
kău	take an examination

2 OF 8

ED

014046



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART
NATIONAL BUREAU OF STANDARDS-1963

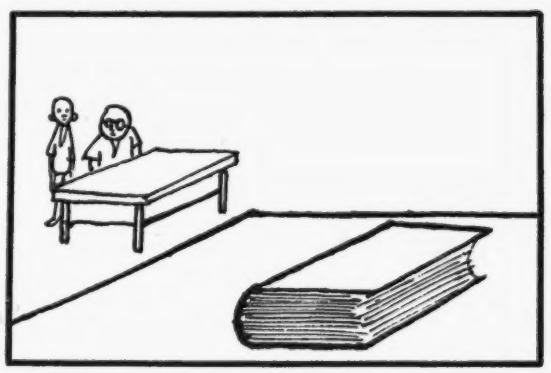
Chén Jyā-jyùn. Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?
Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.
Nǐ dàu nèr chyù dzwò shémma?
Wǒ dàu nèr dzwò syǐtí chyù.

Nǐ jīrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé ma?
Dàgài Shíywe báhau kǎu.
Nǐ yùbeile ma?
Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.

Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò. Nǐ dzài nǎr dzwò?
Wǒ syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyu.

Nǐ jǎu shémma shū?
Wǒ jǎu Jūngwen dǯdyǎn.
Nǐ yǒu ma?

Wǒ méiyou. Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shang yǒu méiyou.
Wǒ yǐjing kànle. Nèr yě méiyou.



Jèige shūjyàdz shàng jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǯdyǎn.
Búyaujǐn. Yìhwěr wǒ dzài jǎu.

jr̄dau	know; know of or about
yùbei	prepare
dzwò	sit
jǎu	find; look for

4. Reduplication of Verb

A verb is sometimes reduplicated to suggest casualness of the action. In this form the second syllable is unstressed.

Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shàngtou yǒu méiyou.

Sometime yi is inserted between the verbs:

kànyikàn bǎiyibǎi

5. Co-verb

dàu	functioning as "to go to" together with chyù in dàu...(place word)... chyù. When negative, the negative adverb bù precedes the entire expression; i.e., búdàu (place word) chyù.
dzài	"be at" a point in space or time

6. Adverb

dàgài	probably (MA)
hái	still; yet
syān	first
yǐjing	already
jyòu	only; just
dzài	again (in the future)

7. Time Word

yìhwěr	a moment
-hàu	-(the day of the month)
báhau	eighth (the eighth day)
-ywè	-month
Shírywe	October (the tenth month)
nǎityan	which day?

8. Particle

-le	verb and sentence suffix, indicating completion of action.

Note: -le never occurs between the verb shì and the following noun. Never: Tā shìle Jūnggwo ren.

ne	sentence suffix usually used with méi to indicate incomplete action. (cf. Handbook, p. 30)

9. Idiomatic Expression

(nà) búyaujìn	that's nothing; never mind

10. Specifier

A specifier serves to designate or point out the person or thing referred to. It stands before a measure and the noun measured.

něi-	which?
nèi-	that (there)
jèi-	this (here)

11. Measure

-ge	for person or thing, applicable to most nouns. (cf. Handbook, p. 26)

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

syuésyàu	school
dzájì	magazine
bàu	newspaper
jyàushì	classroom
shíyànshì	science laboratory
yǐdz	chair
kè	subject of study

2. Numbers

a. Numbers from 1 to 10:

yī	one
èr	two
sān	three
sì	four
wǔ	five
lyòu	six
chī	seven
bā	eight
jyǒu	nine
shŕ	ten

b. Numbers from 11 to 99:

shŕyī	ten-one (eleven)
shŕèr	ten-two (twelve)

c. Tens from 20 to 90:

èrshŕ	two-ten (twenty)
sānshŕ	three-ten (thirty)

d. The other numbers from 21 to 99:

sìshryī	four-ten-one (forty-one)
wǔshrlyòu	five-ten-six (fifty-six)

In pronouncing three-syllable numeral compounds, the stress is always on the last syllable.

3. The month and the day

a. For months of the year, the pattern is: Nu-ywè.

January	Yīywe	Yī-ywè	one-month
February	Èrywe	Èr-ywè	two-month
March	Sānywe	Sān-ywè	three-month
April	Sìywe	Sì-ywè	four-month
May	Wúywe	Wǔ-ywè	five-month
June	Lyòuywe	Lyòu-ywè	six-month
July	Chīywe	Chī-ywè	seven-month
August	Báywe	Bā-ywè	eight-month

September	Jyǒuywe	Jyǒu-ywè	nine-month
October	Shírywe	Shí-ywè	ten-month
November	Shryīywe	Shíyī-ywè	eleven-month
December	Shrèrywe	Shírèr-ywè	twelve-month

b. The days of the month are formed with numbers and -hàu. Thus:

first	yīhau	yī-hàu
second	èrhau	èr-hàu
third	sānhau	sān-hàu
fourth	sìhau	sì-hàu
fifth	wǔhau	wǔ-hàu
tenth	shírhau	shí-hàu
eleventh	shryīhau	shíyī-hàu
twentieth	èrshrhau	èrshí-hàu
twenty-fourth	èrshrsìhau	èrshí-sì-hàu
thirtieth	sānshrhau	sānshí-hàu
thirty-first	sānshryīhau	sānshí-yī-hàu

4. The days of the week

The days of the week are formed with numbers and Lībài- or Syīngchī- except Sunday. Sunday is formed with either -tyān or rì instead of a number. Thus:

Sunday	Lībaityan	Lībai-tyan
Monday	Lībaiyi	Lībai-yī
Tuesday	Lībaièr	Lībai-èr
Wednesday	Lībaisān	Lībai-sān
Thursday	Lībaisì	Lībai-sì
Friday	Lībaiwǔ	Lībai-wǔ
Saturday	Lībailyòu	Lībai-lyòu

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. CV PW V Construction CV PW V

Nǐ dàu nǎr chyū?

Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.

2. Purpose of going

A purpose expression (cf. Handbook, p. 29) appears immediately before or after the main verb chyù to indicate the purpose of the action. Sometimes chyù may appear twice, before and after the purpose expression.

Nǐ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù dzwò shémma? or	S CV O V PE
Nǐ dàu túshūgwǎn dzwò shémma chyù? or	S CV O PE V
Nǐ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù dzwò shémma chyù?	S CV O V PE V

3. Suffix -le and completed action

If an action is, was, has been, or will have been completed, the verb takes a -le suffix. In a sequence of actions, -le is used to indicate that the action will take place, is taking place, or did take place, before the next one. Hence, -le has nothing to do with verb tense, even though it appears most frequently where a past tense verb is used in English. The suffix -le can also be used as a sentence suffix, in which case the entire predicate is affected.

Wǒ yǐjing kànle.

When the action is complete, a verb with a simple object usually can take a suffix -le immediately after it, or after the object, or both. The exact senses of these three cases may be slightly different, but we need not go into that here:

Wǒ kànle dyànshì le.

Wǒ kànle dyànshì.

Wǒ kàn dyànshì le.

4. Negation of complete action with méi

Méiyou or méi is prefixed to a verb to indicate negation of a complete action. The particle ne is often added at the end of the sentence to emphasize it.

Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.

Note: When méi alone negates yǒu where yǒu is the main verb, the idea of "have no" has nothing to do with any incomplete action.

5. Question forms of completed action and its negative:

Nǐ yùbeile ma? adding question particle ma

Nǐ yùbeile méiyǒu? adding negative adverb méiyǒu (choice-type question)

Nǐ yùbeile méiyùbèi? repeating same verb with méi- (also choice-type)

Or, if negative question is wanted:

Nǐ méiyùbei ma? Didn't you prepare?

6. The use of yǒu to indicate existence of an object PW yǒu N

The verb yǒu expresses simple existence. In this sense when yǒu appears after a place word:

Jwōdz shàng yǒu shū. There are books on the table. (Table top has book.)

Jèige shūjyàdz shàng jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǯdyǎn.

Nèige jwōdz shàngtou yǒu Jūngwen dǯdyǎn.

7. Omission of subject and object

In Chinese, the subject or object of the sentence, when clearly understood, is usually omitted; while in English, a pronoun is usually used. (cf. Answer forms, Unit I)

(Nǐ) yǒu (Jūngwen dǯdyǎn) ma?

(Nèr) yě méiyou (Jūngwen dǯdyǎn).

8. A clause as an object (see 10 below).

Nǐ jīrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé ma?

Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shàngtou yǒu méiyou.

9. Specified nouns Sp-M-N

jèige shūjyàdz

nèige jwōdz

něige jwōdz?

10. Question words in a sentence

A question word occupies ir the sentence the same position as the word or words which replace it in the answer: (cf. Structural Patterns, Unit I)

Wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé?

Wǒmen Shǐywe báhau kǎu shùsywé.

In an interrogative sentence, the same point in question can never take a question word and a question suffix ma at the same time; e.g., Shéi chyù? (Who is going?) can never take a ma: but Nǐ jīrdau shèi chyù ma? (Do you know who is going?) is correct because here ma makes the main verb (one point in question) jīrdau interrogative, while shéi chyù is another point in question. Thus there are actually two questions asked in the sentence.

NOTES

Pedagogical Notes

a. Arrange a bookcase and a study desk in the classroom; make available a calender, a Chinese dictionary, and a textbook of Mathematics.

b. During the seventh, eighth, and ninth hours, stress group and individual role-playing. Record on tape the performance of the students to help them correct their errors.

c. Practice role-playing on the scene if a trip to the school library could be arranged without too much loss of time.

FLUENCY DRILL

Dàu.
Dàu nǎr chyù?
Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?
Chén Jyā-jyùn dàu nǎr chyù?
Chén Jyā-jyùn, nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?

Dàu.
Dàu nèr chyù.
Wǒ dàu nèr chyù.

Kǎu.
Báhau kǎu.
Shǐywe báhau kǎu.
Dàgài Shǐywe báhau kǎu.
Dàgài Shǐywe báhau kǎu shùsywé.
Wǒmen dàgài Shǐywe báhau kǎu shùsywé.

Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.
Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù dzwò syìtí.
Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù dzwò syìtí chyù.

Kǎu.
Kǎu shùsywé.
Nèityan kǎu shùsywé?
Wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé?
Nǐ jǐrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé.
Nǐ jǐrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé ma?

Jǎu
Jǎu shū.
Jǎu shū chyù.
Chyù jǎu shū chyù.
Dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyù.
Syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyù.
Wǒ syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyù.

Kànkan.
Kànkan jwōdz.
Kànkan nèige jwōdz.
Kànkan nèige jwōdz shang.
Kànkan nèige jwōdz shang yǒu méiyou.
Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shang yǒu méiyou.

Yǒu.
Yǒu dǐdyǎn.
Yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.
Jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.

Yùbei.
Yùbeile.
Yùbeile ma?
Nǐ yùbeile ma?
Nǐ yǐjing yùbeile ma?
Nǐ dzwótyan yǐjing yùbeile ma?

Yùbei.
Méiyùbei.
Hái méiyùbei.
Wǒ hái myéiyùbei.
Wǒmen hái méiyùbei.
Wǒmen dōu hái méiyùbei.
Wǒmen dōu hái méiyùbei ne.

Dzài.
Dzài jèr dzwò.
Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.
Wǒ syān dzài jèr dzwò.

Shūjyàdz shang jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.
Jèige shūjyàdz shang jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushī	Sywésheng
S CV O V	
Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?	(Student repeats after
Wǒ dàu nèr chyù.	the model)
Tā dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.	
Wǒmen dàu sywésyàu chyù.	
Tāmen dàu jyàushī chyù.	
Chén Jyā-jyùn dàu shíyànshī chyù.	
Nǐ dzài nǎr dzwò?	
Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.	
Tā dzài nèr dzwò.	
Lǐ Syānsheng dzài yǐdz shang dzwò.	
Jāng Měi-fāng dzài yǐdz shang dzwò.	
Chén Jyā-jyùn dzài jwōdz shang dzwò.	
S CV O V PE	
Nǐ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù dzwò shémma?	
Wǒ dàu nèr chyù dzwò syǐtí chyù.	
Tā dàu jyàushī kǎu shùsywé chyù.	
Wǒmen dàu jyàushī kàn dyànshì chyù.	
Chén Jyā-jyùn dàu nèr chyù tīng chàngpyār chyù.	
Jāng Lǎushī dàu túshūgwǎn chyù kàn bàu chyù.	
Le (Completed action)	
Wǒ kànle.	
Tā yǐjing kǎule.	
Wǒmen yǐjing tīngle.	
Jāng Měi-fāng dzwò syǐtí le.	
Chén Jyā-jyùn tīngle chàngpyār le.	
Wáng Syānsheng dàu shíyànshì chyùle.	

Hai mei(you) V ne (negating completed action)

Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.
Tā hái méidzwò syītí ne.
Wáng Lǎushī hái méikàn bàu ne.
Lǐ Syānsheng hái méichyù ne.
Chén jyā-jyùn hái méitīng chàngpyār ne.
Jāng Měi-fāng hái méijǎu Jūngwen dǯdyǎn ne.

Question Forms (Completed action)

Tā dzwòle ma?
Nǐ kànle dyànshì le ma?
Nín kǎu shùsywé le ma?
Chén Jyā-jyùn yùbeile ma?
Jāng Měi-fāng tīngle chàngpyārle ma?
Lǐ Lǎushī jǎule Yīngwen shū le ma?

Tā dzwòle méiyou?
Nǐ kànle dyànshìle méiyou?
Nín kǎu shùsywé le méiyou?
Chén Jyā-jyùn yùbeile méiyou?
Jāng Měi-fāng tīngle chàngpyārle méiyou?
Lǐ Lǎushī jǎule Yīngwen shū le máiyou?

Tā dzwòle méidzwò?
Nǐ kànle dyànshì méikàn?
Nín kǎule shùsywé méikǎu?
Chén Jyā-jyùn yùbeile méiyùbei?
Jāng Měi-fāng tīngle chàngpyār méitīng?
Lǐ Lǎushī jǎule Yīngwen shū méijǎu?

Tā méidzwò ma?
Nǐ méikàn dyànshì ma?
Nín méikǎu shùsywé ma?
Chén Jyā-jyùn méiyùbei ma?

Jāng Měi-fāng méitīng chàngpyār ma?
Lǐ Lǎushr̄ méijǎu Yīngwen shū ma?

PW yǒu N

Jèige shūjyàdz shang yǒu Yīngwen dǯdyǎn.
Nèige jwōdz shang yǒu dzájr̀.
Nèige yīdz shang yǒu Jūngwen bàu.
Jèige bàu shang yǒu Fàwen dǯdyǎn.
Nèige dzájr̀ shang yǒu Déwen shū.
Jèige dǯdyǎn shang yǒu Syībānyáwen dzájr̀.

Clause as an Object

Nǐ jr̄dau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé ma?
Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shang yǒu méiyou.
Wo jr̄dau jèige yīdz shang méiyou Jūngwen dǯdyǎn.
Tā bùjr̄dau wǒmen Shŕywe báhau kǎu shùsywé.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.	Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.
sywésyàu	Wǒ dàu sywésyàu chyù.
jyàushr̀	Wǒ dàu jyàushr̀ chyù.
shŕyànshr̀	Wǒ dàu shŕyànshr̀ chyù.
Tā dàu sywésyàu dzwò	
syǐtǐ chyù.	Tā dàu sywésyàu dzwò syǐtǐ chyù.
tīng chàngpyār	Tā dàu sywésyàu tīng chàngpyār chyù.
jǎu shū	Tā dàu sywésyàu jǎu shū chyù.
kǎn dyànshr̀	Tā dàu sywésyàu kàn dyànshr̀ chyù.
kǎu shùsywé	Tā dàu sywésyàu kǎu shùsywé chyù.
Nǐ jr̄dau wǒmen nèityan kǎu	
shùsywé ma?	Nǐ jr̄dau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shùsywé ma?
dǯrán	Nǐ jr̄dau wǒmen nèityan kǎu dǯrán ma?
shèhwèi	Nǐ jr̄dau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shèhwèi ma?
Yīngwén	Nǐ jr̄dau wǒmen nèityan kǎu Yīngwén ma?

Jūngwén	Nǐ jīrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu Jūngwén ma?
Syībānyáwén	Nǐ jīrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu Syībānyáwén ma?
Wǒmen dàgài Shíywe báhau kǎu.	Wǒmen dàgài Shíywe báhau kǎu.
Sānywe sìhau	Wǒmen dàgài Sānywe sìhau kǎu.
Lyòuywe wǔhau	Wǒmen dàgài Lyòuywe wǔhau kǎu.
Jyǒuywe chǐhau	Wǒmen dàgài Jyǒuywe chǐhau kǎu.
Èrywe yīhau	Wǒmen dàgài Èrywe yīhau kǎu.
Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyù.	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyù.
bàu	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu bàu chyù.
dzájì	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu dzájì chyù.
dìdyǎn	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu dìdyǎn chyù.
jwōdz	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu jwōdz chyù.
yǐdz	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jáu yǐdz chyù.
Wǒmen jǎu Jūngwen dìdyǎn.	Wǒmen jǎu Jūngwen dìdyǎn.
Yīngwen	Wǒmen jǎu Yīngwen dìdyǎn.
Fàwen	Wǒmen jǎu Fàwen dìdyǎn.
Déwen	Wǒmen jǎu Déwen dìdyǎn.
Syībānyáwen	Wǒmen jǎu Syībānyáwen dìdyǎn.
Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shang yǒu méiyou?	Nǐ kànkan nèige jwōdz shang yǒu méiyou?
shūjyàdz	Nǐ kànkan nèige shūjyàdz shang yǒu méiyou?
yǐdz	Nǐ kànkan nèige yǐdz shang yǒu méiyou?
dzájì	Nǐ kànkan nèige dzájì shang yǒu méiyou?

bàu	NǏ kànkan nèige bàu shang yǒu méiyou?
dzdyǎn	NǏ kànkan nèige dzdyǎn shang yǒu méiyou?

Chén Jyā-jyùn yùbeile ma?	Chén Jyā-jyùn yùbeile ma?
kànle	Chén Jyā-jyùn kànle ma?
jǎule	Chén Jyā-jyùn jǎule ma?
tīngle	Chén Jyā-jyùn tīngle ma?
kǎule	Chén Jyā-jyùn kǎule ma?
dzwòle	Chén Jyā-jyùn dzwòle ma?

Jāng Měi-fāng hái méiyùbei ne.	Jāng Měi-fāng hái méiyùbei ne.
kàn	Jāng Měi-fāng hái méikàn ne.
jǎu	Jāng Měi-fāng hái méijǎu ne.
tīng	Jāng Měi-fāng hái méitīng ne.
kǎu	Jāng Měi-fāng hái méikǎu ne.
dzwò	Jāng Měi-fāng hái méidzwò ne.

Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.	Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.
kǎu shùsywé	Wǒ dzài jèr kǎu shùsywé.
tīng chàngpyār	Wǒ dzài jèr tīng chàngpyār.
dzwò syǐtí	Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò syǐtí.
kàn dyànshì	Wǒ dzài jèr kàn dyànshì.
jǎu dzájì	Wǒ dzài jèr jǎu dzájì.

Tā yǐjing kànle.	Tā yǐjing kànle.
kǎu shùsywé	Tā yǐjing kǎule shùsywé le.
tīng chàngpyār	Tā yǐjing tīngle chàngpyār le.
dzwò syǐtí	Tā yǐjing dzwòle syǐtí le.
kàn dyànshì	Tā yǐjing kànle dyànshì le.
jǎu dzájì	Tā yǐjing jǎule dzájì le.

Jèige shūjyadz shang jyòu
yǒu Yīngwen dǎdyǎn. Jèige shūjyadz shang jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǎdyǎn.

Jūngwen dzájì Jèige shūjyadz shang jyòu yǒu Jūngwen dzájì.

Fàwen bàu Jèige shūjyadz shang jyòu yǒu Fàwen bàu.

Déwen shū Jèige shūjyadz shang jyòu yǒu Déwen shū.

Yìhwěr wǒ dzài jǎu. Yìhwěr wǒ dzài jǎu.
yùbei Yìhwěr wǒ dzài yùbei.
dzwò Yìhwěr wǒ dzài dzwò.
tīng Yìhwěr wǒ dzài tīng.
kànkan Yìhwěr wǒ dzài kànkan.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù. Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.
shíyànshì Wǒ dàu shíyànshì chyù.
Tā Tā dàu shíyànshì chyù.
jyàushī Tā dàu jyàushī chyù.
Tāmen Tāmen dàu jyàushī chyù.

Tā dàu sywésyàu dzwò
syíti chyù. Tā dàu sywésyàu dzwò syíti chyù.
jǎu shū Tā dàu sywésyàu jǎu shū chyù.
Wǒmen Wǒmen dàu sywésyàu jǎu shū chyù.
kǎu shùsywé Wǒmen dàu sywésyàu kǎu shùsywé chyù.
Jāng Měi-fāng Jāng Měi-fāng dàu sywésyàu kǎu shùsywé chyù.

Nǐ jīdau wǒmen nèityan
kǎu Jūngwen ma? Nǐ jīdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu Jūngwen ma?
dzrán Nǐ jīdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu dzrán ma?
Nín Nín jīdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu dzrán ma?

shèhwèi	Nín jīdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shèhwèi ma?
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī jīdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shèhwèi ma?
Wǒmen dàgài Shǐywe	
báhau kǎu.	Wǒmen dàgài Shǐywe báhau kǎu.
Sǐywe lyǒuhau	Wǒmen dàgài Sǐywe lyǒuhau kǎu.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen dàgài Sǐywe lyǒuhau kǎu.
Wǔywe jyǒuhau	Nǐmen dàgài Wǔywe jyǒuhau kǎu.
Tāmen	Tāmen dàgài Wǔywe jyǒuhau kǎu.
Tā syān dàu nèr chyù	
jǎu shū chyù.	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu shū chyù.
dǐdyǎn	Tā syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu dǐdyǎn chyù.
Wǒ	Wǒ syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu dǐdyǎn chyù.
dzájǐ	Wǒ syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu dzájǐ chyù.
Jāng Syānsheng	Jāng Syānsheng syān dàu nèr chyù jǎu dzájǐ chyù.
Wǒmen jǎu Jūngwen	
dǐdyǎn.	Wǒmen jǎu Jūngwen dǐdyǎn.
Déwen	Wǒmen jǎu Déwen dǐdyǎn.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī jǎu Déwen dǐdyǎn.
Syībānyáwen	Wáng Lǎushī jǎu Syībānyáwen dǐdyǎn.
Chén Jyā-jyùn	Chén Jyā-jyùn jǎu Syībānyáwen dǐdyǎn.
Tā yùbeile ma?	Tā yùbeile ma?
dzwòle	Tā dzwòle ma?
Nǐ	Nǐ dzwòle ma?
kànle	Nǐ kànle ma?
Jāng Měi-fāng	Jāng Měi-fāng kànle ma?
Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.	Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.
tǐng	Wǒ hái méitǐng ne.
Tāmen	Tāmen hái méitǐng ne.

kǎu	Tāmen hái méikǎu ne.
Lǐ Lǎushī	Lǐ Lǎushī hái méikǎu ne.
Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.	Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.
tǐng chàngpyār	Wǒ dzài jèr tǐng chàngpyār.
Tā	Tā dzài jèr tǐng chàngpyār.
kàn dyànshì	Tā dzài jèr kàn dyànshì.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen dzài jèr kàn dyànshì.
Wǒ yǐjing kànle.	Wǒ yǐjing kànle.
dzwò syǐtí	Wǒ yǐjing dzwòle syǐtí le.
Tāmen	Tāmen yǐjing dzwòle syǐtí le.
jǎu bàu	Tāmen yǐjing jǎule bàu le.
Wáng Syānsheng	Wáng Syānsheng yǐjing jǎule bàu le.
Jèige shūjyàdz shang jyòu	
yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.	Jèige shūjyàdz shang jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.
Fǎwen shū	Jèige shūjyàdz shang jyòu yǒu Fǎwen shū.
Nèige jwōdz	Nèige jwōdz shang jyòu yǒu Fǎwen shū.
Déwen dzájì	Nèige jwōdz shang jyòu yǒu Déwen dzájì.
Jèige yīdz	Jèige yīdz shang jyòu yǒu Déwen dzájì.
Yīhwěr wǒ dzài jǎu.	Yīhwěr wǒ dzài jǎu.
kànkan	Yīhwěr wǒ dzài kànkan.
wǒmen	Yīhwěr wǒmen dzài kànkan.
tǐngting	Yīhwěr wǒmen dzài tǐngting.
nǐn	Yīhwěr nǐn dzài tǐngting.

RESPONSE DRILL

Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?	
(sywésyàu)	Wǒ dàu sywésyàu chyù.

(shŕyànshì) Wǒ dàu shŕyànshì chyù.
(túshūgwǎn) Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.
(jyàushì) Wǒ dàu jyàushì chyù.

Nǐ dàu nèr chyù dzwò shémma?
(dzwò syítí) Wǒ dàu nèr chyù dzwò syítí chyù.
(kàn dzájì) Wǒ dàu nèr chyù kàn dzájì chyù.
(jāu shū) Wǒ dàu nèr chyù jāu shū chyù.
(tīng chàngpyār) Wǒ dàu nèr chyù tīng chàngpyār chyù.

Nǐ jīrdau wǒmen nèityan kāu Jūngwén ma?
(míngtyan) Wǒmen míngtyan kāu Jūngwén.
(hòutyan) Wǒmen hòutyan kāu Jūngwén.
(Báywe èrhau) Wǒmen Báywe èrhau kāu Jūngwén.
(Chíywe sìhau) Wǒmen Chíywe sìhau kāu Jūngwén.

Nǐ yùbeile ma?
(yíjing) Wǒ yíjing yùbeile.
(hái méi) Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.

Nǐ dzài nǎr dzwò?
(jèr) Wǒ dzài jèr dzwò.
(nèr) Wǒ dzài nèr dzwò.

Nǐ jīntyan yǒu shémma kè?
(dǐrán) Wǒ jīntyan yǒu dǐrán.
(shèhwèi) Wǒ jīntyan yǒu shèhwèi.
(shùsywé) Wǒ jīntyan yǒu shùsywé.
(Yīngwén) Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Yīngwén.
(Jūngwén) Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Jūngwén.

Wǒmen túshūgwǎn yǒu shémma?

(shū)	Wǒmen túshūgwǎn yǒu shū.
(bàu)	Wǒmen túshūgwǎn yǒu bàu.
(dzájì)	Wǒmen túshūgwǎn yǒu dzájì.
(dìdyǎn)	Wǒmen túshūgwǎn yǒu dìdyǎn.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā dàu nǎr chyù.	Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?
	Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.
	Wǒ dàu sywésyàu chyù.
	Wǒ dàu jyàushì chyù.
	Wǒ dàu shíyànshì chyù.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā dàu nèr chyù dzwò shémma.	Nǐ dàu nèr chyù dzwò shémma?
	Wǒ dàu nèr chyù dzwò syítí chyù.
	Wǒ dàu nèr chyù tīng chàngpyār chyù.
	Wǒ dàu nèr chyù kàn dyànshì chyù.
	Wǒ dàu nèr chyù jāu dzájì chyù.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā jīdau bujīdau wǒmen nèityan kāu shùsywé.	Nǐ jīdau wǒmen nèityan kāu shùsywé ma?
	Wǒmen dàgài Shíywe báhau kāu.
	Wǒmen dàgài hòutyan kāu.
	Wǒmen dàgài míngtyan dzāushang kāu.
	Wǒ bùjīdau.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā yùbeile ma.	Nǐ yùbeile ma?
	Wǒ yǐjing yùbeile.
	Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne.
Nǐ wèn tā, nèige shūjyàdz shang yǒu méiyou Jūngwen dìdyǎn.	Nèige shūjyàdz shang yǒu méiyou Jūngwen dìdyǎn?
	Nèige shūjyàdz shang yǒu Jūngwen dìdyǎn.

Nèige shūjyàdz shang méiyou Jūngwen dǐdyǎn.

NÍ wèn tā, tā jīntyan yǒu shémma kè.	<u>NÍ jīntyan yǒu shémma kè</u>?
	Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Yīngwén.
	Wǒ jīntyan yǒu shèhwèi.
	Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Syībānyáwén.
	Wǒ jīntyan méiyou kè.
NÍ wèn tā, wǒmen túshūgwán yǒu shémma.	<u>Wǒmen túshūgwán yǒu shémma</u>?
	Wǒmen túshūgwán yǒu dzájì.
	Wǒmen túshūgwán yǒu Fàwen shū.
	Wǒmen túshūgwán yǒu Yīngwen bàu.
	Wǒmen túshūgwán yǒu shūjyàdz.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

NÍ dàu nǎr chyù?

Wǒ dàu sywésyàu chyù.

NÍ jīntyan dàu sywésyàu chyù dzwò shémma?

Wǒ jīntyan dàu sywésyàu dzwò dìrán syítí chyù.

Nǐ míngtyan dzǎushang yǒu shémma kè?

Wǒ míngtyan dzǎushang yǒu Jūngwén.

Jèige túshūgwán yǒu shémma?

Jèige túshūgwán yǒu shū.

Nǐer yǒu Jūngwen bàu ma?

Nǐer méiyou Jūngwen bàu, nèr jyòu yǒu Yīngwen bàu.

NÍ jīdau tā chángchang kàn dyànshì ma?

Tā bùcháng kàn dyànshì, tā chàngchang tīng chàngpyār.

Wǒmen Shíywe sìzhau kāu shémma?

Wǒmen Shíywe sìzhau kāu shùsywé.

Wǒ dzài jèr kàn dzájì. NÍ dzài nǎr kàn shū?

Wǒ yě dzài jèr kànkan Fàwen dzájì.

NÍ jǎule Jūngwen dǐdyǎn le ma?

Wǒ hái méijāu ne. Nǐ kànkan nèige yìdz shang yǒu shémma shū? Nèr jyòu yǒu Syībānyáwen dzájǐ, méiyou Jūngwen dǐdyǎn. Búyaujìn. Yìhwěr wǒ dzài kànkan.

NARRATION

Wǒmende túshūgwǎn hén hǎukàn. Nèr yǒu shū. Nèr yé yǒu dzájǐ. Wǒ jīntyan dzǎushang dàu nèr chyù jāu Jūngwen dǐdyǎn chyù. Jwōdz shang, shūjyàdz shang dōu méiyou. Nèr jyòu yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.

Wǒmen Shǐywe báhau kāu shùsywé. Wǒ yǐjing yùbeile. Chén Jyā-jyùn hái méiyùbei. Tā dzài túshūgwǎn dzwò Déwen syìtí.

RHYMES

Yī èr sān,
Sān èr yī,
Yī èr sān sì wǔ lyòu chī,
Chī lyòu wǔ sì sān èr yī.
Sān jyǒu èrshrchī,
Jyóu jyǒu bāshryī,
Shùsywé shùsywé hěn rúngyi.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Pronunciation (On tape - utterances are spaced to permit the student to imitate.)

Chén Jyā-jyùn. Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?
Nǐ jǐrdau wǒmen nèityan kāu shùsywé ma?
Wǒ jāu Jūngwen dǐdyǎn.
Wǒmen dàgài Sānywe sìzhau kāu.
Nèr yě méiyou.
Yī Èr Sān Sì Wǔ Lyòu Chī Bā Jyǒu Shǐ

2. Listening and Speaking (Student listens to the tape and responds according to the proper sentence he has learned. Several correct responses to each utterance may be possible,

but the most direct one taught and practiced in this unit is suggested in parentheses.)

Nǐ dàu nǎr chyù?

(Wǒ dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.)

Nǐ jīntyan yǒu shémma kè?

(Wǒ jīntyan yǒu Jūngwén.)

Nǐ chángchang kàn Jūngwen bàu ma?

(Wǒ chángchang kàn Jūngwen bàu.)

Nǐ yǒu Yīngwen dǯdyǎn ma?

(Wǒ yǒu Yīngwen dǯdyǎn.)

Túshūgwán yǒu shémma?

(Túshūgwán yǒu shū.)

Nǐ dàu nèr chyù dzwò syǐtǐ chyù ma?

(Wǒ dàu nèr chyù dzwò syǐtǐ chyù.)

Nǐ kàn nèige shūjyàdz shang yǒu dzájǐr méiyou?

(Wǒ yǐjing kànle. Nèr méiyou.)

3. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passages in English)

Wǒmende túshūgwán yǒu shū. Wǒ jīntyan dzǎushang dàu nèr chyù dzwò dǯrán syǐtǐ chyù. Chén Jyā-jyùn yě dzài nèr kàn bàu. Wǒmen Sǯywe chǐhau kǎu Syībānyáwén. Wǒ hái méi yùbei. Wǒ dàu sywésyàu jǎu Syībānyáwen dǯdyǎn chyù.

4. Reading (To be used after Romanization has been learned)

Chén Jyā-jyùn dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.

Wǒ dàu jyàushǐr chyù.

Tā dàu nèr chyù dzwò shémma?

Tā dàu nèr chyù dzwò shùsywé syǐtǐ chyù.

Jèr méiyou jwōdz, jèr yóu yǐdz.

Nǐ jǐrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu shèhwèi ma?

Wǒmen Jyǒuywe shrèrhau kǎu.

Nǐ yùbeile méiyùbei?

Wǒmen syān dàu shǐryànshǐr chyù jǎu shūjyàdz chyù.

UNIT IV

GOING TO THE DINING ROOM

Student A and B go to the dining room together. Student A plans to have a steak while B, being too heavy already, goes on a diet.

In the second section, Student A shows his friend how he really can eat.

In the third section of the dialogue, they talk about Chinese food and restaurants. Student B advises A that nobody can eat steaks with chopsticks, but there are also knives and forks in Chinese restaurants.

DIALOGUE

Sywésheng Yī: Wǒ èle. Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yíkwàr chyù chīfàn ma?

Sywésheng Èr: Hǎu a. Nǐ jīntyan syǎng chī shémma?

Sywésheng Yī: Wó syǎng chī nyóupái. Nǐ ne?

Sywésheng Èr: Wó syǎng chī yìdyǎr chīngtsài.

Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ yìdyǎr ròu dōu bùchī ma?

Sywésheng Èr: Wǒ tài pàngle, bùnéng dzài chī ròu le.

Sywésheng Yī: Jīntyande tsài jēn bútswò a. Yǒu jī, yé yǒu yú.

Sywésheng Èr: Wǒ jyòu chī yìpár chīngtsài, hē yìbēi nyóunǎi.

Sywésheng Yī: Wǒ yàu yíkwài jájī, yípyàr myànbāu, yìwǎn tāng.

Sywésheng Èr: He, nǐ nèmma shòu, kěshr jēn néng chī a!

Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ cháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn ma?

Sywésheng Èr: Wǒ cháng chyù. Wó hěn ài chī Jūnggwo fàn.

Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz ma?

Sywésheng Èr: Hwèi yìdyǎr. Dwèile, Jūnggwo fàngwǎr yé yǒu nyóupái.

Sywésheng Yī: Nǐ yě kéyi yùng kwàidz chī nyóupái ma?

Sywésheng Èr: Dzěmma néng yùng kwàidz chī ne! Tāmen nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.

Student A: I'm hungry. Will you go to eat with me?

Student B: Fine. What would you like to eat today?

Student A: I'd like to eat a steak. How about you?

Student B: I only care for a little vegetable.

Student A: You don't want any meat at all?

Student B: I'm too fat! Can't eat any more meat!

Student A: The food is really good today. There is chicken as well as fish.

Student B: I'll only have an order of vegetable, and a glass of milk.

Student A: I want a piece of fried chicken, a slice of bread, and a bowl of soup.

Student B: Hey! You are so skinny, but my, how you really can eat!

Student A: Do you often go to Chinese restaurants to eat?

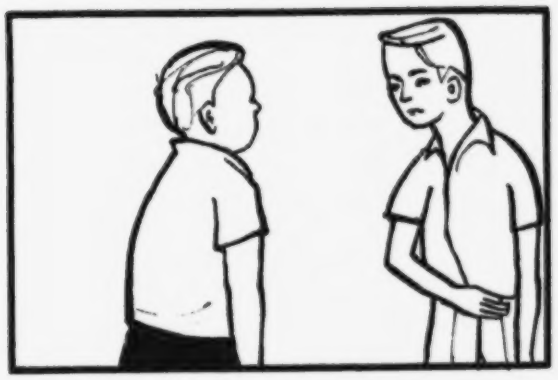
Student B: Yes, I often go. I like Chinese food very much.

Student A: Do you know how to use chopsticks?

Student B: A little. Yes, Chinese restaurants also serve steak.

Student A: Can you also eat steak with chopsticks?

Student B: How can anyone eat steak with chopsticks! They also have knives and forks.



Wǒ èle. Nǐ kéyi gēn
wǒ yìkwàr...?
Hǎu a. Nǐ jīntyan
syǎng chī shémma?

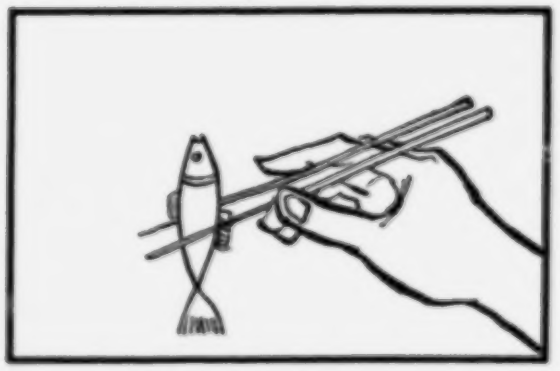
Wǒ syǎng chī nyóupái.
Nǐ ne?
Wǒ jyòu syǎng chī
yìdyǎr chīngtsài.

Nǐ yìdyǎr ròu dōu
bùchī ma?
Wǒ tài pàngle,
bùnéng...

Jīntyande tsài jēn
bútswò a. Yǒu...
Wǒ jyòu chī yìpár
chīngtsài, hē
yìbēi nyóunǎi.

Wǒ yàu yíkwài jájī,
yípyàr myànbāu,
yìwǎn tāng.
He, nǐ nèmma shòu,
kěshr...

Nǐ cháng dàu Jūnggwo
fàngwǎr chyù
chīfàn ma?
Wǒ cháng chyù. Wó
hěn ài chī...



Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz
ma?
Hwèi yìdyǎr. Dwèile...

Nǐ yě kéyǐ yùng
kwàidz chī...?
Dzěnma néng yùng
kwàidz chī ne...

THE SOUNDS

1. Initial

   ts tsài

2. Tone

   a. Successive low tones

   If more than three tones occur in sequence the most common pattern alternates low and rising tones, but this may be modified by a desire to stress some particular word or words.

   Jūnggwo fàngwār yě yǒu nyóupái.

   Jūnggwo fàngwār yé yǒu nyóupái.

   b. Tones on yī, chī, bā

   The numeral yī (one), when used as cardinal in counting, has the high level tone. When followed by a measure, however, it behaves exactly like the negative adverb bù. Hence, yìpyàr (-pyàr being a falling tone), but yìpár. This change is most evident when the number is stressed. The two numerals chī and bā keep the level tone, except when followed by a falling tone, when they (like yī) tend to rise: chíbēi nyóunāi, but chípyàr myànbāu. As in the case of bù and yī, this tone change is most noticeable when the numeral is stressed.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

nyóupái	beefsteak
yìdyār	a little; a bit; some
chíngtsài	vegetable; green vegetable
ròu	meat
tsài	vegetables; a dish of food other than a staple
jī	chicken
yú	fish

nyóunǎi	milk
jájī	fried chicken
myànbāu	bread
tāng	soup
fànguǎr	restaurant
fàn	meal; cooked rice
kwàidz	chopsticks
dāuchā	knife and fork

2. Verb

chī	eat
hē	drink
yàu	want; like
yùng	use

3. Verb-Object Compound

A Chinese verb may be so commonly associated with a generalized object that they form a compound readily translatable into a single English verb. Such compounds are identified as verb-object compounds; e.g., chīfàn, literally "eat meals" or "eat cooked rice," is understood simply as "eat." Thus Nǐ chīfànle ma? means, "Did you eat?" When a specific object is used, it must replace the generalized object in a verb-object compound; e.g., Wǒ chī nyóupái (I eat beefsteak), never Wǒ chīfàn nyóupái. The object in a verb-object compound, in most cases, can be modified by adjectives and measures; e.g., Wǒ chī Jūnggwo fàn (I eat Chinese food).

4. Auxiliary Verb

An auxiliary verb supplements the main verb and appears immediately in front of it (cf. Handbook, p. 29). As it is done in English, the main verb, when clearly understood, is often omitted leaving the auxiliary to function alone.

Nǐ hwèi yùng kàidz ma?

Wǒ hwèi yùng kwàidz.

Wǒ hwèi. (Or simply, Hwèi.)

Three auxiliary verbs with overlapping meanings are introduced in this unit. Néng, huèi, kěyi may all be translated with the English auxiliary verb "can," yet under scrutiny they seem to stress physical ability or possibility, the know-how and permissibility, respectively.

kěyi	may; can; be permitted to
syǎng	want to; plan to
néng	can; be able to
huèi	can; know how to
ài	like to; love to

5. Co-Verb

gēn	be with; and; follow

6. Adjective

è	hungry
pàng	fat
bútsuò	nice; not bad
shòu	skinny; thin

7. Adverb

jēn	truly; really
yíkuàr	together
tài	too; excessively
nàmma	in that way; to that degree
zěmma	how; in what way; why; how is it that...
kěshì	but; however (MA)

Note: When negation is expressed in a sentence with an adverb and a verb, the position of the negative adverb bù depends upon the exact sense of the sentence. Thus, bùhěn hǎo (not very good) is not the same as hěn bùhǎo (very bad). jēn as an adverb, however, is never preceded by bù.

8. Measure

-pár	plate
-bēi	cup; glass
-kuài	piece (lit. lump)

-pyàr slice

-wǎn bowl

9. Idiomatic Expression

hǎu a fine (all right)

he! hey!

dwèile that's right (Yes, it is.)

10. Words with the final sound r

A large number of Chinese nouns, particularly in the Peking accent, are pronounced with the final consonant r, (cf. Handbook, p. 21). e.g., fànguǎr, chàngpyār.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

fàntīng dining room; cafeteria

bīngshwěi ice water

chǎomyàn fried noodles

chǎufàn fried rice

2. VO Compound

nyànshū study

3. Adjective

bǎu full (for eating)

hǎuchī delicious; tasty

4. Adverb

jèmma in this way; to this degree; so

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Suffix -le to indicate changed situation or status

In Unit III we have learned that the suffix -le indicates completion of action regardless of tense. In the case of an adjective, it describes a situation, and when the situation is changed, the suffix -le is also used. The same thing can be applied to thought, wish, feeling, etc. A changed intention is also a changed situation or status.

a. With adjectives — Adj le

Wǒ èle.

Wǒ tài pàngle.

b. With auxiliary verb — AV V (O) le

Bùnéng dzài chī ròu le .

2. Sentence with auxiliary verbs — S AV V (O)

Nǐ jīntyan syǎng chī shémma?

Wǒ bùnéng dzài chī ròu le.

Note: Negative adverb bù normally goes in front of the auxiliary verb when the whole idea is negated; e.g., Wǒ bùnéng dzài chī ròu le. (I can't eat meat any more.) But Nǐ néng búchyù ma? (Can you refuse to go?) is a different case.

3. Omission of subject with yǒu — Yǒu N

The sense of the word yǒu is "there is" in the following: Yǒu jī, yé yǒu yú (There are chicken and fish.)

4. Multiple objects

A verb may have several objects. In this case the verb is usually repeated with each object together with the connective yē:

Yǒu jī, yé yǒu yú. — S V O, ye V O,...

The connective yē is often omitted:

Wǒ jyòu chī yìpár chǐngtsài, hē yìbēi nyóunǎi. — S V O, VO

Or both the connective and the repeated verb may be omitted:

Wǒ yàu yíkuài jájī, yìpyàr myànbāu, yìwǎn tāng. — S V O, O, O,...

Note: If the connective yē is used, it must be followed by a verb.

5. N-ne question form — N ne?

This is a simplified question form widely used in Chinese

daily conversation. It has to follow the context of the conversation. The function of this simplified question form is to avoid unnecessary repetition of what is clearly understood.

Wǒ syāng chī nyóupái. Nǐ ne? (Nǐ syāng chī nyóupái ma?)

Chén Jyā-jyùn ne? (Chén Jyā-jyùn syāng chī nyóupái ma?)

6. Numbered noun Nu-M N

When a noun is numbered, an appropriate measure word is inserted between the number and the noun.

yìpár chǐngtsài

yìbēi nyóunǎi

yíkwài jájī

yìpyàr myànbāu

yìwǎn tāng

7. Personal pronoun or name plus nèr and jèr ProN FW; N FW to indicate place:

tāmen nèr	that place of theirs; their place
wǒ jèr	this place of mine; my place
Jāng Měi-fāng nèr	that place of Jāng Měi-fāng; Jāng Měi-fāng's place

Tāmen nèr yé yǒu dāuchā. They also have knives and forks at their place.

This is a very popular form of speech in Mandarin. The student should learn it well. Very frequently, tāmen nèr yǒu is used for the simple tāmen yǒu. Later when the student learns to say such things as "He took it from me," "I borrowed it from him," and "You go to him," this is the only correct form to use.

8. Intensifying exclusiveness S yi-M N dōu negV; S yi-M dōu negV

To express an emphasis, as in the English phrase, "not even a little," yī and a measure, or some expression which signifies a very small number or amount, for instance, yìdyǎr, is used before dōu and the negative form of the verb:

Nǐ yìdyǎr ròu dōu bùchī ma?

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

   a. The subject of food is important in any culture; it is perhaps even more so among the Chinese. There will be more opportunities to discuss this topic in later units. In this unit, the setting is a school cafeteria where American food is served.

   b. Only those Chinese high schools with dormitories have dining arrangements. The mess hall does not resemble an American cafeteria where patrons pick what they like from among a number of choices. The school mess hall in China is either a regular dining room with food served on separate tables seating usually eight diners each, or a buffet system where the student carries his utensils and gets his meal from a serving counter. In the first case, several students sit around a table and eat their meal in the traditional Chinese fashion. In the buffet system, each student has his own individual food plate, and there are no common dishes in the middle of the table.

   c. Traditionally the Chinese eats his meal with a pair of chopsticks in his right hand and a bowl of rice in his left hand. He holds the rice bowl close to his mouth and pushes the rice into his mouth with the chopsticks. The chopsticks are also used to pick up food served in the communal dishes in the center of the table, which is either round or square. If the diner happens to be a southpaw, that's too bad because his chopsticks could easily get tangled with his neighbor's at a crowded table. Chinese chopsticks usually have one end rounded and slightly smaller than the other, but the very tapered kind found in America is Japanese. Knives and forks are

well known to every Chinese student; however, he gets to use them only when he goes to a western style restaurant.

d. As you know, the Chinese do not customarily serve American style beefsteaks. Most of the Chinese dishes are prepared with the ingredients already chopped into bite-size or even smaller pieces, but there are large pieces of pork or whole chickens gracing the Chinese table. When large pieces are served, they are invariably so well cooked that one can easily pick them apart with chopsticks.

e. Some say that it is unsanitary to have a number of diners picking food with chopsticks from communal dishes. The Chinese have recently recognized this also, and they have started serving meals in the buffet style described above, or distributing food to individual dinner plates on the table in very much the same manner as the Americans do. Or each Chinese diner may have two pairs of chopsticks. The longer pair is meant for reaching food in the middle of the table; the shorter pair is for sending food to the mouth. Of course, a Chinese unaccustomed to this system often gets the two pairs of chopsticks mixed up after the third or fourth mouthful.

f. Bowls are, as a rule, more popular than plates in China. There are different kinds of bowls: for soup, for rice, and for different kinds of food. The measure for a certain kind of food depends upon its customary container, which may not coincide with the habitual usage in English.

2. Pedagogical Notes

a. Gather enough illustrations from posters and magazine illustrations to show the various items of food the names of which are studied in this unit.

b. Arrange to have in the classroom some chopsticks, knives and forks, dishes and bowls.
c. Provide a few minutes during the last hour or two to discuss the origin, form, and artistic significance of the Chinese characters. Use sample calligraphy, Chinese brushes, ink, and inkstones to enhance interest and give the students an opportunity to gain another cultural insight. Some of these activities should be repeated in later units when characters are practiced.
d. If possible, arrange a dinner party with the bill of fare consisting of items studied in this unit.

FLUENCY DRILL

È.
Èle.
Yǐjing èle.
Wǒ yǐjing èle.
Wǒ yǐjing tài èle.

Néng.
Néng chī.
Néng chī ròu.
Bùnéng chī ròu.
Bùnéng chī ròu le.
Bùnéng dzài chī rou le.

Chī.
Chī shémma?
Syǎng chī shémma?
Nǐ syǎng chī shémma?
Nǐ jīntyan syǎng chī shémma?

Chīngtsài.
Yìpár chīngtsài.
Chī yìpár chīngtsài.
Jyòu chī yìpár chīngtsài.
Wǒ jyòu chī yìpár chīngtsài.

Nèr.
Tāmen nèr.
Tāmen nèr yǒu.
Tāmen nèr yé yǒu
Tāmen nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.

Yùng.
Yùng kwàidz.
Yùng kwàidz chī.
Néng yùng kwàidz chī.
Dzěmma néng yùng kwàidz chī.
Dzěmma néng yùng kwàidz chī ne.

Gēn.
Gēn wǒ chyù.
Gēn wǒ yíkwàr chyù.
Gēn wǒ yíkwàr chyù chīfàn.
Nǐ gēn wǒ yíkwàr chyù chīfàn.
Nǐ gēn wǒ yíkwàr chyù chīfàn ma?
Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yíkwàr chyù chīfàn ma?

Yìdyǎr.
Yìdyǎr ròu.
Yìdyǎr ròu bùchī.
Yìdyǎr ròu dōu bùchī.
Tā yìdyǎr ròu dōu bùchī.
Tā yìdyǎr ròu dōu bùchī ma?

Fàngwǎr.
Jūnggwo fàngwǎr.
Dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr.
Dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù.
Dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn.
Cháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn.
Nǐ cháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn.
Nǐ cháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn ma?

Hwèi.
Hwèi yùng.
Hwèi yùng kwàidz.
Hwèi yùng kwàidz chī.
Hwèi yùng kwàidz chīfàn.
Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz chīfàn.
Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz chī Jūnggwo fàn.
Nǐ Hwèi yùng kwàidz chī Jūnggwo fàn ma?

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushī	Sywésheng
Le (Changed status)	
Wǒ yǐjing èle.	(Student repeats after
Wǒ yǐjing bǎule.	the model)

Nǐ tài pàngle.
Tā tài shòule.
Wǒ bùnéng chī ròu le.
Tā hwèi yùng kwàidz le.
Nǐ kéyi chīfàn le.

Auxiliary Verbs

Nǐ syǎng chī shémma?
Wǒ ài chī Jūnggwo fàn.
Tā hwèi yùng kwàidz.
Wǒ kéyi gēn nǐ yíkwàr chyù.
Tā jēn néng chī a.

S V O, yě V O, ...

Yǒu jī, yé yǒu yú.
Wó yǒu Yīngwén, yé yǒu Jūngwén.
Wǒ yàu yíkwài nyóupái, yě yàu yìwǎn tāng.
Tā kàn dyànshì, yě tīng chàngpyār.
Nín hē nyóunǎi, yě hē bīngshwěi.
Tā chī chǎumyàn, yě chī chǎufàn.

S V O, V O, ...

Wǒ chī yìpár chīngtsài, hē yìbēi nyóunǎi.
Tā yàu yìwǎn tāng, yàu yípyàr myànbāu.
Wǒmen yǒu dìrán, yǒu shèhwèi, yǒu shùsywé.
Nǐ hē yìbēi nyóunǎi, hē yìwǎn tāng.
Tā chī nyóupái, chī jájī, chī chǎumyàn.
Túshūgwán yǒu shū, yǒu bàu, yǒu dzájì.

S V O, O, O, ...

Wǒ chī yípyàr myànbāu, yíkwài nyóupái.
Nǐ hē yìwǎn tāng, yìbēi bīngshwěi.
Tā yàu yìpár chīngtsài, yíkwài yú.
Wǒmen kàn shū, bàu, dzájì.
Tā jǎu Fàwén dìdyǎn, Syībānyáwén dìdyǎn.
Wǒ ài chī Fàgwo fàn, Jūnggwo fàn.

ProN PW

Tāmen nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.
Wǒmen jèr yǒu shū, yé yǒu dzájǐr.
Nǐmen nèr yǒu méiyou túshūgwǎn?
Wǒ jèr méiyou jwōdz, yě méiyou yǐdz.
Tā nèr yǒu Jūngwen dǐdyǎn, yé yǒu Yīngwen dǐdyǎn.
Nín nèr yǒu méiyou Jūnggwo shū, Měigwo shū?

S yi-M (N) dou negV

Nǐ yìdyǎr ròu dōu bùchī ma?
Wǒ yìkwài nyóupái dōu bùchī.
Tā yìbēi bīngshwēi dōu bùhē.
Wǒ yìpyàr myànbāu dōu méiyou.
Tā yìwǎn tāng dōu bùhē.
Wǒmen jèr yíge fàngwār dōu méiyou.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Wǒ èle.	Wǒ èle.
bāu	Wǒ bāule.
pàng	Wǒ pàngle.
shòu	Wǒ shòule.
Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yìkwàr chyù chīfàn ma?	Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yìkwàr chyù chīfàn ma?
nyànshū	Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yìkwàr chyù nyànshū ma?
kàn bàu	Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yìkwàr chyù kàn bàu ma?
jáu yǐdz	Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yìkwàr chyù jáu yǐdz ma?
hē nyóunǎi	Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yìkwàr chyù hē nyóunǎi ma?
Nǐ syǎng chī shémma?	Nǐ syǎng chī shémma?
ài	Nǐ ài chī shémma?

néng	Nǐ néng chī shémma?
kéyi	Nǐ kéyi chī shémma?
hwèi	Nǐ hwèi chī shémma?
Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz ma?	Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz ma?
dìdyān	Nǐ hwèi yùng dìdyān ma?
dāuchā	Nǐ hwèi yùng dāuchā ma?
Wǒ syāng chī nyóupái.	Wǒ syāng chī nyóupái.
chǐngtsài	Wǒ syāng chī chǐngtsài.
jī	Wǒ syāng chī jī.
yú	Wǒ syāng chī yú.
Jūnggwo tsài	Wǒ syāng chī Jūnggwo tsài.
Nǐ bùneng dzài chī ròu le.	Nǐ bùnéng dzài chī ròu le.
hē nyóunāi	Nǐ bùnéng dzài hē nyóunāi le.
kàn dyànshì	Nǐ bùnéng dzài kàn dyànshì le.
tǐng chàngpyār	Nǐ bùnéng dzài tǐng chàngpyār le.
yàu nyóupái	Nǐ bùnéng dzài yàu nyóupái le.
Jīntyande tsài jēn búts wò a.	Jīntyande tsài jēn búts wò a.
hāuchī	Jīntyande tsài jēn hāuchī a.
hāu	Jīntyande tsài jēn hāu a.
Tā yìdyār ròu dōu bùchī.	Tā yìdyār ròu dōu bùchī.
jī	Tā yìdyār jī dōu bùchī.
yú	Tā yìdyār yú dōu bùchī.
chǐngtsài	Tā yìdyār chǐngtsài dōu bùchī.
Tā hē yìbēi nyóunāi.	Tā hē yìbēi nyóunāi.
chǐwān tāng	Tā hē chǐwān tāng.
bābēi bīngshwēi	Tā hē bābēi bīngshwēi.

Tāmen nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.	Tāmen nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.
WǑ jèr	WǑ jèr yé yǒu dāuchā.
NÍ nèr	NÍ nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.
WǑmen jèr	WǑmen jèr yé yǒu dāuchā.
Tā nèr	Tā nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.
NÍmen nèr	NÍmen nèr yé yǒu dāuchā.
WǑ chī yìpár chíngtsài.	WǑ chī yìpár chíngtsài.
chípyár nyánbāu	WǑ chī chípyár nyánbāu.
bǐkuài jájī	WǑ chī bǐkuài jájī.
yìkuài nyóupái	WǑ chī yìkuài nyóupái.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

NÍ èle ma?	NÍ èle ma?
bāu	NÍ bāule ma?
Tā	Tā bāule ma?
pàng	Tā pàngle ma?
Jāng Mǎi-fāng	Jāng Mǎi-fāng pàngle ma?
NÍ kéyi gěn wǑ yìkuàr chyù chīfàn ma?	NÍ kéyi gěn wǑ yìkuàr chyù chīfàn ma?
nyánshū	NÍ kéyi gěn wǑ yìkuàr chyù nyánshū ma?
Tā	Tā kéyi gěn wǑ yìkuàr chyù nyánshū ma?
kàn bàu	Tā kéyi gěn wǑ yìkuàr chyù kàn bàu ma?
NÍn	NÍn kéyi gěn wǑ yìkuàr chyù kàn bàu ma?
Tāmen syǎng chī shémma?	Tāmen syǎng chī shémma?
hē	Tāmen hē chī shémma?
NÍmen	NÍmen hē chī shémma?

néng	Nimen néng chī zhème?
Chén Jyā-jyùn	Chén Jyā-jyùn néng chī zhème?
Wǒ xyǎng chī yìkuài	
nyóupái.	Wǒ xyǎng chī yìkuài nyóupái.
yìpyàr myànbāo	Wǒ xyǎng chī yìpyàr myànbāo.
Lǐ Syānshēng	Lǐ Syānshēng xyǎng chī yìpyàr myànbāo.
yìpǎr chǐngtsài	Lǐ Syānshēng xyǎng chī yìpǎr chǐngtsài
Wáng Lǎoshī	Wáng Lǎoshī xyǎng chī yìpǎr chǐngtsài.
Nǐ bùnéng dzài chī	
chāumyàn le.	Nǐ bùnéng dzài chī chāumyàn le.
chī chāufàn	Nǐ bùnéng dzài chī chāufàn le.
Wǒ	Wǒ bùnéng dzài chī chāufàn le.
hē bīngshuǐ	Wǒ bùnéng dzài hē bīngshuǐ le.
Tā	Tā bùnéng dzài hē bīngshuǐ le.
Jīntyande tsài jēn	
bútsuò.	Jīntyande tsài jēn bútsuò a.
hǎochī	Jīntyande tsài jēn hǎochī a.
Dzuótyande	Dzuótyande tsài jēn hǎochī a.
hǎo	Dzuótyande tsài jēn hǎo a.
Chyántyande	Chyántyande tsài jēn hǎo a.
Nǐ huèi yùng kwàidz ma?	Nǐ huèi yùng kwàidz ma?
dǐdyān	Nǐ huèi yùng dǐdyān ma?
Tā	Tā huèi yùng dǐdyān ma?
dāochā	Tā huèi yùng dāochā ma?
Chén Jyā-jyùn	Chén Jyā-jyùn huèi yùng dāochā ma?
Wǒ yǐdyǎr rìsu dōu bùchī.	Wǒ yǐdyǎr rìsu dōu bùchī.
chǐngtsài	Wǒ yǐdyǎr chǐngtsài dōu bùchī.

Jāng Syānsheng	Jāng Syānsheng yìdyǎr chīngtsài dōu bùchī.
yú	Jāng Syānsheng yìdyǎr yú dōu bùchī.
Wáng Láoshī	Wáng Láoshī yìdyǎr yú dōu bùchī.
Tāmen nàr yé yǒu dāuchā.	Tāmen nàr yé yǒu dāuchā.
kuàidz	Tāmen nàr yé yǒu kuàidz.
Wǒmen jèr	Wǒmen jèr yé yǒu kuàidz.
fàntīng	Wǒmen jèr yé yǒu fàntīng.
Lǐ Syānsheng nàr	Lǐ Syānsheng nàr yé yǒu fàntīng.

RESPONSE DRILL

Nǐ èle ma?

(èle)	Wǒ èle.
(yǐjing èle)	Wǒ yǐjing èle.
(bú)	Wǒ bú.
(hái bú)	Wǒ hái bú.
(yìdyǎr dōu bú)	Wǒ yìdyǎr dōu bú.

Nǐ kéyi gěn wǒ yíkuàr chyù chīfàn ma?

(kéyi)	Wǒ kéyi gěn nǐ yíkuàr chyù chīfàn.
(bùnéng)	Wǒ bùnéng gěn nǐ yíkuàr chyù chīfàn.

Nǐ syǎng chī shémma?

(nyóupái)	Wǒ syǎng chī nyóupái.
(jājī)	Wǒ syǎng chī jājī.
(cháumyàn)	Wǒ syǎng chī cháumyàn.
(cháufàn)	Wǒ syǎng chī cháufàn.

Nǐ néng bunéng dzài chī rdu?

(kéyi)	Wǒ kéyi dzài chī rdu.
(bùnéng)	Wǒ bùnéng dzài chī le.

Jīntyande tsài hāu buhāu?

(hén hāu) Jīntyande tsài hen hāu.

(jēn bútswò) Jīntyande tsài jēn bútswò.

(hén hāuchī) Jīntyande tsài hén hāuchī.

Nǐ ài chī Jūnggwo fàn ma?

(ài) Wǒ ài chī Jūnggwo fàn.

(hěn ài) Wó hěn ài chī Jūnggwo fàn.

(búài) Wǒ búài chī Jūnggwo fàn.

Nǐ chángchang dàu Jūnggwo fàngwār chyù ma?

(chángchang) Wǒ chángchang dàu Jūnggwo fàngwār chyù.

(bùcháng) Wǒ bùcháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwār chyù.

Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz ma?

(hwèi) Wǒ hwèi yùng kwàidz.

(búhwèi) Wǒ búhwèi yùng kwàidz.

Nǐ yìdyār chīngtsài dōu bùchī ma?

(bùchī) Wǒ yìdyār chīngtsài dōu bùchī.

(hěn ài chī) Wó hěn ài chī chīngtsài.

Nǐmen nèr yǒu dāuchā ma?

(yǒu) Wǒmen jèr yǒu dāuchā.

(méiyou) Wǒmen jèr méiyou dāuchā.

(yíge dōu méiyou) Wǒmen jèr yíge dāuchā dōu méiyou.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā èle ma. Nǐ èle ma?

Wǒ èle.

Wó yǐjing èle.

Wo búè.

Wo hái búè.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā kéyǐ gēn nǐ yìkwàr chyù chīfàn ma.	Nǐ kéyǐ gēn wǒ yìkwàr chyù chīfàn ma? Wǒ kéyǐ gēn nǐ yìkwàr chyù chīfàn. Wǒ bùnéng gēn nǐ yìkwàr chyù chīfàn.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā syǎng chī shémma.	Nǐ syǎng chī shémma? Wǒ syǎng chī cháufàn. Wǒ syǎng chī nyóupái. Wǒ syǎng chī chāumyàn. Wǒ syǎng chī jájī.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā néng bunéng dzài chī ròu.	Nǐ néng bunéng dzài chī ròu? Wǒ bùnéng dzài chī ròu le. Wǒ kéyǐ dzài chī ròu.
Nǐ wèn tā, jīntyande tsài hǎu buhǎu.	Jīntyande tsài hǎu buhǎu? Jīntyande tsài jēn bútswò. Jīntyande tsài hén hǎu. Jīntyande tsài hén hǎuchī.
Nǐ wèn tā, ài búài chī Jūnggwo fàn.	Nǐ ài chī Jūnggwo fàn ma? Wǒ ài chī Jūnggwo fàn. Wǒ búài chī Jūnggwo fàn. Wǒ hěn ài chī Jūnggwo fàn.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā cháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwār chyù chīfàn ma.	Nǐ chángchang dàu Jūnggwo fàngwār chyù chīfàn ma? Wǒ chángchang dàu Jūnggwo fàngwār chyù chīfàn. Wǒ bùcháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwār chyù chīfàn.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā hwèi buhwèi yùng kwàidz.	Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz ma? Wǒ hwèi yùng kwàidz. Wǒ búhwèi yùng kwàidz.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā yìdyǎr chīngtsài dōu bùchī ma.	<u>Nǐ yìdyǎr chīngtsài dōu bùchī ma?</u> Wǒ yìdyǎr chīngtsài dōu bùchī. Wǒ hěn ài chī chīngtsài.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā nèr yǒu méiyou dāuchā.	<u>Nǐ nèr yǒu méiyou dāuchā?</u> Wǒ jèr yǒu dāuchā. Wǒ jèr méiyou dāuchā. Wǒ jèr yíge dāuchā dōu méiyou.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Nǐ jīntyan syǎng chī shémma?
Wǒ jīntyan syǎng chī yìpár chǎumyàn. Nǐ ne?
Wǒ syǎng chī yìpár chǎufàn, yìwǎn tāng.
Nǐ ài chī Jūnggwo tsài ma?
Wǒ hěn ài chī. Wǒ cháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù.
Nǐ syíhwan Jūnggwo fàngwǎrde nyóupái ma?
Hén syíhwan. Nǐ yě cháng chī ma?
Wǒ jèmma pàng, bùnéng chángchang chī nyóupái.
Nǐ bǎule méibau?
Hái méibǎu. Kěshr wǒ bùnéng dzài chīle.
Wǒ syǎng dzài chī yíkwài jájī.
He, nǐ nèmma shòu, kěshr jēn néng chī a.
Nǐ hwèi buhwèi yùng kwàidz.
Wǒ hwèi yìdyǎr, kěshr wǒ bùcháng yùng kwàidz chīfàn.
Nǐmen nèr yǒu kwàidz ma?
Wǒmen méiyou kwàidz, kěshr yǒu dāuchā.

NARRATION

Wǒmende túshūgwǎn yǒu shū, yǒu bàu, yǒu dzájì. Wǒ jīntyan dzǎushang gēn Chén Jyā-jyùn yíkwàr dàu nèr chyù. Wǒ syān dzwò shùsywé syítí. Tā syān jǎu Jūngwen dǐdyǎn. Kèshr nèige jwōdz shang, jèige shūjyàdz shang dōu méiyou Jūngwen dǐdyǎn. Wǒ yě méiyou Jūngwen dǐdyǎn.

Wǒmen wǎnshang yīkwàr dàu fàntīng chyù chīfàn. Nèrde tsài hén hǎuchī. Yǒu jī, yǒu ròu, yǒu yú, yǒu chīngtsài. Wǒ chī yīkwài nyóupái. Tā jyòu chī yìpár chīngtsài.

Wó hěn ài chī Jūnggwo fàn. Tā yé hěn ài chī. Wǒmen chángchang yīkwàr dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn. Wó syīhwan chǎumyàn, tā syīhwan chǎufàn. Wǒ hwèi yùng kwàidz, kěshr tā búhwèi.

RHYMES

Jūnggwo fàn,
Jēn hǎuchī
Chī chǎumyàn,
Yùng kwàidz.
Měigwo fàn,
Yǒ bútswò.
Chī nyóupái,
Yùng dāuchā.
Jīntyande tsài,
Jēn bútswò.
Yǒu jī, yǒu yú,
Yǒu chīngtsài.
Tā nèmma pàng,
Bùchī ròu.
Wǒ jèmma shòu,
Hěn néng chī.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Pronunciation (On tape - utterances are spaced to permit the student to imitate.)

Nǐ kéyi gēn wǒ yīkwàr chyù chīfàn ma?
Jīntyande tsài jēn bútswò.
Wǒ yàu yīpyàr myànbāu, yìpár chīngtsài.
Tā tài pàngle, bùnéng dzài chī nyóupái le.

2. Listening and Speaking (Student listens to the tape and responds according to the proper sentence he has learned. Several correct responses to each utterance may be possible, but the most direct one taught and practiced in this unit is suggested in parentheses.)

Nǐ èle ma?

(Wǒ yǐjing èle.)

Nǐ hwèi yùng kwàidz ma?

(Wǒ hwèi yùng kwàidz.)

Nǐ hē buhē nyóunǎi?

(Wǒ bùnéng dzài hē nyóunǎi le.)

Nǐ syǎng chī shémma?

(Wǒ syǎng chī...)

Nǐ cháng dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn ma?

(Wǒ chángchang chyù.)

Nǐ yìdyǎr ròu dōu bùchī ma?

(Wǒ hěn ài chī ròu.)

Nǐmen nèr yǒu mèiyou dāuchā?

(Wǒmen jèr yǒu dāuchā.)

Nǐ ài chī Měigwo fàn ma?

(Wǒ hěn ài chī Měigwo fàn.)

3. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passages in English)

Wǒ gēn Chén Jyā-jyùn yíkwàr chyù chīfàn. Jīntyan fàntīngde tsài jēn bútswò. Yǒu nyóupái, yé yǒu jájī. Wǒ chī yíkwài nyóupái, hē yìwǎn tāng. Tā chī yìpár chīngtsài, hē yìbēi nyóunǎi. Wǒmen dōu hěn ài chī Jūnggwo fàn. Wǒ ài chī chǎumyàn. Tā ài chī chǎufàn. Wǒ hwèi yùng kwàidz. Tā jyòu hwèi yìdyǎr. Wǒmen chángchang yíkwàr dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chī Jūnggwo fàn.

4. Reading (To be used after Romanization has been learned)

Tāmen dàu fàntīng chyù chīfànle.

Wǒ hwèi yùng kwàidz chī nyóupái.

Chinese-Mandarin

Tā chī yìpár chǐngtsài, yípyàr myànbāu.
Wǒ hē yìwǎn tāng, yě hē yìbēi bīngshwěi.
Nǐ nèmma pàng, kěshr hái néng chī ròu ma?
Dwèile, wǒ jīntyan dzài fàngwǎr chīle jájī le.
Nǐ dzěmma yùng dāuchā hē tāng ne.
Ní yàu chǎumyàn, yàu chǎufàn?
Dzwótyan wǎnshang wǒ gēn Jāng Měi-fāng dàu Fàgwo
fàngwǎr chyù.

UNIT V

SHOPPING FOR STATIONERY

A patron goes to a stationery store to buy a pen. The sales clerk waits on him, quotes the prices, and sells him a few notebooks in addition.

The sales clerk tries to persuade the patron to buy an abacus and other things, but he succeeds in adding only a few sheets of paper to the sales slip. He adds up the items of purchase without the aid of a cash register or a pencil. The patron pays the bill and the clerk makes the change.

DIALOGUE

Dyànywán: Nǐn yàu mǎi shémma?

Kèren: Wǒ yàu mǎi yǐjī gāngbǐ.

Dyànywán: Wǒmen jèr yǒu Jūnggwode, yé yǒu wàigwode. Nǐn yàu nèiyàngrde?

Kèren: Jèiyàngrde dwōshau chyán?

Dyànywán: Wǔkwai-chǐmau chyán yì-jī.

Kèren: Wǒ jyòu yàu jèijī.

Dyànywán: Wǒmen hái yǒu hěn dwō dūngsyi, nǐn bùmǎi dyǎr byéde ma?

Kèren: Nèisye bǐjìběr mài shémma jyàchyán?

Dyànywán: Dàde lyǎngmau-wǔ, syǎude yìmau-èrfen.

Kèren: Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yìběn dàde, lyángběn syǎude.

Dyànywán: Nǐn kànkan jèige swànpan, sānkwaibàn, *pyányi bupyányi*?

Kèren: Jēn pyányi, kěrshr wǒ yǐjing yǒule.

Dyànywán: Wǒmen yǒu hén hǎude jī, jyàchyán yě búgwèi.

Kèren: Hǎu, gěi wǒ shǐjāng hòude, lyǒujāng báude.

Dyànywán: Hǎu. Nǐn kànkan jèijī chyānbǐ, hěn bútswò.

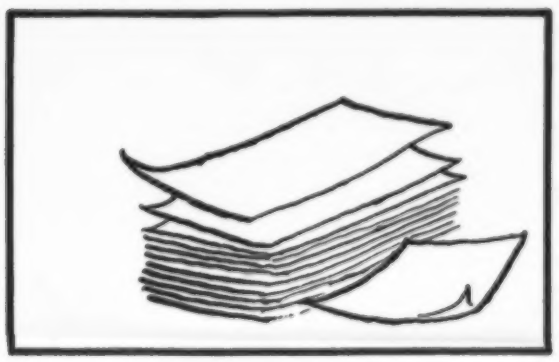
Kèren: Wǒ bùmǎile. Chǐng nǐ swànswan yígùng dwōshau chyán.

Dyànywán: Hau, hau...yígùng chǐkwai-líng-jyǒufen chyán.

Kèren: Jèr shì chǐkwaibàn chyán.

Dyànywán: Syèsye. Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn sìmau-yī.

Nǐn kànkan jèige swànpan, sānkwaibàn, pyányi bupyányi?
Jēn pyányi, kěshr wǒ yǐjing yǒule.

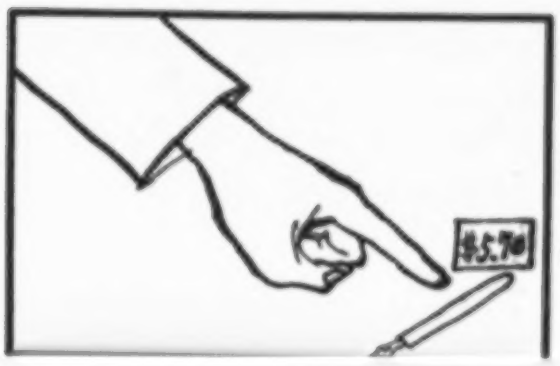


Wǒmen yǒu hěn hǎude jǐr, jyàchyán yě búgwèi.
Hǎu, gěi wǒ shǐjāng hòude, lyòujāng bǎude.

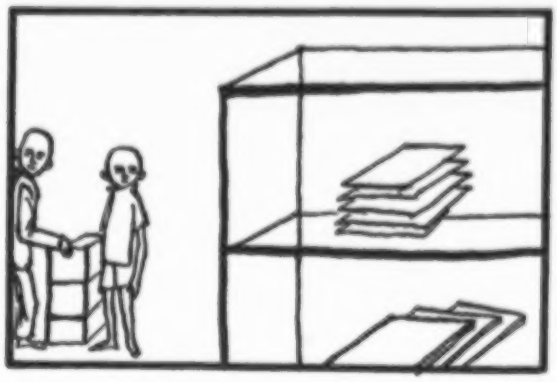
Hǎu. Nǐn kànkan jèijǐ chyānbǐ, hěn bútswò.
Wǒ bùmǎile. Chǐng nǐ swànswan yígùng dwōshau chyán.

Hau, hau...
Jèr shǐr chǐkwaibàn chyán.
Syèsye. Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn sìmau-yī.

Nín yàu mǎi shémma?
Wǒ yàu mǎi yījīr
gāngbǐ.
Wǒmen jèr yǒu jūnggwode,
yé yǒu...



Jèiyàngrde dwōshau
chyán?
Wǔkwai-chǐmau chyán
yījīr.
Wǒ jyǒu yàu jèijīr.



Wǒmen hái yǒu hěn
dwō dūngsyi, nín
bùmái dyǎr byéde ma?
Nèisyē bījìběr mài
shémma jyàchyán?

Dàde lyǎngmau-wǔ,
syǎude yìmau-èrfen.
Chíng nǐ gěi wǒ yìběn
dàde, lyǎngběn
syǎude.

Chinese-Mandarin I

Sales Clerk: What do you wish to buy? (May I help you?)

Patron: I want to buy a pen.

Sales Clerk: Here we have Chinese as well as foreign-made pens. Which kind do you like?

Patron: How much is this kind?

Sales Clerk: $5.70 apiece.

Patron: I'd like to have this one.

Sales Clerk: We have lots of other things here; wouldn't you like to buy something else?

Patron: What's the price of those notebooks?

Sales Clerk: $0.25 for the big notebook and $0.12 for the small one.

Patron: Please give me one big notebook and two small ones.

Sales Clerk: Look at this abacus. $3.50. Isn't it a good buy?

Patron: It's really inexpensive, but I already have one.

Sales Clerk: We have very good paper; the price is also very reasonable.

Patron: All right, give me ten sheets of the thick kind and six of the thin kind.

Sales Clerk: Fine. Take a look at this pencil, it's excellent.

Patron: I don't want to buy anything more. Please figure out how much it is all together.

Sales Clerk: Very good...all together $7.09.

Patron: This is $7.50.

Sales Clerk: Thank you. I still owe you $0.41 change.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

gāngbǐ	fountain pen; western-style pen
dūngsyi	thing
bǐjìběr	notebook
chyán	money
jyàchyán	cost; price
swànpan	abacus
jǐ	paper
chyānbǐ	pencil

2. Place Word

wàigwo	foreign country

3. Verb

mǎi	buy
mài	sell
chǐng	please; invite; request
gěi	give
swàn	count (reduplicated in this unit)
jǎu	make change (the action of the cashier giving change when a patron pays his bill)

4. Auxiliary Verb

yàu	going to; expect to; shall; will

Yàu (to want) ordinarily functions as a main verb (cf. Unit IV), but it appears as an auxiliary verb when it is used together with another verb either to suggest desire, expectation, or imminent action (cf. Unit VI). The sentence in this unit, Nǐn yàu mǎi shémma: yàu may mean either "want to," or "are going to." If yàu is negated, it must mean "want to:" Wǒ búyàu mǎi shémma, "I don't want to buy anything." The negative of yàu expressing expectation or imminent action is simply bù- alone or búhwèi.

5. Adjective

dwō	many; much
byé	other; different
dà	big; large
syǎu	small
pyányi	cheap
gwèi	expensive
hòu	thick
bǎu	thin

Note: Dwō and shǎu (cf. supplementary vocabulary) behave somewhat differently from other adjectives. First of all, they never appear before nouns without an adverbial modifier. Then again, in their qualifying form they may or may not take -de:

hěn dwō(de) dūngsyi, bùshǎu(de) gāngbǐ

Never dwō dūngsyi, shǎu gāngbǐ, nor dwōde dūngsyi, shǎude gāngbǐ.

6. Adverb

yígùng	altogether (MA)

7. Measure

-jī	a unit measure for writing brushes and similar slender objects
-yàngr	kind; sort
-kwài	dollar (Chinese monetary unit)
-máu	dime
-fēn	cent
-syē	some; several
-běn	volume (for books)
-jāng	a unit measure for paper, pictures, tables, etc.

8. Number

dwōshau	how much? how many?
lyǎng-	two; a couple of

líng	zero
bàn	half

Note:

a. Èr and Lyǎng

The number èr is used for the 2's, 20's, and 200's:

èr, shíèr, yìbai-líng-èr, etc.

èrshr, èrbai-èrshí, èrshrwàn, èrbǎiwàn, etc.

Either èr or lyǎng may be used in numbers higher than 20:

èrbǎi or lyángbǎi, èrchyān or lyǎngchyān,

èrwàn or lyǎngwàn, etc.

When two of anything or anyone are indicated, lyǎng with an appropriate measure is used:

lyǎngge rén

lyǎngjāng jr

Lyǎng never stands at the end of a number expression: yíkwai-lyǎngmau chyán becomes yíkwai-èr for the abbreviated form, etc.

In fractional sums, lyǎng is commonly used for the larger units, and èr for the subdivisions:

lyǎngchyān-èr, lyǎngwàn-èrchyān-sān, lyǎngkwai-èr, lyǎngmau-èr, etc.

Never èrge rén, always lyǎngge rén; never lyǎngshí always èrshí. In reading out the numbers, telephone-number style, 2 is always èr.

b. Líng

Where one or more zeros stand between numbers, the word líng is inserted:

yìbǎi-líng-wǔ	105
yìchyān-líng-wǔ	1,005
yìchyān-líng-wǔshí	1,050
yíwàn-líng-wǔshí	10,050

In giving numbers "telephone-style" (cf. Unit VII), cardinal numbers without measures are used and líng is repeated for each zero:

yī-lǐng	10	yī-lǐng-èr	102
yī-èrlǐng	120	yī-lǐng-lǐng-lyòu-lǐng	1-0060

9. Idiomatic Expression

hǎu	okay; all right
syèsye (nǐn)	thanks

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Nouns

dyànywán	clerk; salesman
kèren	guest; patron
máubǐ	Chinese writing brush

2. Adjective

shǎu	few; little
bùshǎu	quite a few

3. Number

Numbers from 100 up:

yìbǎi	100
yìbǎi-yī(shr)	110
èrbǎi (or lyǎngbǎi)	200
sānbǎi-chī(shr)	370
sìbǎi-lǐng-sān	403
yìchyān	1,000
lyǎngchyān-èr(bai)	2,200
sānchyān-lǐng-wǔ(shr)	3,050
wǔchyān-lǐng-yī	5,001
lyòuchyān-bābái-wǔshrchī	6,857
bāchyān-sānbǎi-bā(shr)	8,380
yíwàn	10,000
lyǎngwàn (or èrwàn)	20,000
shírwàn	100,000
èrshrwǔwàn	250,000
yìbǎiwàn	1,000,000
lyǎngchyānwàn	20,000,000
yíwànwan	100,000,000

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Sentence with both indirect and direct objects — S V indO dirO

Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yìbén dàde, lyángbén syǎude.

2. Changed status with negative verbs — S negVle

There are three different patterns to indicate changed situation or status with -le, of which two have been discussed in Unit IV.

Wǒ bùmáile. I won't buy any more.

Compare this with the regular negation of completed action (cf. Unit III).

3. Sums of money

a. Sums of money up to $100

Dollars

Nu	M	N	Nu	M	N	Nu	M	N
yí	-kwai	chyán	yì	-mau	chyán	yì	-fēn	chyán
lyǎng	-kwai	chyán	lyǎng	-mau	chyán	lyǎng	-fēn	chyán
jǐ	-kwai	chyán	jǐ	-mau	chyán	jǐ	-fēn	chyán

bànkwài (chyán)	$ .50
yíkwai-língwu(fēn chyán)	1.05
yíkwai-yì(máu)	1.10
lyǎngkwai-èr(máu)	2.20
sānkwai-sān(máu chyán)	3.30
sìkwai-sìmáu-lyòu(fēn)	4.46
lyòukwai-lyòumáu-bā(fēn chyán)	6.68
bákwai-bāmáu-sì(fēn chyán)	8.84
shíkwaibàn (chyán)	10.50
sānshrchíkwai-wǔ(mau chyán)	37.50
yìbǎikwài (chyán)	100.00

b. Sums of money over $100

10,000's (-wàn)	1,000's (-chyān)	100's (-bǎi)	10's (-shŕ)	1's	M	N	
		yìbǎi	lǐng	wǔ	-kwài	chyán	$ 105
		èrbǎi	yìshr		-kwài	chyán	210
		sānbǎi	èrshr	bá	-kwài	chyán	328
	sžchyān				-kwài	chyán	4,000
	wǔchyān	lǐng	sānshr		-kwài	chyán	5,030
	lyòuchyān	sžbai	lǐng	lyòu	-kwài	chyán	6,406
yíwàn					-kwài	chyán	10,000
lyǎngwàn	chǐchyān	wúbǎi	sžshr		-kwài	chyán	27,540

4. The use of -de in computing.

It is customary to use -de for "and" or "plus" in computing when the operations are said aloud. For this purpose alone, -de functions uniquely without any relation to its other normal behavior in Mandarin. (See "Dialogue Expansion" in this unit.)

5. Inquiring about prices

In asking about and giving prices, no verb is necessary; instead, use dōshau chyán (how much money?) or shémma jyàchyán (what price). However, sometimes a verb, shì (is) or mài (sell for) is used:

Jèiyàngrde dōshau chyán?	Nèisyē bǐjìběr shémma jyàchyán?
Jèiyàngrde shì dōshau chyán?	Nèisyē bǐjìběr shì shémma jyàchyán?
Jèiyàngrde mài dōshau chyán?	Nèisyē bǐjìběr mài shémma jyàchyán?

6. Positions of "apiece"

"Apiece" can go either before or after the price:

Wǔkwai chyán yìběn.

Yìběn wǔkwai chyán.

7. Modification

The modifying suffix -de can be used to make any word or phrase a modifier, but is often omitted in simple unqualified adjectives.

hǎu gānbǐ

dà shū

When -de is kept, making the above examples hǎude gāngbǐ and dàde shū, it usually implies emphasis on the adjective. The suffix -de is usually kept when the adjectival expression is more than one syllable (cf. Unit II, Structural Pattern 7).

hén hǎude jǐ

hǎukànde yīshang

But either hěndwō shū or hěndwōde shū is correct. When the context makes it clearly understood, the modified noun may be omitted.

Wǒmen jèr yǒu Jūnggwode, yé yǒu wàigwode.

Dàde lyǎngmau-wǔ, syǎude yìmau-èrfen.

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

a. It is no longer true that the Chinese shoppers bargain wherever they go. Nowadays there are more non-bargaining than bargaining stores in China. Hence, no bargaining expressions are used in this unit. If our friend in this unit likes to bargain and finds the kind of store to practice it in, clearly he will need help. For bargaining, as it was done in old China and is done in some stores in New York City, is indeed an art that involves much insight into human psychology.

b. The old fashioned stationery stores in China still specialize in typically Chinese articles: writing brushes (máubǐ), Chinese ink sticks (mò), ink stones (yàntái), absorbent papers of various weights, etc.

More often the stationers carry a large variety of commodities including imported items. Thus imported pens, pencils, and various kinds of papers and tablets are available together with western-style stationery made in China. Most Chinese students have acquired the habit of using fountain pens, pencils, ball-point pens, and in their work they use a range of materials similar to what the American students would use. A Chinese student may prefer fountain pens or pencils for taking notes and writing letters, but he is rare who does not know how to use the traditional writing brush at all.

c. Writing Chinese in the traditional way requires the preparation of ink first. This is done by rubbing the ink stick on the ink stone with several drops of water. The writer dips his writing brush in the ink thus prepared, somewhat like a western painter using watercolor. There is art also in the entire process which is closely tied in with the highly cultivated art of calligraphy. A meticulous artist-calligrapher demands that his ink and brush be prepared just right. He may even have a special brush maker who knows his taste well, or he may prefer to make his own brushes. The same goes for the artist's ink.

d. The ingenious computing device called abacus is worth knowing. Although a detailed description of this article and its use lies beyond the scope of our discussion, we can attempt to give a general idea about it here. It is a wooden frame with parallel bamboo sticks set in it. On the sticks there are wooden beads which can move up and down. When used, each bead stands for a unit and each stick a digit. Even very complicated operations can be performed on a simple abacus, but the user must be a very skilled person having learned his rules through practice. Many contests have been staged

between an abacus champion and an IBM computing machine operator; every time the simple ancient device has proven its worth. In some Chinese schools the students still can learn how to use the abacus in class.

e. The Chinese abacus differs from its Japanese version by having two more beads on each digital stick.

2. Pedagogical Notes

For this unit, the realia useful in the classroom may include the various stationery items mentioned in the dialogue and some play money.

FLUENCY DRILL

Măi

Măi shémma?

Yàu măi shémma?

Nǐn yàu măi shémma?

Nǐn jīntyan yàu măi shémma?

Chyán.

Dwōshau chyán.

Jèiyàngrde dwōshau chyán?

Jèiyàngrde gāngbǐ dwōshau chyán?

Jèiyàngrde gāngbǐ mài dwōshau chyán?

Jèiyàngrde gāngbǐ mài dwōshau chyán yìjīr?

Jyàchyán.

Shémma jyàchyán?

Bǐjìběr shémma jyàchyán?

Nèisyē bǐjìběr shémma jyàchyán?

Dwō

Hěn dwō.

Hěn dwō dūngsyi.

Yǒu hěn dwō dūngsyi.

Yōu hěn dwō byéde dūngsyi.

Hái yǒu hěn dwō byéde dūngsyi.

Wǒmen hái yǒu hěn dwō byéde dūngsyi.

Jǎu

Jǎu sìmau-yī.

Jǎu nǐn sìmau-yī.

Yàu jǎu nǐn sìmau-yī.

Hái yàu jǎu nǐn sìmau-yī.

Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn sìmau-yī.

Nèisyē bǐjìběr mài shémma jyàchyán?

Gěi.
Géi wǒ.
Géi wó lyǎngjāng.
Géi wó lyǎngjāng hòude.
Géi wó lyǎngjāng hòude jǐ.
Nǐ gěi wó lyǎngjāng hòude jǐ.
Chǐng nǐ géi wó lyǎngjāng hòude jǐ.

Kwài.
Yíkwai.
Yíkwai chyán.
Yíkwai lyǎngmau chyán.
Yíkwai lyǎngmau sānfen chyán.
Yígùng yíkwai lyǎngmau sānfen chyán.

Máu.
Jyǒumau.
Jyǒumau chyán.
Jyǒumau chyánde.
Jyǒumau chyánde lyǎngmau.
Jyǒumau chyánde lyǎngmau-wǔ.
Jyǒumau chyánde lyǎngmau-wǔ, yíkwai-yìmau-wǔ.

Swàn.
Swànswan.
Swànswan dwōshau.
Swànswan dwōshau chyán.
Swànswan yígùng dwōshau chyán.
Nǐ swànswan yígùng dwōshau chyán.
Chǐng nǐ swànswan yígùng dwōshau chyán.

REPETITION DRILL

S V indO dirO

Wǒ géi nǐ yìbén bǐjìběr. (Student repeats after the model)
Tā géi wǒ yìjī gāngbǐ.

Nǐ géi wǒ lyǎngjāng jr̀.
Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ sānjr̄ chyānbǐ.
Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ wǔjāng hòude.
Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ yìběn dàde,
  sz̀bén syǎude.

Le (Changed status, cf. Unit IV)

Wǒ bùmǎile.
Wǒ búchyùle.
Wǒ bùhēle.
Tā bùchr̄fànle.
Tā bùjǎu shū le.
Tāmen búmài swànpan le.

Sums of Money up to $100

Jèijr̄ gāngbǐ yǐkwai chyán.
Shŕjāng jr̀ yǐkwai-yìmau.
Nèiyàngrde lyǎngkwai-èrmau chyán.
Dàde bǐjìběr shŕsānkwai-wǔmau-lyòufēn.
Jèiyàngrde jwōdz bāshrèrkwai-chǐmau-lyòu.
Nèisyē shūjyàdz yìbai-jyǒushrkwai chyán.

Sums of Money from $100 up

Wǒ yǒu èrbai-yìshrkwai chyán.
Wǒ yǒu lyòubai-chǐshrkwai chyán.
Wǒ yǒu sz̀chyankwai chyán.
Wǒ yǒu bāchyan-sānbai-wǔshrkwai chyán.
Wǒ yǒu yǐwan-sz̀chyan-jyóubai-yìshrkwai.
Wǒ yǒu sānwan-lyòuchyan-chǐbaikwai chyán.

Er and Lyǎng

Lyǎngjr̄ chyānbǐ sānmau-èr
Wàigwode mài lyángbai-èrshrkwai chyán.
Jèige swànpan mài èrshrèrkwai-bàn.
Jèisyē jr̀ mài lyǎngkwai-lyǎngmau-èrfen.
Jwōdz mài lyǎngchyan-èrbai-èrshrchǐkwai.
Nèige mài lyǎngwan-èrchyan-lyángbaikwai.

Líng

Syāude shì yíkwai-líng-wǔfen.
Báude shì lyángbai-líng-lyòukwai chyán.
Jūnggwode shì sānchyan-líng-sānkwai.
Byéde shì sìchyan-líng-jyǒushrchíkwai.
Dàde shì shírwan-líng-bāshrkwai chyán.
Wàigwode shì èrshrwan-líng-wúbaikwai chyán.

Inquiring about Prices

Jèijī máubí dwōshau chyán?
Nèibén bíjìběr dwōshau chyán?
Jèiyàngrde mài dwōshau chyán?
Wàigwode gāngbí mài dwōshau chyán?
Hòude jǐ shì dwōshau chyán?
Jèijāng shì dwōshau chyán?
Jèijī máubí shémma jyàchyán?
Nèibén bíjìběr shémma jyàchyán?
Jèiyàngrde mài shémma jyàchyán?
Wàigwode gāngbí mài shémma jyàchyán?
Hòude jǐ shì shémma jyàchyán?
Jèijāng shì shémma jyàchyán?

-De in Computing

Jyǒumau chyánde lyǎngmau-wǔ, yíkwai yìmau-wu.
Chímau chyánde sānmau-èr, yíkwai-líng-èrfen.
Yíkwai-lyòude wǔmau chyán, lyǎngkwai-yìmau chyán.
Shírkwai chyánde sìzmaubàn, shírkwai-sìzmaubàn.
Lyǎngkwai-èrde lyǎngmau chyán, lyǎngkwai-sìzmau chyán.
Yíkwai-sānmau-jyǒude wukwai-chí, chíkwai-líng-jyǒufen.

Position of Apiece

Gāngbí wǔkwai chyán yíjī.
Gāngbí yìjī wukwai chyán.
Jǐ sānmau chyán lyǎnjāng.
Jǐ lyǎngjāng sānmau chyán.

Modification

Wǒ yàu măi sāngjāng hòude jǐ.
Wǒ yàu măi lyángběn dàde bǐjìběr.
Wǒ yàu măi yìjāng syǎude jwōdz.
Wǒ yàu măi byéde dūngsyi.
Wǒ yàu măi yíge pyányide shūjyàdz.
Wǒ yàu măi shŕjāng báude jǐ.

Wǒmen jèr yóu hău gāngbǐ.
Wǒmen jèr yóu hěn dwō chyānbǐ.
Wǒmen jèr yǒu bùshău bǐjìběr.
Wǒmen jèr yóu hěn dwō hău máubǐ.
Wǒmen jèr yóu wǔjāng dà jwōdz.
Wǒmen jèr yóu hěn dwō syáu yǐdz.

Tā jyòu yàu yìjī pyányide.
Tā jyòu yàu wǔjāng hòude.
Tā jyòu yàu lyǎngjāng báude.
Tā jyòu yàu sānběn dàde.
Tā jyòu yàu lyòukwài syǎude.
Tā jyòu yàu sānge byéde.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Wǒ yàu măi yìjī gāngbǐ.	Wǒ yàu măi yìjī gāngbǐ.
yíge swànpan	Wǒ yàu măi yíge swànpan.
lyǎngjāng jǐ	Wǒ yàu mái lyǎngjāng jǐ.
sānbén bǐjìběr	Wǒ yàu măi sānbén bǐjìběr.
wǔjī chyānbǐ	Wǒ yàu mái wǔjī chyānbǐ.
lyòujī máubǐ	Wǒ yàu măi lyòujī máubǐ.
Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ yìběn dàde.	Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ yìběn dàde.
sìjāng hòude	Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ sìjāng hòude.
sānge syǎude	Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ sānge syǎude.

yìjī wàigwode	Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yìjī wàigwode.
lyángběn Jūnggwode	Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ lyángběn Jūnggwode.
báge byéde	Chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ báge byéde.
Jèiyàngrde wǔkwai-chǐmau chyán.	Jèiyàngrde wǔkwai-chǐmau chyán.
lyòukwai-lǐng-èrfen	Jèiyàngrde lyòukwai-lǐng-èrfen.
shíryikwaibàn	Jèiyàngrde shíryikwaibàn.
wǔshrjyǒukwai chyán	Jèiyàngrde wǔshrjyǒukwai chyán.
èrbai-bāshryikwai-sān	Jèiyàngrde èrbai-bāshryikwai-sān.
lyǎngchyankwai chyán	Jèiyàngrde lyǎngchyankwai chyán.
Yíge swànpan dwōshau chyán?	Yíge swànpan dwōshau chyán?
Wǔjāng jǐ	Wǔjang jǐ dwōshau chyán?
Lyòuběn shū	Lyòuběn shū dwōshau chyán?
Yíkwai nyóupái	Yíkwai nyóupái dwōshau chyán?
Sānbēi bǐngshwěi	Sānbēi bǐngshwěi dwōshau chyán?
Yípyàr myànbāu	Yípyàr myànbāu dwōshau chyán?
Nèisyē bǐjìběr mài shémma jyàchyán?	Nèisyē bǐjìběr mài shémma jyàchyán?
Jèisyē jǐ	Jèisyē jǐ mài shémma jyàchyán?
Yìpár chǐngtsài	Yìpár chǐngtsài mài shémma jyàchyán?
Nèijī chyānbǐ	Nèijī chyānbǐ mài shémma jyàchyán?
Jèiběn shū	Jèiběn shū mài shémma jyàchyán?
Nèige shūjyàdz	Nèige shūjyàdz mái shémma jyàchyán?
Wǒ yàu mǎi sānjāng hòude jǐ.	Wǒ yàu mǎi sānjāng hòude jǐ.
dàde	Wǒ yàu mǎi sānjāng dàde jǐ.
syǎude	Wǒ yàu mǎi sānjāng syǎude jǐ.
byéde	Wǒ yàu mǎi sānjāng byéde jǐ.

pyányide	Wǒ yàu mǎi sānjāng pyányide jǐ.
báude	Wǒ yàu mǎi sānjāng báude jǐ.
Wǒmen jèr yǒu hǎu	
gāngbǐ.	Wǒmen jèr yǒu hǎu gāngbǐ.
hěn dwō	Wǒmen jèr yǒu hěn dwō gāngbǐ.
bùshǎu	Wǒmen jèr yǒu bùshǎu gāngbǐ.
Tā jyòu yàu yíge	
pyányide.	Tā jyòu yàu yíge pyányide.
hòude	Tā jyòu yàu yìjāng hòude.
báude	Tā jyòu yàu yìjāng báude.
dàde	Tā jyòu yàu yíge dàde.
syǎude	Tā jyòu yàu yíge syǎude.
byéde	Tā jyòu yàu yíge byéde.
Wǒ bùmǎile.	Wǒ bùmǎile.
búchyù	Wǒ búchyùle.
bùhē	Wǒ bùhēle.
bùchīfàn	Wǒ bùchīfànle.
bùjǎu shū	Wǒ bùjǎu shū le.
bùmǎi swànpan	Wǒ bùmǎi swànpan le.
Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn	
sìmau-yī.	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn sìmau-yī.
lyòufen chyán	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn lyòufen chyán.
sānmau chyán	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn sānmau chyán.
wǔkwai-líng-èrfen	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn wǔkwai-ling-èrfen.
jyǒukwaibàn	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn jyǒukwaibàn.
chíkwai-wǔ	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn chíkwai-wǔ.
Jèijǐ gāngbǐ shì	
Jūnggwode.	Jèijǐ gāngbǐ shì Jūnggwode.
wàigwode	Jèijǐ gāngbǐ shì wàigwode.

Měigwode	Jèijī gāngbǐ shì Měigwode.
Dégwode	Jèijī gāngbǐ shì Dégwode.
Fàgwode	Jèijī gāngbǐ shì Fàgwode.
Syībānyáde	Jèijī gāngbǐ shì Syībānyáde.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Wǒ yàu mǎi sānbén bǐjìběr.	Wǒ yàu mǎi sānbén bǐjìběr.
wǔjāng jǐ.	Wǒ yàu mái wǔjāng jǐ.
Tā	Tā yàu mái wǔjāng jǐ.
yíge swànpan	Tā yàu mǎi yíge swànpan.
Chén Jyā-jyùn	Chén Jyā-jyùn yàu yíge swànpan.
Chíng nǐ gěi wǒ sǐjāng báude.	Chíng nǐ gěi wǒ sǐjāng báude.
hòude	Chíng nǐ gēi wǒ sǐjāng hòude.
gěi tā	Chíng nǐ gěi tā sǐjāng hòude
dàde	Chíng nǐ gěi tā sǐjāng dàde.
gěi Lǐ Lǎushī	Chíng nǐ gěi Lǐ Lǎushī sǐjāng dàde.
Jèiyàngrde shǐkwai-jyǒumau chyán.	Jèiyàngrde shǐkwai-jyǒumau chyán.
sānkwai-wǔ	Jèiyàngrde sānkwai-wǔ.
Nèiyàngrde	Nèiyàngrde sānkwai-wǔ.
lyòukwai-líng-sānfēn	Nèiyàngrde lyòukwai-líng-sānfēn.
Wàigwode	Wàigwode lyòukwai-líng-sānfēn.
Yíge shūjyàdz dwōshau chyán?	Yíge shūjyàdz dwōshau chyán?
shémma jyàchyán	Yíge shūjyadz shémma jyàchyán?
Yìjī chyānbǐ	Yìjī chyānbǐ shémma jyàchyán?
mài shémma jyàchyán	Yìjī chyānbǐ mài shémma jyàchyán?
Yìjāng jǐ	Yìjāng jǐ mài shémma jyàchyán?

Tā yàu mái lyǎngjāng dàde jwōdz.	Tā yàu mái lyǎngjāng dàde jwōdz.
syǎude	Tā yàu mái lyǎngjāng syǎude jwōdz.
Wǒ	Wǒ yàu mái lyǎngjāng syǎude jwōdz.
pyányide	Wǒ yàu mái lyǎngjāng pyányide jwōdz.
Tāmen	Tāmen yàu mái lyǎngjāng pyányide jwōdz.
Tāmen nèr yǒu háu jǐ.	Tāmen nèr yǒu háu jǐ.
hěn dwō	Tāmen nèr yóu hěn dwō jǐ.
Wǒmen jèr	Wǒmen jèr yóu hěn dwō jǐ.
bùshǎu	Wǒmen jèr yǒu bùsháu jǐ.
Jāng Syānsheng nèr	Jāng Syānsheng nèr yǒu bùsháu jǐ.
Wǒ jyòu yàu yíge pyányide.	Wǒ jyòu yàu yíge pyányide.
gwèide	Wǒ jyòu yàu yíge gwèide.
Chén Jyā-jyùn	Chén Jyā-jyùn jyòu yàu yíge gwèide.
byéde	Chén Jyā-jyùn jyòu yàu yíge byéde.
Jāng Měi-fāng	Jāng Měi-fāng jyòu yàu yíge byéde.
Tā búchyùle.	Tā búchyùle.
bùchīfàn	Tā bùchīfànle.
Tāmen	Tāmen bùchīfànle.
bùjǎu shū	Tāmen bùjǎu shū le.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī bùjǎu shū le.
Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nín sānmau chyán.	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nín sānmau chyán.
sìmau-èr	Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nín sìmau-èr.
Tā	Tā hái yàu jǎu nín sìmau-èr.
chíkwaibàn	Tā hái yàu jǎu nín chíkwaibàn.
Wáng Syānsheng	Wáng Syānsheng hái yàu jǎu nín chíkwaibàn.

Jèijr̄ gāngbǐ shì Jūnggwode.	Jèijr̄ gāngbǐ shì Jūnggwode.
Syībānyáde	Jèijr̄ gāngbǐ shì Syībānyáde.
Nèijr̄	Nèijr̄ gāngbǐ shì Syībānyáde.
Měigwode	Nèijr̄ gāngbǐ shì Měigwode.
Jèiyàngrde	Jèiyàngrde gāngbǐ shì Měigwode.

RESPONSE DRILL

Nǐn yàu mǎi shémma?	
(chyānbǐ)	Wǒ yàu mǎi chyānbǐ.
(bǐjìběr)	Wǒ yàu mǎi bǐjìběr.
(swànpan)	Wǒ yàu mǎi swànpan.
(máubǐ)	Wǒ yàu mǎi máubǐ.
(jǐ)	Wǒ yàu mái jǐ.
Nǐn yàu něiyàngrde?	
(wàigwode)	Wǒ yàu wàigwode.
(Měigwode)	Wǒ yàu Měigwode.
(Jūnggwode)	Wǒ yàu Jūnggwode.
(Fàgwode)	Wǒ yàu Fàgwode.
(Dégwode)	Wǒ yàu Dégwode.
Jèiyàngrde dwōshau chyán yìjr̄?	
(wǔkwai-chǐmau chyán)	Wǔkwai-chǐmau chyán yìjr̄.
(bāshrkwai-lǐng-sānmau)	Bāshrkwai-lǐng-sānmau yìjr̄.
(yìbaikwai chyán)	Yìbaikwai chyán yìjr̄.
(jyǒumau-lyòu)	Jyǒumau-lyòu yìjr̄.
(Lyǎngchyanwúbaikwai chyán)	Lyǎngchyan-wúbaikwai chyán yìjr̄.
Nǐn bùmái dyǎr byéde ma?	
(bùmǎi)	Wǒ bùmǎile.
(hái mǎi)	Wǒ hái mǎi byéde.

Nǐn yàu mái nĕiyàngrde jř?

(hòude)	Wŏ yàu măi hòude jř.
(báude)	Wŏ yàu măi báude jř.
(dàde)	Wŏ yàu măi dàde jř.
(syăude)	Wŏ yàu mái syăude jř.
(pyányi)	Wŏ yàu măi pyányide jř.

Chǐng nǐ swànswan yǐgùng dwōshau chyán?

(chǐkwai-lǐng-jyŏufen chyán)	Yǐgùng chǐkwai-lǐng-jyŏufen chyán.
(èrbai-èrshrèrkwai chyán)	Yǐgùng èrbai-èrshrèrkwai chyán.
(lyăngchyan-lyángbai-èrshrèrkwai)	Yǐgùng lyăngchyan-lyángbai-èrshrèrkwai.
(wŭchyān-chībai-sz̀shryǐkwai-bā)	Yǐgùng wŭchyān-chībai-sz̀shryǐkwai-bā.
(sānwan-lǐng-jyóubaikwai chyán)	Yǐgùng sānwan-lǐng-jyóubaikwai chyán.

Nǐ hái yàu jáu wŏ dwōshau chyán?

(wŭmau-lyòu)	Wŏ hái yàu jău nǐn wŭmau-lyòu.
(lyăngmau-èr)	Wŏ hái yàu jău nǐn lyăngmau-èr.
(jyŏukwaibàn)	Wŏ hái yàu jău nǐn jyŏukwaibàn.
(sz̀kwai-lǐng-bāfēn)	Wŏ hái yàu jău nǐn sz̀kwai-lǐng bāfēn.
(chǐkwai chyán)	Wŏ hái yàu jău nǐn chǐkwai chyán.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā yàu măi shémma.	Nǐ yàu măi shémma?
	Wŏ yàu măi yǐge swànpan.
	Wŏ yàu măi yìjř gāngbǐ.
	Wŏ yàu mái lyăngjāng jř.
	Wŏ yàu măi sānbén bǐjìbĕr.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā yàu nĕiyàngrde jř.	Nǐ yàu nĕiyàngrde jř?
	Wŏ yàu wàigwode.

Wǒ yàu Jūnggwode.
Wǒ yàu Měigwode.
Wǒ yàu hòude.
Wǒ yàu báude.

Nǐ wèn tā, nèisyē bǐjìběr dwōshau chyán yìběn.

Nèisyē bǐjìběr dwōshau chyán yìběn?
Wǔmau chyán yìběn.
Yìběn wǔmau chyán.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā mǎi bumái dyǎr byéde dūngsyi.

Nǐ mǎi bumái dyǎr byéde dūngsyi?
Wǒ bùmǎile.
Wǒ hái yàu mái dyǎr byéde dūngsyi.

Nǐ wèn tā, yígùng dwō-shau chyán.

Yígùng dwóshau chyán?
Yígùng lyǎngkwai chyán.
Yígùng wǔkwai-sānmau chyán.
Yígùng lyòukwai-èrmau-yī.
Yígùng shŕkwai-língbāfēn.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā yàu jáu nǐ dwōshau chyán.

Nǐ yàu jáu wǒ dwōshau chyán?
Wǒ hái yàu jáu nǐ chīmau chyán.
Wǒ hái yàu jàu nǐ shŕkwaibàn.
Wǒ hái yàu jáu nǐ yíkwai-língjyǒufēn.

Nǐ wèn tā, jèige swànpan pyányi bupyányi.

Jèige swànpan pyányi bupyányi?
Nèige swànpan hěn pyányi.
Nèige swànpan bùhěn pyányi.
Nèige swànpan bùpyányi.
Nèige swànpan hěn gwèi.
Nèige swànpan búgwèi.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Nǐ mǎile shémma le?
Wǒ mǎile yìjī wàigwo gāngbǐ le.
Nǐ hái syǎng mǎi shémma?
Wǒ hái syǎng mǎi wǔběn Jūnggwo shū.
Nǐ bùmái dyǎr Syībānyáde chyānbǐ ma?
Wǒ yǐjing yǒule. Wǒ bùmǎile.
Nǐ yàu nèiyàngrde chàngpyār?
Wǒ yàu lyǎngjāng Fàgwode chàngpyār.
Nǐ ài yùng Dégwo jǐ ma?
Wǒ hěn ài yùng, géi wǒ lyòujāng hòude.
Bǎude hěn pyányi. Nǐn bùmái dyǎr ma?
Hǎu, chǐng nǐ géi wǒ shǐjāng bǎude.
Wǒmen jèrde dūngsyi dōu hěn pyányi.
Dwèile, dūngsyi yě bùshǎu.
Nǐ bùmái dyǎr byéde dūngsyi ma?
Bùmǎile. Chǐng nǐ swànswan yígùng dwōshau chyán?
Hǎu. Wǔmau chyánde sānmau-èr, bāmau-èr..., bāmau-èrde lyǎngkwai chyán, lyǎngkwai-bāmau-èr..., yígùng lyǎngkwai-bāmau-èr.
Jèr shǐ sānkwai chyán.
Syèsye. Wǒ hái yàu jǎu nǐn yìmau-bā.

NARRATION

Wǒ jīntyan dzǎushang gēn Jāng Měi-fāng yíkwàr chyù mǎi gāngbǐ. Wǒmen dōu mǎile yìjī. Tā mǎile yìjī Měigwode. Wǒ mǎile yìjī Jūnggwode. Měigwode hěn gwèi, mài èrshrkwai chyán yìjī. Jūnggwode pyányi, yìjī jyòu mài lyòukwai chyán. Tā yǒu hěn dwō chyán. Tā kéyi mǎi nèmma gwèide. Wǒ méiyou hěn dwō chyán. Wǒ jyòu néng mǎi jèmma pyányide.

Wǒmen wǎnshang dàu Jūnggwo fàngwǎr chyù chīfàn. Jūnggwo fàn jēn hǎuchī. Wǒmen yíkwàr chīle chǎumyàn, chǎufàn, jájī, nyóupái. Wǒmen yígùng chīle èrshrchíkwai-sìmau chyán.

Wǒmen gěile fàngwàr sānshrkwai chyán. Nǐ jrdau tāmen jǎule wǒmen dwōshau chyán ma?

RHYMES

Yìjr gāngbǐ sìkwai-wū.
Sānjāng jr,
Lyǎngmau-chǐ.
Jūnggwo shū,
Bǐjìběr,
Dzài gěi wǒ yìjr hǎu chyānbǐ.
Chǐng nǐ swànswan dwōshau chyán?
Sānwan-sìchyan-bābai-chǐshrlyòukwai-wǔmau-yǐ.
Pyányi bupyányi?
Tài gwèile.
Méi chyán búyàu mǎi dūngsyi.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Nín yàu mǎi shémma?
(Wǒ yàu mǎi yìjr gāngbǐ)
Nín yàu něiyàngrde?
(Wǒ yàu jèiyàngrde.)
Jèiyàngrde dwōshau chyán?
(Wǔkwai-chǐmau chyán yìjr.)
Nín bùmǎi dyǎr byéde dūngsyi ma?
(Wǒ hái yàu yìjr chyānbǐ.)
Nèisyē bǐjìběr mài shémma jyàchyán?
(Dàde lyǎngmau-wǔ, syǎude yìmau-èrfen.)
Jèige swànpan sānkwaibàn, pyányi bupyányi?
(Hěn pyányi.)
Nǐ mǎi bumǎi swànpan?
(Wǒ bùmǎile.)
Yìgùng dwōshau chyán?

(Yígùng chīkwai-líng-jyǒufen chyán.)
Nǐ hái yào jáu wǒ dwōshau chyán?
(Wǒ hái yào jǎu nín sìmau-yī.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passages in English)

Wǒ gēn Jāng Měi-fāng yíkwàr chyù măi gāngbǐ. Tāmen nèr yǒu hěn dwō Jūnggwode, yé yǒu bùshǎu wàigwode. Wàigwode hěn gwèi. Jūnggwode hěn pyányi. Wǒ măile Jūnggwode. Tā măile wàigwode. Wǒmen yé măile byéde dūngsyi. Wǒ măile sānběn dàde bǐjìběr, lyǎngjāng hòude jǐ. Tā yé măile yìbén syǎude bǐjìběr, wǔjāng báude jǐ.

Wǒ yígùng yùngle yíkwai-jyǒu. Tā yígùng yùngle sānkwai-líng-chīfen chyán.

3. Reading

Wǒ yào măi yìjǐ gāngbǐ.
Tāmen nèr yǒu Syībānyáde, yé yǒu Dégwode.
Jèiyàngrde dwōshau chyán?
Sānwan-lyǎngchyan-líng-wǔshrkwai chyán.
Wǒmen hái yǒu bùshǎu byéde dūngsyi.
Nèisyē bǐjìběr mài shémma jyàchyán?
Dàde bāmau-sān, syǎude sìmau-èrfen.
Nín kànkan jèige swànpan pyányi bupyányi.
Nǐmen jèrde dūngsyi bùhěn gwèi.
Chíng nǐ swànswan yígùng dwōshau chyán.
Jèr shì wǔshrlyòukwai-sānmau-èrfen chyán.
Syèsye. Wǒ hái yào jǎu nín chímau-bā.

UNIT VI

RETURNING HOME AFTER SCHOOL

Chén Jyā-jyùn goes home after school. He inquires from his mother about what the rest of the family is doing. He is reminded of the arrival of his sister and some of her family for a visit the next day. His mother asks him to help set the dinner table.

In setting the dinner table, he discovers that he needs one more spoon. Then he forgets to put the soy sauce and vinegar on the table. When he asks if he should get the wine glasses, his mother tells him that his father is not supposed to drink every evening.

DIALOGUE

Jyā-jyùn: Mā, dìdi dzài nǎr?

Mǔchǐn: Tā dzài wàitou wár ne.

Jyā-jyùn: Mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma ne?

Mǔchǐn: Tā dzài lóushang dǎ máuyī ne.

Jyā-jyùn: Bàba dzài jyā ma?

Mǔchǐn: Tā dzài kètìng li gēn nǐ gège shwōhwà ne.

Jyā-jyùn: Mā, wó syǎng míngtyan dàu chéng lǐtou chyù, kéyi ma?

Mǔchǐn: Bùsyíng. Míngtyan nǐ jyějye tamen tsúng syāngsya lái.

Jyā-jyùn: Jyěfu yě yíkwàr lái ma?

Mǔchǐn: Bùyidìng. Kěshr tā mèimei yidìng lái.

Jyā-jyùn: Nà hǎujíle. Mā, fàn kwài hǎule ba.

Mǔchǐn: Kwài hǎule. Nǐ bǎiyibǎi jwōdz ba.

Jyā-jyùn: Mā, shǎule yìbǎ sháur.

Mǔchǐn: Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.

Jyā-jyùn: Wán, kwàidz, sháur, dyédz dōu bǎile.

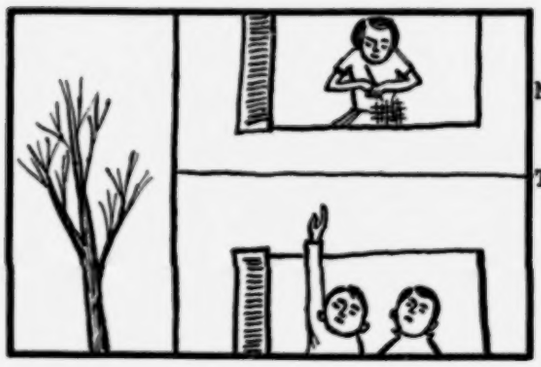
Mǔchǐn: Jyàngyóu tsù ne? Nǐ dzěmma lǎu wàng a!

Jyā-jyùn: Dwèile. Mā, yàu buyàu bái jyǒubēi a?

Mǔchǐn: Ni bàba bùnéng tyāntyan wǎnshang hē jyǒu.

Jyā-jyùn: Hǎu, wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfàn ba.

Mā, dìdi dzài nǎr?
Tā dzài wàitou wár ne.



Mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma ne?
Tā dzài lóushang dǎ máuyī ne.

Bàba dzài jyā ma?
Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li shwōhwà ne.

Mā, wó syǎng míngtyan shàng chéng lǐtou chyù, kéyi ma?
Bùsyíng. Míngtyan nǐ jyějye tāmen tsúng syāngsya lái.

Jyěfu yě yíkwàr lái ma?
Bùyidìng. Kěshr tā mèimei yidìng lái.

Nà hǎujíle. Mā, fàn kwài hǎule ba.
Kwài hǎule. Nǐ bǎiyibǎi jwōdz ba.

Yìbǎ, lyángbǎ...
Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Wǎn, kwàidz, sháur, dyédz dōu bǎile.
Jyàngyóu tsù ne? Nǐ dzěmma lǎu wàng a.

Dwèile. Mā, yàu buyàu bái jyǒubēi a.
Búyàu. Nǐ Bàba bùnéng...
Hǎu, wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.

Jyā-jyùn: Mother, where is Brother?

Mother: He is playing outside.

Jyā-jyùn: What's Sister doing now?

Mother: She is upstairs knitting.

Jyā-jyùn: Is Dad home?

Mother: He is talking with your brother in the living room.

Jyā-jyùn: Mother, I'd like to go downtown tomorrow, is that all right?

Mother: No. Your sister and her family are coming from the country tomorrow.

Jyā-jyùn: Is her husband coming with her?

Mother: I'm not sure. But his sister is definitely coming.

Jyā-jyùn: That's wonderful. Mother, dinner is about ready, isn't it?

Mother: Yes, just about. Why don't you set the table.

Jyā-jyùn: Mother, we are short one spoon.

Mother: There are more in the left hand drawer.

Jyā-jyùn: I have gotten out bowls, chopsticks, spoons, saucers, and all.

Mother: What about soy sauce and vinegar. You always forget them.

Jyā-jyùn: That's it. Mother, you want me to get the wine glasses?

Mother: No, your Dad cannot drink every evening.

Jyā-jyùn: Well, I'll go to call them to come and eat.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

Mā(ma)	Mommy (mother)
dìdi	younger brother
mèimei	younger sister
Bàba	Daddy (father)
jyā	home
gēge	elder brother
kètīng	living room
chéng	city
jyějye	elder sister
syāngsya	countryside
jyěfu	brother-in-law (elder sister's husband)
sháur	spoon
chōuti	drawer
wǎn	bowl
dyédz	saucer
jyàngyóu	soy sauce
tsù	vinegar
jyǒubēi	wine glass
jyǒu	wine; liquor

2. Place Word

wài(tou)	outside (cf. Unit III)
lóushang	upstairs
lǐ(tou)	inside (cf. Unit III)
dzwǒbyār	left (side)

3. Verb

dzài	be at; in or on (cf. Unit III)
wár	play
gàn	do (more colloquial than dzwò)
dǎ	knit
shwōhwà	talk (VO compound)

lái	come (toward the speaker)
bǎi	set; put
shǎu	be short (cf. Unit V)
wàng	forget
jyàu	tell (somebody to do something)

4. Co-Verb

tsúng	from
shàng	functioning as "to go to" together with chyù (cf. dàu...chyù in Unit III)

5. Adjective

sying	satisfactory; all right
hǎu	ready; complete (cf. Unit I)

6. Adverb

yídìng	necessarily; certain
kwài	quickly; soon
lǎu	always

7. Time Word

syàndzài	now
tyāntyan	everyday

8. Particle

ne	sentence suffix indicating continuance of action in declarative sentences (cf. Unit III)
ba	sentence suffix implying probability or request
-jíle	suffix to adjectives, indicating extreme degree

9. Measure

-bǎ	a unit measure for spoon, knife, fork, etc.

8. Idiomatic Expression

nà	in that case

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

mǔchīn	mother (more formal than māma)

2. Place Word

yòubyār	right (side)
lóusyà	downstairs

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Dzài with place words to indicate location S dzài PW

When a place word follows the verb dzài, it signifies that "y" is located at "x":

Mā, dìdi dzài nǎr?

Bàba dzài jyā ma?

Dzài may be followed by any place word. Hence, one can say dzài Jūnggwo. Nouns, however, must be followed by a place word before they can be used with dzài. Thus, one says dzài jwōdz shàngtou, or dzài jwōdz lǐtou, but never just dzài jwōdz. (cf. Unit III)

2. Continuance with ne

The particle ne is added to the end of the sentence to suggest continuing action.

Tā dzài wàitou wár ne.

Mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma ne?

Tā dzài lóushang dǎ máuyī ne.

Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li shwōhwà ne.

3. Tsúng...lái and dàu...chyù compared

Tsúng...lái (come from) indicates motion out from or away from some point while dàu...chyù (go to) indicates motion towards some point. (cf. Unit III)

Wǒ syǎng míngtyan dàu chéng lǐtou chyù.

Míngtyan nǐ jyějye tamen tsúng syāngsya lái.

4. Probability with sentence suffix ba

The particle ba suffixed to certain statements makes them imply a probability:

Mā, fàn kwài hăule ba.

5. Request with sentence suffix ba.

Sentence suffix ba, added to a command, softens the tone of the command:

Nǐ băiyibăi jwōdz ba.

6. Imminent change of status with -le

The addition of -le to adjectives modified by appropriate adverbs, such as kwài, (soon) indicates that the change of status has already been decided upon, and that it is expected to be completed at some time in the not too distant future (cf. Unit IV):

Mā, fàn kwài hăule ba.

7. Specified nouns further modified by nouns, pronouns, or place words — N Sp-M N; ProN Sp-M N; PW Sp-M N

Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li

8. Between pronouns and relationship terms — ProN N

The usual marker of modification -de may be omitted between pronouns and relationship terms:

Nǐ jyějye

Wŏ bàba

9. Purpose of going without CV-PW — S V PE

If the place is known from the context, co-verb and place word are omitted:

Wŏ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

a. The family has, to a great extent, remained a strong basis for Chinese society. Change has occurred in modern times in the Chinese familial structure, but many traditional

attitudes toward the family persist. Even grown-up Chinese still do not hesitate to regard their parents' house as their own home. The Chinese high school student, on the average, spends more time at home than his American counterpart does.

b. The Chinese high school student always refers to his family members by relationship, not by name. This is particularly true regarding his elder brother, sisters and other relatives. He would shock the others if he called his parents or elders by their given names any time anywhere. In earlier times, many Chinese families used domestic help. School boys and girls had little housework to do. This has changed somewhat. The high school student is expected to help his mother or sister to do some housework. He is expected to do it cheerfully and never, never, with pay. Chinese society tends to tolerate less impoliteness of the children toward their parents.

c. The expression gàn shémma? may sound a bit too colloquial to some people, but it is really natural Mandarin speech. In other words, one hears more often gàn shémma than dzwò shémma.

FLUENCY DRILL

Dzài.
Dzài nǎr?
Dìdi dzài nǎr?
Nǐde dìdi dzài nǎr?
Nǐde syǎu dìdi dzài nǎr?

Wàitou.
Dzài wàitou.
Dzài wàitou wár.
Tā dzài wàitou wár.
Tā dzài wàitou wár ne.

Tsúng.
Tsúng syāngsya lái.
Jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.
Jyějye tamen tsúng syāngsya lái.
Nǐ jyějye tamen tsúng syāngsya lái.

Gàn.
Gàn shémma?
Mèimei gàn shémma?
Mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma?
Mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma ne?

Kwài.
Kwài hău.
Kwài hăule.
Fàn kwài hăule.
Fàn kwài hăule ba.

Wàng.
Lău wàng.
Dzěmma lău wàng.
Dzěmma lău wàng a.
Nǐ dzěmma lău wàng a.

Băi.
Băiyibăi.
Băiyibăi jwōdz.
Nǐ băiyibăi jwōdz.
Nǐ băiyibăi jwōdz ba.

Shàng.
Shàng chéng lǐtou.
Shàng chéng lǐtou chyù.
Wǒ shàng chéng lǐtou chyù.
Wǒ míngtyan shàng chéng lǐtou chyù.
Wǒ syǎng míngtyan shàng chéng lǐtou chyù.

Chōuti.
Chōuti li.
Nèige chōuti li.
Nèige chōuti li yǒu.
Nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.

Tyāntyan.
Tyāntyan wănshang.
Tyāntyan wănshang hē.
Tyāntyan wănshang hē jyǒu.
Bùnéng tyāntyan wănshang hē jyǒu.
Bàba bùnéng tyāntyan wănshang hē jyǒu.
Nǐ Bàba bùnéng tyāntyan wănshang hē jyǒu.

Jyàu.
Jyàu tāmen.
Jyàu tāmen lái.
Jyàu tāmen lái chīfàn.

Chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfàn.
Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfàn.
Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.
Nà wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushī — Sywésheng

S dzài PW

Dìdi dzài nǎr? (Student repeats
Bàba dzài jyā ma? after the model)
Tā dzài lóushàng.
Nǐ mèimei dzài lóusyà.
Gēge dzài kètīng li.
Wǒ jyějye dzài chéng lǐtou.

Continuance with Ne

Tā dzài wàitou wár ne.
Tā dzài lóushàng dǎ máuyī ne.
Wǒ dìdi dzài fàntīng li chīfàn ne.
Tā gēge dzài kètīng li shwōhwà ne.
Bàba syàndzài tīng chàngpyār ne.
Wǒ jyějye dzài sywésyàu nyànshū ne.

Tsúng ... Lái

Nǐ jyějye tamen tsúng syāngsya lái.
Wǒ gēge tamen tsúng chéng lǐtou lái.
Chén Jyā-jyùn tsúng sywésyàu lái.
Jāng Měi-fāng tsúng túshūgwǎn lái.
Wáng Lǎushī tsúng jyā li lái.
Lǐ Syānsheng tsúng wàitou lái.

Ba (Probability)

Bàba dzài jyā ba.
Fàn kwài hǎule ba.
Nǐ gēge yě chyù ba.
Tā mèimei yě yíkwàr lái ba.

Tā dzài lóushang dǎ máuyī ba.
Jyějye míngtyan tsúng syāngsya lái ba.

Ba (Request)

Nǐ bāiyibāi jwōdz ba.
Jyàu tāmen lái chīfàn ba.
Nǐ dàu wàitou chyù wár ba.
Nǐ dàu nèr chyù kàn dyànshì ba.
Nǐ gěi wǒ yìbēi bīngshwěi ba.
Nǐ shàng chéng lǐtou chyù mǎi dūngsyi ba.

Le (Imminent Change of Status)

Wǒ kwài èle.
Fàn kwài hǎule.
Tā kwài láile.
Wǒ kwài chīfànle.
Tāmen kwài chyùle.
Wǒmen kwài bǎule.

N Sp-M N (and its variations)

Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Yǒubyār nèige jwōdz shang yé yǒu.
Nǐmen nèige shūjyàdz shang yóu hěn dwō shū.
Wǒmen jèige túshūgwǎn yǒu Jūngwen dǐdyǎn.
Jyā-jyùn nèipár chīngtsài hén hǎushī.
Měi-fāng nèikwài nyóupái yě bútswò.

ProN N

Nǐ jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.
Wǒ bàba dàu chéng lǐtou chyùle.
Tā māma dzài nèr mǎi dūngsyi.
Wǒ mèimei méiyou Yīngwen dzájì.
Nǐ gēge míngtyan dàu nǎr chyù?
Tā dìdi dzài wàitou wár ne.

S V PE

Wǒ dìdi chyù wárle.
Tā chyù kàn dyànshì le.

Wǒmen chyù dà máuyǐ chyù.
Tāmen chyù mǎi dūngsyi.
Nǐ chyù tǐng chàngpyār ma?
Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Tā dzài wàitou ne.	Tā dzài wàitou ne.
lǐtou	Tā dzài lǐtou ne.
lóushàng	Tā dzài lóushàng ne.
lóusyà	Tā dzài lóusyà ne.
túshūgwǎn	Tā dzài túshūgwǎn ne.
Jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.	Jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.
chéng li	Jyějye tsúng chéng li lái.
sywésyàu	Jyějye tsúng sywésyàu lái.
jyàushì li	Jyějye tsúng jyàushì li lái.
túshūgwǎn	Jyějye tsúng túshūgwǎn lái.
Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètǐng li shwōhwà ne.	Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètǐng li shwōhwà ne.
kàn dyànshì	Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètǐng li kàn dyànshì ne.
tǐng chàngpyār	Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètǐng li tǐng chàngpyār ne.
chīfàn	Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètǐng li chīfàn ne.
kàn bàu	Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètǐng li kàn bàu ne.
Nǐ jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.	Nǐ jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.
Tā māma	Tā māma tsúng syāngsya lái.
Wǒ bàba	Wǒ bàba tsúng syāngsya lái.

Nǐ gēge	Nǐ gēge tsúng syāngsya lái.
Tā mèimei	Tā mèimei tsúng syāngsya lái.
Nǐ bǎiyìbǎi jwōdz ba.	Nǐ bǎiyìbǎi jwōdz ba.
nyànshū	Nǐ nyànshū ba.
chīfàn	Nǐ chīfàn ba.
kànkan dyànshì	Nǐ kànkan dyànshì ba.
hē nyóunǎi	Nǐ hē nyóunǎi ba.
Tā mèimei yídìng lái.	Tā mèimei yídìng lái.
chyù	Tā mèimei yídìng chyù.
mǎi	Tā mèimei yídìng mǎi.
tǐng	Tā mèimei yídìng tǐng.
chī	Tā mèimei yídìng chī.
Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.	Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Yòubyār	Yòubyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Wàitou	Wàitou nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Lǐtou	Lǐtou nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Lóusyà	Lóusyà nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
Fàn kwài hǎule ba.	Fàn kwài hǎule ba.
Nyóupái	Nyóupái kwài hǎule ba.
Jájī	Jájī kwài hǎule ba.
Chǎumyàn	Chǎumyàn kwài hǎule ba.
Chǎufàn	Chǎufàn kwài hǎule ba.
Nǐ dzěmma lǎu wàng a.	Nǐ dzěmma lǎu wàng a.
kàn	Nǐ dzěmma lǎu kàn a.
chyù	Nǐ dzěmma lǎu chyù a.
chī	Nǐ dzěmma lǎu chī a.
tǐng	Nǐ dzěmma lǎu tǐng a.

Tā bùnéng tyāntyan hē jyǒu.	Tā bùnéng tyāntyan hē jyǒu.
kàn dyànshì	Tā bùnéng tyāntyan kàn dyànshì.
tīng chàngpyār	Tā bùnéng tyāntyan tīng chàngpyār.
wár	Tā bùnéng tyāntyan wár.

Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.	Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.
nyànshūle	Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái nyànshūle.
kàn dyànshì le	Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái kàn dyànshì le.
tīng chàngpyār le	Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái tīng chàngpyār le.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Tā dzài wàitou ne.	Tā dzài wàitou ne.
lǐtou	Tā dzài lǐtou ne.
Bàba	Bàba dzài lǐtou ne.
lóushang	Bàba dzài lóushang ne.
Gēge	Gēge dzài lóushang ne.

Jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.	Jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.
chéng li	Jyějye tsúng chéng li lái.
Dìdi	Dìdi tsúng chéng li lái.
sywésyàu	Dìdi tsúng sywésyàu lái.
Jyā-jyùn	Jyā-jyùn tsúng sywésyàu lái.

Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li shwōhwà ne.	Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li shwōhwà ne.
kàn shū	Tā gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li kàn shū ne.

Jyěfu — Jyěfu gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li kàn shū ne.

chīfàn — Jyěfu gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li chīfàn ne.

Lǐ Lǎushī — Lǐ Lǎushī gēn nǐ gēge dzài kètīng li chīfàn ne.

Tā mèimei yídìng lái. — Tā mèimei yídìng lái.

chyù — Tā mèimei yídìng chyù.

Wǒ dìdi — Wǒ dìdi yídìng chyù.

chī — Wǒ dìdi yídìng chī.

Nǐ jyěfu — Nǐ jyěfu yídìng chī.

Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu. — Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.

jwōdz shang — Dzwōbyār nèige jwōdz shang hái yǒu.

Yōubyār — Yōubyār nèige jwōdz shang hái yǒu.

shūjyàdz shang — Yōubyār nèige shūjyàdz shang hái yǒu.

Lǐtou — Lǐtou nèige shūjyàdz shang hái yǒu.

Nǐ dzěmma lǎu wàng a. — Nǐ dzěmma lǎu wàng a.

chī — Nǐ dzěmma lǎu chī a.

Tā — Tā dzěmma lǎu chī a.

hē — Tā dzěmma lǎu hē a.

Jāng Syānsheng — Jāng Syānsheng dzěmma lǎu hē a.

Tā bùnéng tyāntyan hē jyǒu. — Tā bùnéng tyāntyan hē jyǒu.

kàn dyànshì — Tā bùnéng tyāntyan kàn dyànshì.

Nǐ — Nǐ bùnéng tyāntyan kàn dyànshì.

tīng chàngpyār — Nǐ bùnéng tyāntyan tīng chàngpyār.

Wǒmen — Wǒmen bùnéng tyāntyan tīng chàngpyār.

Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.	Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfànle.
nyànshūle	Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái nyànshūle.
Tā	Tā chyù jyàu tāmen lái nyànshūle.
kàn dyànshì le	Tā chyù jyǎu tāmen lái kàn dyànshì le.
Mèimei	Mèimei chyù jyàu tāmen lái kàn dyànshì le.

RESPONSE DRILL

Nǐ dìdi dzài nǎr?

(wàitou)	Tā dzài wàitou ne.
(lǐtou)	Tā dzài lǐtou ne.
(lóushàng)	Tā dzài lóushàng ne.
(lóusyà)	Tā dzài lóusyà ne.

Nǐ mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma ne?

(dǎ máuyī)	Tā syàndzài dǎ máuyī ne.
(dzwò syǐtí)	Tā syàndzài dzwò syǐtí ne.
(kàn dyànshì)	Tā syàndzài kàn dyànshì ne.
(jǎu shū)	Tā syàndzài jǎu shū ne.

Bàba dzài jyā ma?

(dzài)	Tā dzài jyā.
(búdzài)	Tā búdzài jyā.

Nǐ míngtyan syǎng dàu nǎr chyù?

(chéng lǐ)	Wǒ míngtyan syǎng dàu chéng lǐ chyù.
(syāngsya)	Wǒ míngtyan syǎng dàu syāngsya chyù.
(sywésyàu)	Wǒ míngtyan syǎng dàu sywésyàu chyù.
(túshūgwǎn)	Wǒ míngtyan syǎng dàu túshūgwǎn chyù.

Shéi tsúng syāngsya lái?

(nǐ jyějye)	Wǒ jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.
(nǐ gēge)	Wǒ gēge tsūng syāngsya lái.
(nǐ Bàba)	Wǒ bàba tsúng syāngsya lái.
(nǐ dìdi)	Wǒ dìdi tsúng syāngsya lái.

Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu ma?

(hái yǒu)	Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.
(méiyou)	Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li méiyoule.

Tā mèimei yídìng lái ma?

(yídìng)	Tā mèimei yídìng lái.
(bùyídìng)	Tā mèimei bùyídìng lái.

Nǐ chyù jyàu shéi lái chīfàn ne?

(Jyā-jyùn)	Wǒ chyù jyàu Jyā-jyùn lái chīfàn.
(Měi-fāng)	Wǒ chyù jyàu Měi-fāng lái chīfàn.
(Wáng Lǎushī)	Wǒ chyù jyàu Wáng Lǎushī lái chīfàn.
(Lǐ Syānsheng)	Wǒ chyù jyàu Lǐ Syānsheng lái chīfàn.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā dìdi dzài nǎr.	<u>Nǐ dìdi dzài nǎr</u>?
	Tā dzài wàitou ne.
	Tā dzài lóushàng ne.
	Tā dzài kètīng li ne.
	Wǒ bùjīdau tā dzài nǎr.
	Tā dàgài dzài lǐtou ba.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma.	<u>Nǐ mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma</u>?
	Tā syàndzài dǎ máuyī ne.
	Tā syàndzài chīfàn ne.
	Tā syàndzài tīng chàngpyār ne.

Tā syàndzài nyànshū ne.
Tā syàndzài jǎu Jūngwen dždyǎn ne.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā Bàba dzài budzài jyā.

Nǐ Bàba dzài jyā ma?
Tā dzài jyā
Tā búdzài jyā.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā míngtyan shàng chéng li chyù ma.

Nǐ míngtyan shàng chéng li chyù ma?
Wǒ míngtyan shàng chéng li chyù.
Wǒ míngtyan búshàng chéng li chyù.

Nǐ wèn tā, shéi tsúng syāngsya lái.

Shéi tsúng syāngsya lái?
Wǒ jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.
Wǒ gēge tsúng syāngsya lái.

Nǐ wèn tā, dzǒubyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu sháur ma.

Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu sháur ma?
Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu sháur.
Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu hěn dwō sháur.
Dzwǒbyār nèige chōuti li méiyou sháur le.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā mèimei yídìng lái ma.

Nǐ mèimei yídìng lái ma?
Wǒ mèimei yídìng lái.
Wǒ mèimei bùyídìng lái.

Nǐ wèn tā, fàn kwài hǎule ma.

Fàn kwài hǎule ma?
Fàn kwài hǎule.
Fàn hái méihǎu ne.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā chyù jyàu shéi lái chīfàn.

Nǐ chyù jyàu shéi lái chīfàn?
Wǒ chyù jyàu wǒ gēge lái chīfàn.
Wǒ chyù jyàu wǒ dìdi lái chīfàn.
Wǒ chyù jyàu tāmen lái chīfàn.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Jāng Měi-fāng dzài lóushàng ma?
Tā búdzài lóushang.
Nà tā dzài nǎr?
Tā dàgài dzài kètīng li kàn bàu ba.
Bàba dzài jyā ma?
Búdzài. Tā gēn nǐ gēge shàng chéng lǐtou chyùle.
Tāmen shàng chéng li chyù dzwò shémma chyù?
Tāmen chyù mǎi yǐdyǎr dūngsyi.
Jyějye tāmen míngtyan yídìng tsúng syāngsya lái ma?
Bùyídìng. Kěshr nǐ jyěfu yídìng lái.
Nǐ jīrdau shéi dzài lóusyà ma?
Wǒ mèimei dzài lóusyà dǎ máuyī ne.
Nǐ dìdi syāngdzài gàn shémma ne?
Tā dzài lǐtou wár ne.
Wǒmende fàn kwài hǎule ba.
Hái méihǎu ne. Kěshr nǐ syān chyù bǎiyibǎi jwōdz ba.
Nǐ yàu bǎi shémma dūngsyi.
Wǎn, kwàidz, dyédz, sháur, jyàngyóu, tsù dōu yàu bǎi.
Mā, shǎule yíge jyǒubēi le.
Nǐ dzěmma yé bǎile jyǒubēi le?
Wǒmen jīntyan wǎnshang bùhē jyǒu ma?
Bùhē, wǒmen bùnéng tyāntyan hē jyǒu.

NARRATION

Jyā-jyùn bùjīrdau tā dìdi dzài nǎr. Tā wèn māma tā dìdi dzài nǎr. Tā māma shwō tā dìdi gēn tā mèimei dzài wàitou wár. Tā Bàba dzài jyā, gēn tā gēge dzài kètīng li shwōhwà.

Jyā-jyùnde jyějye mîngtyan tsúng syāngsya lái, kěshr tā jyěfu bùyidìng gēn tā jyějye yîkwàr lái. Tā jyěfude mèimei hén syīhwan Jyā-jyùn. Tā mîngtyan yídìng gēn tā jyějye yîkwàr lái.

Jyā-jyùn yǐjing èle. Tā wèn tā māma fàn kwài hăule méiyou. Tā máma shwō kwài hăule, jyàu tā chyù băiyibăi jwōdz. Tā băile hěn dwō dūngsyi. Yóu wăn, yŏu shâur, yé yŏu kwàidz. Kěshr tā wàngle jyàngyóu tsù. Jyā-jyùn syăng bái jyŏubēi. Kěshr tā māma shwō tā Bàba bùnéng tyāntyan hē jyŏu, tā jyòu bùbái jyŏubéi le.

RHYMES

Bàba gēge dōu dzài jyā,
Dìdi mèimei dzài wàitou.
Jyějye dzài syāngsya,
Wŏmen tyāntyan dōu syăng tā.

Jyā-jyùn èle syăng chīfàn,
Māma shwō fàn kwài hăule.
Jyā-jyùn jyòu chyù băi jwōdz,
Yìhwěr jyàu tāmen chīfàn ba.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Nǐ dìdi dzài năr?
(Tā dzài wàitou wár ne.)
Bàba dzài jyā ma?
(Tā dzài jyā.)
Nǐ mèimei syàndzài gàn shémma ne?
(Tā dzài lóushàng dă máuyī ne.)
Mîngtyan nǐ syăng shàng năr chyù?
(Mîngtyan wō syăng shèng chéng lǐtou chyù.)
Shéi tsúng syāngsya lái?
(Wó jyějye tsúng syāngsya lái.)

Nǐ jyěfude mèimei yídìng lái ma?
(Tā yídìng lái.)
Fàn kwài hǎule ma?
(Fàn kwài hǎule.)
Jyā-jyùn shǎule shémma?
(Tā shǎule yìbǎ sháur.)
Dzài nǎr hái yǒu sháur?
Dzwōbyār nèige chōuti li hái yǒu.)
Jyā-jyùn bǎile jyàngyóu tsù méiyou?
(Tā wàngle.)
Māma dzěmma búyàu bái jyǒubēi?
(Bàba bùnéng tyāntyan hē jyǒu.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passages in English)

Jyā-jyùn wèn tā Māma tā dìdi dzài nǎr. Tā Māma shwō tā dìdi gēn tā mèimei dzài wàitou wár.
Tā Bàba dzài jyā, gēn tā gēge dzài kètīng li shwōhwà.
Jyā-jyùnde jyějye míngtyan gēn tā jyěfude mèimei tsūng syāngsya lái. Jyā-jyùn yǐjing ēle. Tā Māma shwō fàn kwài hǎule, jyàu tā chyù bǎi jwōdz. Tā bǎile wǎn, kwàidz, dyědz, sháur, kěshr wàngle jyàngyóu tsù.
Jyā-jyùn yé syǎng bái jyǒubēi. Kěshr tā Māma búyàu tā bǎi.
Tā Māma shwō tā Bàba bùnéng tyāntyan wǎnshang hē jyǒu.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese characters)

UNIT VII

A TELEPHONE CONVERSATION

Lǐn Hwá-míng telephones Jāng Měi-fāng's house. Her mother answers the phone. She puts Jāng Měi-fāng on the phone. He asks her to go to the zoo with him the next day. They agree on a time to start.

DIALOGUE

Hwá-míng: Wèi...Chíngwèn Jāng Měi-fāng dzài jyā ma?

Bwómǔ: Nín gwèisyìng a?

Hwá-míng: Wǒ syìng Lín. Wǒ shì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé.

Bwómǔ: O...Ní shì Lín Hwá-míng a. Hǎu jyǒu méijyànle.

Hwá-míng: Nín shì bwómǔ a, nín hǎu ma? Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jijyù hwà.

Bwómǔ: Hǎu. Ní děng yihwěr. Wǒ chyù jyàu ta chyu.

Hwá-míng: Wèi...Měi-fāng ma? Ní míngtyan yǒu méiyou gūngfu?

Měi-fāng: Yǒu a! Ní yǒu shémma shì ma?

Hwá-míng: Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu dùngwuywán chyù wárwar.

Měi-fāng: Hǎujíle. Wǒmen shém shíhou chyù ne?

Hwá-míng: Míngtyan dzǎushang chídyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?

Měi-fāng: Chídyǎn! Tài dzǎule! Dùngwuywán jyóudyan tsái kāi mén ne.

Hwá-míng: Nà nǐ shwō jídyan jūng chyù ba?

Měi-fāng: Ní shídyanbàn dàu wo jèr wǒmen dzài yíkwàr chyù.

Hwá-míng: Shídyanbàn, tai wǎnle. Dzǎu yidyǎr, sying busying?

Měi-fāng: Wǒmen jyóudyan dwō tsái chī dzǎufàn. Chīle dzǎufàn jyou chyù, kéyi ma?

Hwá-míng: Hǎu ba. Wǒ jwūn jyóudyan-yíkè dàu ni nèr.

Měi-fāng: Nà wǒmen kéyi dzwò shídyan chà wǔfende chē chyù.

Hwá-míng: Jyòu nèmma bàn! Měi-fāng, byé chwān tài pyàulyangde yíshang a!

Měi-fāng: Ní jēn tǎuyàn! Wǒ děi chyù chī wǎnfàn le. Míngtyan jyàn!

Hwá-míng: Hello... Is Jāng Měi-fāng home, please?

Bwómǔ: Your name, please.

Hwá-míng: My name is Lín. I'm Jāng Měi-fāng's schoolmate.

Bwómǔ: Oh... You are Lín Hwá-míng. It's been a long time since we saw you.

Hwá-míng: How are you, Mrs. Jāng? I'd like to have a word with Měi-fāng.

Bwómǔ: Fine; just one minute. I'll go to get her.

Hwá-míng: Hello... Is this Měi-fāng? Are you free tomorrow?

Měi-fāng: Yes, I am. What's up?

Hwá-míng: I would like to ask you to go to the zoo with me.

Měi-fāng: Good idea. When shall we go?

Hwá-míng: How about 7 a.m. tomorrow?

Měi-fāng: Seven o'clock? That's too early! The zoo won't be open until 9:00 a.m.

Hwá-míng: Well, when would you say we should go?

Měi-fāng: You come over to my place at 10:30, we will go together.

Hwá-míng: Ten-thirty, that's too late. Can't we make it a little earlier?

Měi-fāng: We won't eat our breakfast until after 9:00. Could we go as soon as we have had breakfast?

Hwá-míng: Fine. I'll be at your place at 9:15 sharp.

Měi-fāng: Then we can go by the 9:55 bus.

Hwá-míng: We'll do it that way! Měi-fāng, don't dress up too much, all right?

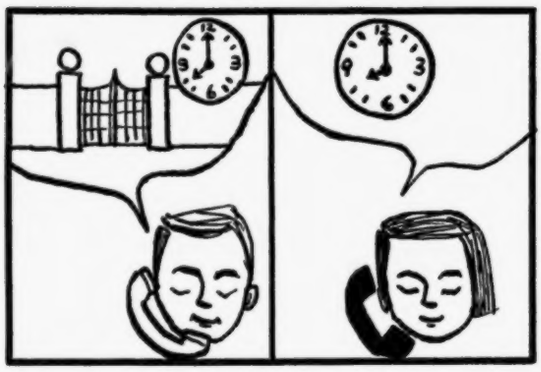
Měi-fāng: You are being silly! I must go to eat dinner now. See you tomorrow.

Wèi... Chǐngwèn Jāng Měi-fāng dzài jyā ma?
Nǐn gwèisyìng a?

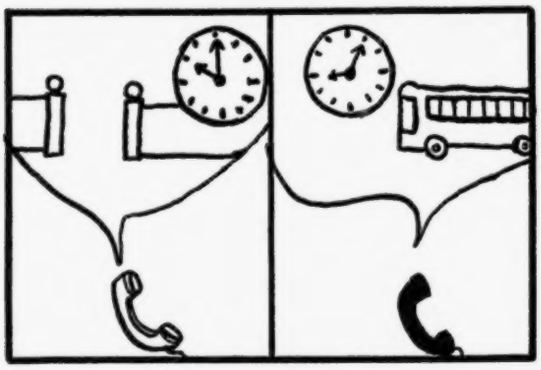
Wǒ syìng Lǐn. Wǒ shì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé.
O... Nǐ shì Lǐn Hwá-míng a. Hǎu jyǒu méijyànle.

Nǐn shì Bwómǔ a, nǐn hǎu ma?
Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jǐjyù hwà.
Hǎu. Nǐ děng yihwěr. Wǒ chyù...

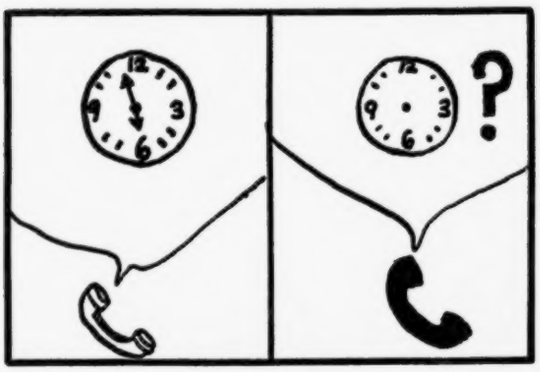
Wèi... Měi-fāng ma? Nǐ míngtyan...
Yǒu a. Nǐ yǒu shémma shì ma?
Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu dùngwùywán...
Hǎujíle. Wǒmen shémma shíhou...



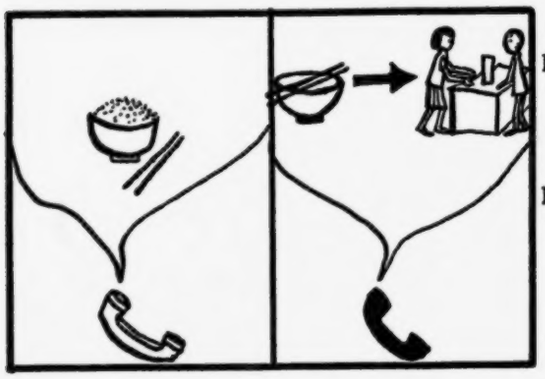
Míngtyan dzǎushang
chídyan jūng,...
Chídyǎn. Tài dzǎule.
Dùngwùywán jyóudyan
tsái kāi mén ne.



Nà nǐ shwō jídyan
jūng chyù ba?
Nǐ shŕdyanbàn dàu
wǒ jèr, wǒmen
yíkwàr chyù.



Shŕdyanbàn, tài wǎnle...
Wǒmen jyóudyan dwō tsái
chī dzǎufàn.
Chīle dzǎufàn jyou
chyù, kéyi ma?



Hǎu ba. Wó jwūn
jyóudyan-yíkè dàu
nǐ nèr.
Nà wǒmen kéyi dzwò
shŕdyan chà wǔfende
chē chyù...

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

Lǐn	a Chinese surname
Hwá-mǐng	a boy's name
túngsywé	schoolmate
bwómǔ	aunt (see Notes)
wǎnfàn	supper
gūngfu	leisure time
shì(ching)	affair; undertaking
dùngwuywán	zoo
shíhou	time
jūng	o'clock; clock
mén	door; gate
dzǎufàn	breakfast
chē	wheeled vehicle

2. Verb

syìng	be surnamed
ywē	make an appointment
děng	wait
kāi	open
dàu	arrive (cf. Unit III)
chwān	wear; put on (clothes, shoes)
chà	lack; be short

3. Co-verb

dzwò	ride; take (transportation)

4. Auxiliary Verb

děi	must
byé	don't (contracted form of búyàu)

5. Adjective

wǎn	late
pyàulyang	pretty
jyǒu	long (time)
shénma	any

6. Adverb

hǎu	very (preceding adjectives, cf. Units I, VI)
tsái	only then; not...until
jwǔn	sharp; punctual (time)
dzài	then

7. Measure

-jyù	sentence; utterance
-dyǎn	o'clock; hour
-kè	quarter of an hour
-fēn	minute

8. Number

jǐ-	how many? how much? several; a few

9. Question Word

shem	short for shemma

10. Idiomatic Expression

gwèisyìng	what is your (sur)name? Gwèisyìng is the polite form for Nǐ syìng shémma? Nín gwèisyìng? is common usage. Nǐ jyàu shémma? or Nǐ jyàu shémma mǐngdz? is the informal way of asking for one's given name.
chǐngwèn	may I ask you
wèi!	hello
o!	oh, I see
hǎu buhǎu	how about it?
jyòu nèmma bàn	let's do it that way!
nǐ jēn tǎuyàn	you are being silly! (you are really annoying)
háu jyǒu méijyànle	haven't seen you for a long time.
mǐngtyan jyàn	see you tomorrow

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

dyànhwà	telephone

2. Verb

dă	to call (telephone, cf. Unit VI)

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Co-Verb indicating means of transportation

The co-verb dzwò (ride, literally: sit on) and its object indicate the means of conveyance adopted to get from one point to another:

dzwò chē chyù (or lái)

Since dzwò literally means "to sit," it is commonly used in connection with conveyances which provide space to sit down.

2. Simple objects and verb-le only

A sentence with a simple object and verb-le only is usually unfinished. Such unfinished sentences function like English dependent clauses which begin with "when," "after," or "if." The subsequent statement is usually introduced by the fixed adverb jyou which receives no stress in speech, and suggests that the action introduced by jyou follows immediately without delay.

Chī le dzăufàn, jyou chyù, kéyi ma?

3. Imminent action with -le (cf. Unit VI)

The addition of -le to verbs modified by appropriate adverbs, or to verbs or sentences using certain auxiliary verbs, indicates that the action is imminent.

Wŏ děi chyù chī wănfàn le.

4. Telling time by the clock

The three commonest units of measurement of time by the clock are -dyăn (hour), -kè (quarter of an hour), and -fēn (minute). Myău (second) is less often used in daily conversation. These measures are preceded by appropriate number words,

and followed by the noun jūng (clock). Note that for full hours the expression with jūng is usually used whereas in stating fractions of an hour jūng is usually dropped:

shŕdyǎn jūng
shŕdyǎn-yìkè
jyóudyǎn wǔfēn

In telling time, some other words, such as jwǔn (sharp), chà (lack, to), bàn (half hour) dwō (over) are used:

lyòudyǎn chà yìfēn
sāndyǎnbàn
jwǔn sìdyǎn jūng
jyóudyǎn dwō

5. Larger unit of time

Larger units of time, such as weeks, days, and division of the day, always precede the time by the clock:

míngtyan dzǎushang shŕdyan jūng

6. Inquiring about the time of day

In asking and giving the time of day, as in asking prices (see Unit V), no verb is necessary, although shì or yǒu is sometimes used. The completion -le is sometimes attached to both question and reply:

Syàndzài jídyan jūng (le)?	Lyòudyan sānfēn (le).
Shémma shŕhou (le)?	Wǔdyanbàn (le).

7. Shemma as "any"

Ni yǒu shémma shì ma?	Do you have anything to do? (Are you busy?)
Méiyou shemma shr.	Have nothing to do. (Am free.)

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

a. Bwómǔ, literally aunt, or the wife of father's elder brother, is a common respectful way of addressing the mother

of one's friend. This is particularly observed among relatively younger people.

b. Ching (please), is a polite word used when one wishes to be pleasant in making a request. It can be used with any request.

c. Some Chinese high school boys and girls also go out together after school. Their dating, however, is relatively more restrained than the American practice, and they usually notify and secure consent from their parents first. The places they frequent are movie theatres, parks, and friends' houses.

2. Pedagogical Notes

Allot enough time to the practice of telling time, but it would not be advisable to teach the class all the possible ways of telling time. Restrict the exercise to what has been introduced in this unit.

FLUENCY DRILL

Syìng.
Gwèisyìng?
Nǐn gwèisyìng?
Nǐn gwèisyìng a?

Syìng.
Syìng Lǐn.
Wǒ syìng Lǐn.
Wǒ túngsywé syìng Lǐn.
Wǒ túngsywé yě syìng Lǐn.
Wǒ jèiwèi túngsywé yě syìng Lǐn.

Ywē.
Ywē nǐ.
Ywē nǐ chyù.
Ywē nǐ dàu dùngwùyán chyù.
Ywē nǐ dàu dùngwùyán chyù wárwar.
Wǒ ywē nǐ dàu dùngwùywán chyù wárwar.
Wó syǎng ywē nǐ dàu dùngwùywán chyù wárwar.

Jyàn.
Jyàn nǐn.
Méijyàn nǐn.
Háu jyǒu méijyàn nǐn.
Háu jyǒu méijyàn nǐn le.
Bwómǔ, háu jyǒu méijyàn nǐn le.

Děng.
Děng yihwěr.
Nǐ děng yihwěr.
Chǐng nǐ děng yihwěr.
Chǐng nǐ děng yihwěr, hàu buhǎu?

Chà.
Chà lyǎngfēn.
Chà lyǎngfenbàn.
Lyòudyan chà lyǎngfenbàn.
Syàndzài lyòudyan chà lyǎngfenbàn.

Dzwò
Dzwò chē.
Dzwò chē chyù.
Wǒmen dzwò chē chyù.
Wǒmen mǐngtyan dzwò chē chyù.
Wǒmen mǐngtyan dzwò chē dàu syāngsya chyù.

Jwǔn.
Jwǔn jyóudyan.
Jwǔn jyóudyan-yǐkè.
Jwǔn jyóudyan-yǐkè dàu.

Kāi.
Kāi mén.
Jyóudyan kāi mén.
Jyóudyan tsái kāi mén.
Dùngwùywán jyóudyan tsái kāi mén.
Dùngwùywán jyóudyan tsái kāi mén ne.

Chwān.
Chwān yǐshang.
Chwān pyàulyangde yǐshang.
Byé chwān pyàulyangde yǐshang.
Byé chwān tài pyàulyangde yǐshang.

Děi
Děi chyù.
Wǒ děi chyù.
Wǒ děi chyù chī.
Wǒ děi chyù chī wǎnfàn.
Wǒ děi chyù chī wǎnfàn le.

Jwun jyóudyan-yîkè dàu nǐ nèr.
Wó jwǔn jyóudyan-yîkè dàu nǐ nèr.

Dǎ.
Dǎ dyànhwà.
Mîngtyan dǎ dyànhwà.
Mîngtyan dzǎushang dǎ dyànhwà.
Mîngtyan dzǎushang shŕdyan dǎ dyànhwà.
Mîngtyan dzǎushang shŕdyan jūng dǎ dyànhwà.
Wǒ mîngtyan dzǎushang shŕdyan jūng dǎ dyànhwà.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr̄ — Sywésheng

Dzwò (conveyance)

Wǒ dzwò chē chyù. (Student repeats
Tā dzwò chē lái. after the model)
Wǒmen dzwò chē dàu chéng lǐ chyù.
Tāmen tsúng syāngsya dzwò chē lái.
Wǒmen dzwò shŕdyan chà wǔfende chē chyù.
Tāmen dzwò jyóudyan-yîkède chē lái.

S Vle (O), jyou ...

Wǒmen chr̄le dzǎufàn jyou chyù.
Tā chr̄le wánfàn, jyou kàn dyànshr̀.
Wǒ dàule túshūgwǎn, jyou chyù jǎu dǐdyǎn.
Tā dzwòle shùsywé syîtí, jyou kàn dyànshr̀.
Wó jyějye dàule chéng lǐ, jyou mǎi dūngsyi.
Jyā-jyùn chr̄le dūngsyi, jyou hē bīngshwěi.

-Le (imminent action)

Wó děi chyù chr̄fànle.
Tā děi chyù nyànshūle.
Wǒmen yàu chyù mǎi dūngsyi chyùle.
Tāmen yàu dàu sywésyàu chyùle.
Wǒmen jīntyan děi dzwò shùsywé syîtí le.

Tāmen mîngtyan yàu chwān pyàulyangde yîshang le.

Inquiring the Time of Day

Syàndzài jîdyan jūng?

Syàndzài jîdyan jūng le?

Syàndzài shémma shŕhou?

Syàndzài shémma shŕhou le?

Tā jîdyan jūng chyù?

Tā shémma shŕhou lái?

Telling Time by the Clock

Tā shŕdyan jūng dàu wŏ jèr lái.

Wŏ lyòudyan chà yîfen dàu nèr chyù.

Nîmen sāndyanbàn dzài jèr déng wo.

Dùngwuywán jyóudyan dwó tsái kāi mén.

Syàndzài lyòudyan sānfen le.

Yîjing shŕyidyan èrshrwŭfen le.

Larger Unit of Time

Tā mîngtyan dzăushang bādyan jūng lái.

Nî dzwótyan wănshang lyòudyanbàn dzài năr?

Wŏ jīntyan dzăushang bādyan shŕfen yŏu Yîngwén.

Tāmen Chîywe wŭhau dzăushang jyóudyan kău shèhwèi.

Nî hòutyan wănshang shŕyidyan jūng dzài jyā ma?

Wŏ chyántyan dzăushang sìdyan-yîkè jyòu dàule.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Háu jyŏu méijyànle.	Háu jyŏu méijyànle.
shwō	Háu jyŏu méishwōle.
kāi	Háu jyŏu méikāile.
ywē	Háu jyŏu méiywēle.
chwān	Háu jyŏu méichwānle.
yùng	Háu jyŏu méiyùngle.

Wǒ sylng Lín.	Wǒ sylng Lín.
Jāng	Wǒ sylng Jāng.
Lǐ	Wǒ sylng Lǐ.
Wáng	Wǒ sylng Wáng.

Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jijyù hwà.	Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jijyù hwà.
Jyā-jyùn	Wǒ syǎng gēn Jyā-jyùn shwō jijyù hwà.
Hwá-míng	Wǒ syǎng gēn Hwá-míng shwō jijyù hwà.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wǒ syǎng gēn Wáng Lǎushī shwō jijyù hwà.
Lǐ Syānsheng	Wǒ syǎng gēn Lǐ Syānsheng shwō jijyù hwà.

Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu dùngwuywán chyù wárwar.	Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu dùngwuywán chyù wárwar.
syāngsya	Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu syāngsya chyū wárwar.
chéng li	Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu chéng li chyù wárwar.
tāmen nèr	Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu tāmen nèr chyù wárwar.
Jyā-jyùn nèr	Wǒ syǎng ywē nǐ dàu Jyā-jyùn nèr chyù wárwar.

Wǒmen shémma shíhou chyù ne?	Wǒmen shémma shíhou chyù ne?
dzwò	Wǒmen shémma shíhou dzwò ne?
mǎi	Wǒmen shémma shíhou mǎi ne?
swàn	Wǒmen shémma shíhou swàn ne?
yùbei	Wǒmen shémma shíhou yùbei ne?

Míngtyan dzǎushang shǐ-	Míngtyan dzǎushang shǐdyan jūng, hǎu
dyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?	buhǎu?
bādyan	Míngtyan dzǎushang bādyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?
chīdyan	Míngtyan dzǎushang chīdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?
lyòudyan	Míngtyan dzǎushang lyòudyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?
wǔdyan	Míngtyan dzǎushang wǔdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?

Tài dzǎule.	Tài dzǎule.
nán	Tài nánle.
rúngyi	Tài rúngyile.
è	Tài èle.
bǎu	Tài bǎule.
gwèi	Tài gwèile.
pyányi	Tài pyányile.

Wǒ děi chyù chī wǎnfàn	
le.	Wǒ děi chyù chī wǎnfàn le.
kǎu shùsywé	Wǒ děi chyù kǎu shùsywé le.
chwān yīshang	Wǒ děi chyù chwān yīshang le.
ywē Měi-fāng	Wǒ děi chyù ywē Měi-fāng le.
dǎ dyànhwà	Wǒ děi chyù dǎ dyànhwà le.

Chīle dzǎufàn jyou chyù.	Chīle dzǎufàn jyou chyù.
Chwānle yīshang	Chwānle yīshang jyou chyù.
Jyànle Jyā-jyùn	Jyànle Jyā-jyùn jyou chyù.
Hēle nyóunǎi	Hēle nyóunǎi jyou chyù.
Dǎle dyànhwà	Dǎle dyànhwà jyou chyù.

Wǒmen dzwò shǐdyan chà wǔfunde chē chyù.	Wǒmen dzwò shǐdyan chà wǔfende chē chyù.
jyóudyan-yìkè	Wǒmen dzwò jyóudyan-yìkède chē chyù.
lyángdyanbàn	Wǒmen dzwò lyángdyanbànde chē chyù.
sāndyan dwō	Wǒmen dzwò sāndyan dwōde chē chyù.
sìdyan jūng	Wǒmen dzwò sìdyan jūngde chē chyù.
Dùngwuywán jyóudyan tsai kāi mén ne.	Dùngwuywán jyóudyan tsai kāi mén ne.
Sywésyàu	Sywésyàu jyóudyan tsai kāi mén ne.
Túshūgwǎn	Túshūgwǎn jyóudyan tsai kāi mén ne.
Fàntīng	Fàntīng jyóudyan tsai kāi mén ne.
Fàngwǎr	Fàngwǎr jyóudyan tsai kāi mén ne.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Wǒ syìng Lín.	Wǒ syìng Lín.
Jāng	Wǒ syìng Jāng.
Tā	Tā syìng Jāng.
Wáng	Tā syìng Wáng.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen syìng Wáng.
Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jìjyù hwà.	Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jìjyù hwà.
Lǐ Syānsheng	Wǒ syǎng gēn Lǐ-Syānsheng shwō jìjyù hwà.
Tāmen	Tāmen syǎng gēn Lǐ-Syānsheng shwō jìjyù hwà.
Hwá-míng	Tāmen syǎng gēn Hwá-míng shwō jìjyù hwà.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen syǎng gēn Hwá-míng shwō jìjyù hwà.

Wǒmen shémma shǐhou chyù ne?	Wǒmen shémma shǐhou chyù ne?
tīng	Wǒmen shémma shǐhou tīng ne?
Nǐ	Nǐ shémma shǐhou tīng ne?
dàu	Nǐ shémma shǐhou dàu ne?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen shémma shǐhou dàu ne?
Wǒ syǎng ywē ni dàu dūngwuywán chyù wárwar.	Wǒ syǎng ywē ni dàu dūngwuywán chyù wárwar.
chéng li.	Wǒ syǎng ywē ni dàu chéng li chyù wárwar.
Tā	Tā syǎng ywē ni dàu chéng li chyù wárwar.
syāngsya	Tā syǎng ywē ni dàu syāngsya chyù wárwar.
Měi-fāng	Měi-fāng syǎng ywē ni dàu syāngsya chyù wárwar.
Míngtyan dzǎushang shǐdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?	Míngtyan dzǎushang shǐdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?
chīdyan	Míngtyan dzǎushang chīdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?
Hòutyan	Hòutyan dzǎushang chīdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?
jyóudyan	Hòutyan dzǎushang jyóudyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?
Jīntyan	Jīntyan dzǎushang jyóudyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?

Wǒ děi chyù chī wǎnfàn
le. Wǒ děi chyù chī wǎnfàn le.
dǎ dyànhwà Wǒ děi chyù dǎ dyànhwà le.
Tā Tā děi chyù dǎ dyànhwà le.
chwān yǐshang Tā děi chyù chwān yǐshang le.

Wǒmen chīle dzǎufàn
jyou chyù. Wǒmen chīle dzǎufàn jyou chyù.
chwānle yǐshang Wǒmen chwānle yǐshang jyou chyù.
Tāmen Tāmen chwānle yǐshang jyou chyù.
dǎle dyànhwà Tāmen dǎle dyànhwà jyou chyù.
Nǐmen Nǐmen dǎle dyànhwà jyou chyù.

Wǒ dzwò shídyan chà
yìkède chē chyù. Wǒ dzwò shídyan chà yìkède chē chyù.
lyángdyan wǔfende Wǒ dzwò lyángdyan wǔfende chē chyù.
Tā Tā dzwò lyángdyan wǔfende chē chyù.
sìdyanbànde Tā dzwò sìdyanbànde chē chyù.
nwá-ming [illegible]

Dùngwuywán jyóudyan tsai
kāi mén ne. Dùngwuywán jyóudyan tsai kāi mén ne.
bādyan Dùngwuywán bādyan tsai kāi mén ne.
Sywésyàu Sywésyàu bādyan tsai kāi mén ne.
chídyanbàn Sywésyàu chídyanbàn tsai kāi mén ne.
Shíyànshì Shíyanshì chídyanbàn tsai kāi mén ne.

RESPONSE DRILL

Chíngwèn Jāng Měi-fāng dzài jyā ma?
(dzài) Tā dzài jyā.
(búdzài) Tā búdzài jyā.

Nǐn gwèisyìng?

(Lǐn)	Wǒ syìng Lǐn.
(Wáng)	Wǒ syìng Wáng.
(Chén)	Wǒ syìng Chén.
(Lǐ)	Wǒ syìng Lǐ.
(Jāng)	Wǒ syìng Jāng.

Nǐ míngtyan yǒu méiyou gūngfu?

(yǒu)	Wǒ míngtyan yǒu gūngfu.
(méiyou)	Wǒ míngtyan méiyou gūngfu.

Nǐ yǒu shémma shì ma?

(yǒu yìdyǎr)	Wǒ yǒu yìdyǎr shì.
(méi shémma)	Wǒ méi shémma shì.

Wǒmen shémma shíhou chyù ne?

(lyòudyan jūng)	Wǒmen lyòudyan jūng chyù.
(sāndyanbàn)	Wǒmen sāndyanbàn chyù.
(wúdyan-yíkè)	Wǒmen wúdyan-yíkè chyù.
(jyóudyan wǔfēn)	Wǒmen jyóudyan wǔfen chyù.

Nǐ syǎng gēn shéi dàu dùngwuywán chyù wárwar?

(Měi-fāng)	Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng chyù wárwar.
(Jyā-jyùn)	Wǒ syǎng gēn Jyā-jyùn chyù wárwar.
(Hwá-míng)	Wǒ syǎng gēn Hwá-míng chyù wárwar.

Míngtyan dzǎushang chīdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?

(tài dzǎule)	Chīdyan jūng tài dzǎule.
(tài wǎnle)	Chīdyan jūng tài wǎnle.
(hǎujíle)	Chīdyan jūng hǎujíle.

Syàndzài jǐdyan jūng le?

(lyángdyanbàn)	Syàndzài lyángdyanbàn le.
(shírèrdyan dwō)	Syàndzài shírèrdyan dwō le.
(chīdyan-yíkè)	Syàndzài chīdyan-yíkè le.
(wúdyan jūng)	Syàndzài wúdyan jūng le.

Nǐ dzwò shémma shíhoude chē chyù?

(yìdyan jūngde)	Wǒ dzwò yìdyan jūngde chē chyù.
(sāndyanbànde)	Wǒ dzwò sāndyanbànde chē chyù.
(sìdyan dwōde)	Wǒ dzwò sìdyan dwōde chē chyù.
(jyóudyan èrshrfende)	Wǒ dzwò jyóudyan èrshrfende chē chyù.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā gwèisyìng.	Nín gwèisyìng a?
	Wǒ syìng Jāng.
	Wǒ syìng Lín.
	Wǒ syìng Chén.
	Wǒ syìng Wáng.
	Wǒ syìng Lǐ.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā shì bushì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé.	Nǐ shì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé ma?
	Wǒ shì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé.
	Wǒ búshì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā syǎng bu-syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jìjyù hwà.	Nǐ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jìjyù hwà ma?
	Wǒ syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jìjyù hwà.
	Wǒ bùsyǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jìjyù hwà.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā míngtyan yǒu méiyou gūngfu.	Nǐ míngtyan yǒu gūngfu méiyou?
	Wǒ míngtyan yǒu gūngfu.
	Wǒ míngtyan méiyou gūngfu.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā yǒu shémma shì méiyou.	Nǐ yǒu shémma shì ma? Wǒ yǒu shì. Wǒ méiyou shì.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā shémma shíhou chyù.	Nǐ shémma shíhou chyù ne? Wǒ míngtyan shídyan jūng chyù. Wǒ míngtyan jyóudyanbàn chyù.
Nǐ wèn tā, dùngwuywán jǐdyan kāi mén.	Dùngwuywán jǐdyan kāi mén? Dùngwuywán shíyidyan tsái kāi mén. Dùngwuywán lyòudyan jyòu kāi mén. Dùngwuywán bādyan jūng kāi mén.
Nǐ wèn tā, nǐmen dzwò shémma shíhoude chē chyù ne.	Wǒmen dzwò shémma shíhoude chē chyù ne? Wǒmen dzwò jyóudyan wǔfende chē chyù. Wǒmen dzwò bādyan-yíkède chē chyù. Wǒmen dzwò chídyanbànde chē chyù.
Nǐ wèn tā, syàndzài jǐdyan jūng.	Syàndzài jǐdyan jūng le? Lyòudyan chà lyǎngfēn. Sāndyan chà chífēn. Wǔdyan chà chífēn. Lyángdyan chà bāfēn.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā chíle wǎnfàn jyou dzwò shémma.	Nǐ chíle wǎnfàn jyou dzwò shémma? Wǒ chíle wǎnfàn jyou nyànshū. Wǒ chíle wǎnfàn jyou kàn dyànshì. Wǒ chíle wǎnfàn jyou tīng chàngpyār.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Hwá-míng nèr yǒu dyànhwà ma?

Yǒu a, nǐ bùjídau ma?

Wǒ bùjrdau a.
Tā nèrde dyànhwà shr sz-lyòu-wú-jyǒu-chī.
Wèi... Nǐ shr Hwá-míng ma?
Shr a, nǐ shr Jyā-jyùn ba. Yǒu shémma shr?
Nǐ jrdau wǒmen nèityan kǎu Jūngwén ma?
Dàgài hòutyan dzǎushang jyóudyan jūng kǎu ba.
Nǐ yùbeile méiyùbei?
Wǒ hái méiyùbei ne. Nǐ ne?
Wó yě hái méiyou ne. Wǒmen yíkwàr yùbei, hǎu buhǎu?
Hǎu a. Túshūgwǎn míngtyan kāi mén ba.
Wó syǎng yídìng kāi mén. Wǒmen jídyan jūng chyù?
Jyóudyanbàn chyù ba.
Nà hǎujíle. Wó syǎng ywē Měi-fāng gēn wǒmen yíkwàr chyù.
Hǎu a. Nímen jyóudyan-yíkè dàu wǒ jèr lái.
Hǎu, jyòu nèmma bàn. Míngtyanjyàn.
Míngtyanjyàn.

NARRATION

Hwá-míng shr wǒde túngsywé. Wǒmen háu jyǒu méijyànle. Wó syǎng ywē tā yíkwàr dàu dùngwuywán chyù wárwar. Wǒ jyou dǎle dyànhwàle. Wǒ wèn tā míngtyan yǒu méiyou gūngfu. Tā tīngle dyànhwà jyou shwō: "Yǒu a. Dàu wǒ jyā li lái wár ba." Wǒ shwō: "Syèsye, kěshr wó syǎng ywē nǐ dàu dūngwuywán chyù wárwar." Tā shwō: "Míngtyan wó hěn máng, bùnéng chyù, wǒmen hòutyan chyù, hǎu buhǎu?" Wǒ shwō: "Yé hǎu. Nǐ shwō women shémma shŕhou chyù?" Tā shwō: "Chīdyanbàn, hǎu buhǎu?" Wǒ shwō: "Tài dzǎule. Dùngwuywán jyóudyan tsái kāi mén ne." Tā shwō: "Nà wǒmen jyóudyan jūng chyù. Nǐ jyóudyan chà yíkè dàu wǒ jèr. Wǒmen kéyi dzwò jyóudyan shŕfende chē chyù." Wǒ shwō: "Nà tài hǎule, jyòu nèmma bàn." Wó dǎle dyànhwà, jyou chyù chr wǎnfàn. Hòutyan wǒ yàu gēn Hwá-míng yíkwàr chyù wár chyùle.

RHYMES

Jáng Měi-fāng, wó syǐhwan,
Dǎ dyànhwà, ywē tā wár,
Jīntyan tài máng děng míngtyan.
Wǒmen yàu dàu dùngwuywán,
Míngtyan dzǎushang jyóudyanbàn,
Bùdzǎu, yě bùwǎn.
Bādyan-yíkè dàu wǒ jèr,
Chī le dzǎufàn yíkwàr chyù,
Dzwò chē shǐdyan jwǔn dàu nèr.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Nín gwèisyìng?
(Wǒ syìng...)
Nǐ míngtyan yǒu méiyou gūngfu?
(Yǒu a. Nǐ yǒu shémma shì ma?)
Wǒmen shémma shǐhou chyù ne?
(Míngtyan dzǎushang chǐdyan jūng, hǎu buhǎu?)
Shǐdyanbàn chyù, hǎu bùhǎu?
(Tài wǎnle.)
Nǐ shémma shǐhou dàu wǒ jèr?
(Wó jwǔn jyóudyan-yíkè dàu nǐ nèr.)
Nǐ dzwò jǐdyande chē chyù?
(Wǒ dzwò shǐdyan chà wǔfende chē chyù.)
Syàndzài jǐdyan jūng le?
(Syàndzài.....le.)
Nǐ chī le wǎnfàn jyou dzwò shémma?
(Wǒ chī le wǎnfàn jyou chyù kàn dyànshì.)
Nín syǎng gēn shéi shwōhwà?
(Wó syǎng gēn Měi-fāng shwō jijyù hwà.)
Nǐ shì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé ma?
(Wǒ shì Jāng Měi-fāngde túngsywé.)

Nǐ yǒu shémma shì ma?
(Wǒ yǒu yìdyǎr shì.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passages in English)

Hwá-míng shì wǒde túngsywé. Wǒmen háu jyòu méijyànle. Wǒ syǎng ywē tā yíkwàr dàu dùngwuywán chyù wárwar. Wǒ dǎ dyànhwà wèn tā míngtyan yǒu méiyou gūngfu. Tā shwō tā míngtyan hěn máng, bùnéng chyù. Wǒ jyou shwō hòutyan chyù, hǎu buhǎu. Tā shwō hǎujíle. Wǒ dzǎushang bādyan jūng dàu Hwá-míng nèr chyù. Tā hái méichī dzǎufàn. Tā chīle dzǎufàn, wǒmen jyou yíkwàr dzwò shŕdyan jūngde chē dàu dùngwuywán chyù. Wǒmen jyóudyan chà wǔfen jyou dàu dùngwuywán, kěshr dùngwuywán hái méikāi mén. Wǒmen děngle hén jyǒu, dùngwuywán tsai kāi mén.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese characters)

UNIT VIII

NEW YEAR GREETING

Two students meet on New Year's Day. They talk about their New Year's Eve celebration and plans to pay the customary visit to their teacher. They follow the traditional practice of bringing one or two gifts to the teacher. They exchange greetings with the teacher and his family.

DIALOGUE

Sywésheng Yī: Gūngsyi gūngsyi!

Sywésheng Èr: Bàinyán bàinyán! Gwònyán wárde hău a!

Sywésheng Yī: Wŏmen wárde jēn gāusyìng, yíyè dōu méishwèi!

Sywésheng Èr: Nǐ búlèi ma? Nǐ syàndzài dàu năr chyù?

Sywésheng Yī: Wó děi chyù gěi Wáng Lăushī bàinyán.

Sywésheng Èr: Wó yĕ jèng syăng chyù ne. Wŏmen yíkwàr chyù ba!

Sywésheng Yī: Hău. Nǐ syăng sùng dyăr shémma lǐ ne?

Sywésheng Èr: Nǐ kàn wŏ dài yìhér bǐnggān ne, háishr dài yìlŏur shwéigwŏ?

Sywésheng Yī: Nà jyou jèiyangr ba! Nǐ dài yìhér bĭnggān, wŏ dài yìlŏur shwéigwŏ.

Sywésheng Èr: Lăushī, Shīrmŭ, wŏmen gěi nín bàinyán láile. Gūngsyi gūngsyi!

Lăushī: Gūngsyi gūngsyi! Nímen tài kèchile. Chíng dzwò chíng dzwò.

Sywésheng Yi: Lăushr, wŏmen gěi nín dàile dyăr dungsyi.

Lăushī: Nímen láile jyòu hăule, gàn shémma hái dài dūngsyi ne?

Sywésheng Èr: Méi shémma. Yídyár syău yìsz.

Lăushī: Dwèibuchǐ, wŏ syàndzài děi chyu tsānjyā twánbài, nímen dzwò yihwēr.

Sywésheng Yī: Lăushī, byé kèchi, wŏmen hái děi dàu Chén Lăushī jyā chyù bàinyán ne.

Shīrmŭ: Nímen byé máng a! Tā yìwánle, jyou méi shìle.

Lăushī: Nímen jyòu dzài jèr, gēn Shīrmŭ tántan.

Shīrmŭ: Lái, lái. Hē bēi chá, chī kwài táng.

Sywésheng Èr: Syèsye nín. Shīrmŭ, nín yĕ máng, wŏmen háishr dzŏu ba.

Student A: Greetings, greetings!

Student B: Happy New Year, Happy New Year! Did you have a nice New Year's party?

Student A: We really had a wonderful time - didn't go to sleep at all.

Student B: Aren't you tired? Where are you going now?

Student A: I have to go to pay a New Year's visit to Mr. Wáng.

Student B: I am also just thinking about going there. Let's go together.

Student A: Good. What presents do you wish to bring?

Student B: What do you think? Should I bring a box of cookies or a basket of fruit?

Student A: Let's do it this way. You bring a box of cookies; I'll bring a basket of fruit.

Student: Mr. Wáng, Mrs. Wáng, we are coming to wish you Happy New Year. Greetings, greetings!

Mr. Wáng: Happy New Year, Happy New Year! You are over-doing it. Please have a seat.

Student A: Mr. Wáng, this is just a little something.

Mr. Wáng: It's enough for you people to come over. You shouldn't bring things.

Student B: This is really nothing, just a little token.

Mr. Wáng: I'm sorry that I have to go to the New Year's group party. You people stay awhile.

Student A: Please don't bother, Mr. Wáng; we still have to go to Mr. Chén's home to say Happy New Year.

Mrs. Wáng: You people don't have to hurry. He will be free as soon as he is through there.

Gūngsyi gūngsyi.
Bàinyán bàinyán.
  Gwònyán wárde hǎu a.
Wǒmen wárde jēn
  gāusyìng...

Nǐ búlèi ma? Nǐ
  syàndzài dàu nǎr
  chyù?
Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng
  Lǎushī bàinyán.
Wǒ yě jèng syǎng chyù...

Hǎu. Nǐ syǎng sùng
  dyǎr shémma lǐ ne?
Nǐ kàn wǒ dài yìhér
  bīnggān ne, háishr...
Nà jyòu jèiyàng ba...

Lǎushī, Shīmǔ, wǒmen...
Gūngsyi gūngsyi. Nǐmen
  tài kèchile.
Chǐng dzwò chǐng dzwò.

Lǎushr̄, wǒmen gěi nǐn
dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.
Nǐmen láile jyòu hǎule.
Méi shémma. Yǐdyǎr
syǎu yìsz.

Dwèibujù, wǒ syàndzài
děi chyù...
Lǎushr̄ byé kèchi, wǒmen
hái děi dàu byéjyā
chyù bàinyán ne.

Nǐmen byé máng a. Tā
yǐwánle, jyòu...
Nǐmen jyòu dzài jèr,
gēn Shr̄mǔ tántan.

Lái, lái. Hē bēi chá,
chr̄ kwài táng.
Syèsye nǐn. Shr̄mǔ, nǐn
yě máng, wǒmen háishr
dzǒu ba.

Mr. Wáng: You stay here and chat awhile with Mrs. Wáng.

Mrs. Wáng: Come, come. Have a cup of tea and a piece of candy.

Student B: Thank you very much. Mrs. Wáng, you are also busy; we had better be going.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

táng	candy; sugar
bīnggān	biscuit
shwéigwǒ	fruit
shrmǔ	teacher's wife
yìsz	originally meaning "idea;" Syǎu yìsz, "a little thing" or "nothing," usually used as a polite expression when presenting a gift to somebody.
twánbài	exchange New Year's greeting in a group
chá	tea

2. Verb

gūngsyi	congratulate
bàinyán	go to pay New Year's call (VO)
gwònyán	celebrate New Year (VO)
shwèi(jyàu)	sleep (VO)
sùnglǐ	present gift (VO)
dài	take or bring along
tsānjyā	join
wán	finish; get through
tán	talk (cf. Unit VI)
dzǒu	walk; go; leave
kàn	think (Nǐ kàn wǒ dài... Do you think I should...; From your viewpoint, should I...)

3. Co-verb

gěi	for; to (for benefit of, cf. Unit V)

4. Adjective

gāusyìng	delightful; enjoyable
lèi	tired
kèchi	polite; standing on ceremony

5. Adverb

jèng(dzài)	just in the midst of
háishr	had better; still so

6. Measure

-hér	box
-lǒur	basket
-yè	night

7. Words condensed

Words like yìdyǎr or a number-measure combination are sometimes condensed to indicate an indefinite small quantity.

yìdyǎr becomes dyǎr; yìbēi, bēi; yíkwài, kwài. These condensations may occur in: Sp (yi)M, V (yi)M, V (yi) V.

8. Idiomatic Expression

(Nà) jyou jèiyangr ba	let's do it this way
chǐng dzwò	please sit down
méi shemma	don't mention it; it's nothing at all; not at all; etc. (used in response to someone who thanks you for a favor)
dwèibuchǐ	excuse me; I'm sorry
byé kèchi	same general meaning as méi shemma, used whenever you feel that the other party is being too polite or more exclusively when you want

to urge him to accept a favor;
literally, "Don't be too polite."

byé máng a — don't hurry; take it easy
gàn shémma — why

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Describing manner — S Vde Adj

In describing the manner in which the action of a verb is carried out, the action verb takes a -de and precedes the adjective that describes the manner.

Gwǒnyán wárde hǎu a.
Wǒmen wárde jēn gāusyìng.

2. "Just as soon as" — S yiV; jyou V; S yiV O, jyou V

The Chinese equivalent of the more explicit expression "just as soon as" is formed by affixing the numeral yī (one, once, used adverbially) to the verb of the dependent clause. The verb in the subsequent statement is usually preceded by the adverb jyou (then).

Tā yìwánle, jyou méi byéde shì le.

Compare with the following:

Tā chīle fàn, jyou chyùle. — He ate, then he went. (He left after eating.)
S Vle O, jyou Vle (Unit VII)

Nǐmen laíle, jyou haǔle. — You came, it's fine. (It's all right that you have come.)
S Vle, jyou Adj le (Unit VIII)

3. Emphatic choice-type questions — S (shì or háishr) V, háishr (or shì) negV

The alternatives presented in choice-type questions, whether the questions involve a choice between positive or negative, or between various

other possible alternatives, are accentuated when one of the following patterns is used (cf. Unit II). Of the following forms, the first is the most common one:

Nǐ chyù, háishr búchyu?

Nǐ chyù, shì búchyu?

Nǐ shì chyù, shr búchyu?

Nǐ háishr chyù, háishr bùchyu?

Wǒ dài yìhér binggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?

4. Sentence suffix ne with questions

The sentence suffix ne is often added to certain questions as follows:

a. Ne may be attached to either one or both of the alternatives presented in the emphatic choice-type question pattern:

Wǒ shì dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwō (ne)?

b. Ne is sometimes attached to sentences containing question words:

Nǐ syǎng sùng shémma lǐ ne?

Gàn shémma hái dài dūngsyi ne?

c. Ne is sometimes used for questioning without the necessity of repeating the essential elements of the question which has already been clearly understood or stated. (cf. Unit IV)

Wǒ syǎng chī nyóupái. Nǐ ne?

5. Use of dōu compared

Yīngwen, Jūngwen, dōu bùnán.	Both English and Chinese are not difficult.
	N, N, dōu negAdj. (Unit II)
Tā yidyǎr jyǒu dōu bùhē	He does not drink even a single drop of wine.
	S yiM-N dōu negV (Unit IV)

Wǒman yìyè dōu méishwèi. We did not sleep at all the whole night.
S yiM dōu negV (Unit VIII)

These structures are similar, and the function of the word dōu is also similar, but the English translation has to vary somewhat to express the meaning in a readily understandable way.

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

a. The Chinese custom of going to the friend's house to wish him a Happy New Year is age-old. In recent years many people have been replacing individual personal visits with group, collective greetings to take place at a simple gathering usually on New Year's Day. This is called "twánbài." The old custom, however, has proven to be rather difficult to change. Consequently, in government and academic circles individual personal visits are still practiced in addition to the "twánbài." The same thing goes for the custom of giving New Year's gifts which, though rarely expensive and never obligatory, are still being observed as a proper social behavior.

b. One feature of traditional Chinese New Year's celebration is rapidly dying but still can be observed in certain families. According to this practice, the family gathers together in one room after the New Year's Eve dinner, which usually lasts a long time. The members of the family take turns to salute and express New Year's wishes to the head of the family who then distributes sums of money as gifts to everyone present. The gift money, always wrapped in red paper, is called "year's end money." After the formal greetings, the family remains together playing different games often throughout the night.

c. Selling fruit by small baskets, usually made of bamboo, is most common in China. The baskets (lǒur) are about as plentiful there as the paper bags in America.

2. Pedagogical Notes

a. Arrange to play a short tape of recorded music and sounds heard at a Chinese New Year's celebration. This will set the mood for the situation.

b. Props or illustrations: box of candy, basketful of fruit, biscuits, a cup of tea.

FLUENCY DRILL

Gāusyìng.
Jēn gāusyìng.
Wárde jēn gāusyìng.
Gwònyán wārde jēn gāusyìng.
Wǒmen gwònyán wárde jēn gāusyìng.

Shwèi.
Méishwèi.
Dōu méishwèi.
Yǐyè dōu méishwèi.
Wānshang yǐyè dōu méishwèi.
Wǒ dzwótyan wānshang yǐyè dōu méishwèi.

Gěi.
Gěi wáng Lǎushī.
Gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.
Chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.
Děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.
Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.

Lǐ.
Shémma lǐ?
Sùng shémma lǐ?
Sùng dyǎr shémma lǐ?
Sùng dyǎr shémma lǐ ne?
Syǎng sùng dyǎr shémma lǐ ne?
Nǐ syǎng sùng dyǎr shémma lǐ ne?

Tsānjyā.
Tsānjyā twánbài.
Chyù tsānjyā twánbài.
Děi chyù tsānjyā twánbài.
Syàndzài děi chyù tsānjyā twánbài.
Wǒ syàndzài děi chyù tsānjyā twánbài.

Dàì.
Dàile.
Dàile dūngsyi.
Dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.
Gěi nǐn dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.
Wǒmen gěi nǐn dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.

Shì.
Byéde shì.
Méi byéde shì.
Méi byéde shì le.
Jyòu méi byéde shì le.
Wánle jyòu méi byéde shì le.
Yǐwánle jyòu méi byéde shì le.
Tā yǐwánle jyòu méi byéde shì le.

Tán.
Tántan.
Gēn Shīrmǔ tántan.
Dzài jèr gēn Shīrmǔ tántan.
Jyou dzài jèr gēn Shīrmǔ tántan.
Nǐmen jyou dzài jèr gēn Shīrmǔ tántan.

Lèi.
Tài lèi.
Tài lèile.
Wárde tài lèile.
Gwònyán wárde tài lèile.
Wǒ gwònyán wárde tài lèile.

Dzǒu.
Dzǒu ba.
Háishr dzǒu ba.
Wǒmen háishr dzǒu ba.
Wǒmen syàndzài háishr dzǒu ba.

REPETITION DRILL

Láushī	Sywésheng
S Vde Adj	
Gwònyán wárde hǎu a.	(Student repeats after
Wǒmen wárde jēn gāusyìng.	the model)

Wǒ dzwótyan shwèide hén hǎu.
Tā chwānde hěn pyàulyang.
Nǐ jīntyan chǐde hěn dwō.

S yiV (O) (S) jyou V (O)

Tā yǐwánle, jyòu méi byēde shǐ le.
Tā yǐdǎle dyànhwà, jyòu kéyi chyùle.
Wǒmen yǐbǎile jwōdz, jyòu kéyi chīfànle.
Tā yǐmǎile dūngsyi, jyòu dàu wǒ jèr lái.
Tā yǐdzǒu, wǒ jyòu chyù shwèile.
Wǒ yídàu, tāmen jyòu hē jyǒu le.

Emphatic Choice-type Questions

Wǒmen chīfàn ne, háishr bùchīfàn?
Tāmen tsānjyā ne, háishr bùtsānjyā?
Nǐ shǐ chī chǎumyàn ne, háishr chī chǎufàn?
Tā shǐ kàn dyànshì ne, háishr tīng chàngpyār?
Nǐ dàu chéng li chyù ne, háishr dàu syāngsya chyù?
Nǐ dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?

Ne (with questions)

Nǐ shǐ chyù ne, háishr búchyù?
Tā chī nyóupái ne, háishr chī jájī?
Nǐ syǎng sùng dyǎr shémma lǐ ne?
Wǒmen shémma shíhou chyù ne?
Wǒ syǎng hē nyóunǎi. Nǐ ne?
Tā dàu sywésyàu chyù. Nǐ ne?

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Gwònyán wárde hǎu a.	Gwònyán wárde hǎu a.
shwèide	Gwònyán shwèide hǎu a.
chīde	Gwònyán chīde hǎu a.

Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.
dzwò shì	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī dzwò shì.

mǎi shū	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushr̄ mǎi shū.
bǎi jwōdz	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushr̄ bǎi jwōdz.
jǎu dždyǎn	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushr̄ jǎu dždyǎn.

Wǒ yě jèng syǎng chyù ne.	Wǒ yě jèng syǎng chyù ne.
dzǒu	Wǒ yě jèng syáng dzǒu ne.
shwèi	Wǒ yě jèng syǎng shwèi ne.
tsānjyā	Wǒ yě jèng syǎng tsānjyā ne.
shwō	Wǒ yě jèng syǎng shwō ne.

Wǒmen gěi nín dàile yìdyǎr dūngsyi.	Wǒmen gěi nín dàile yìdyǎr dūngsyi.
bīnggān	Wǒmen gěi nín dàile yìdyǎr bīnggān.
shwéigwǒ	Wǒmen gěi nín dàile yìdyǎr shwéigwǒ.
táng	Wǒmen gěi nín dàile yìdyǎr táng.

Tā yìwánle jyòu méi byéde shr̀ le.	Tā yìwánle jyòu méi byéde shr̀ le.
chyù chr̄fàn	Tā yìwánle jyòu chyù chr̄fànle.
kàn dyànshr̀	Tā yìwánle jyòu kàn dyànshr̀ le.
dàu nèr chyù	Tā yìwánle jyòu dàu nèr chyùle.
chyù hē chá	Tā yìwánle jyòu chyù hē chá le.

Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù bàinyán ne.	Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù bàinyán ne.
chr̄fàn	Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù chr̄fàn ne.
wár	Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù wár ne.
mái jǐ	Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù mái jǐ ne.
tántan	Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù tántan ne.

Wǒmen háishr dzǒu ba.	Wǒmen háishr dzǒu ba.
chyù	Wǒmen háishr chyù ba.
tsānjyā	Wǒmen háishr tsānjyā ba.
hē chá	Wǒmen háishr hē chá ba.
chī táng	Wǒmen háishr chī táng ba.

Nǐ dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?	Nǐ dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?
Tā	Tā dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?
Wǒmen	Wǒmen dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?
Tāmen	Tāmen dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Gwònyán wǎrde hǎu a.	Gwònyán wǎrde hǎu a.
shwèide	Gwònyán shwèide hǎu a.
Dzwótyan	Dzwótyan shwèide hǎu a.
chīde	Dzwótyan chīde hǎu a.
Chyántyan	Chyántyan chīde hǎu a.

Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushī bàinyán.
Lǐ Syānsheng	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Lǐ Syānsheng bàinyán.
Tā	Tā děi chyù gěi Lǐ Syānsheng bàinyán.
Lín Hwá-míng	Tā děi chyù gěi Lín Hwá-míng bàinyán.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen děi chyù gěi Lín Hwá-míng bàinyán.

Yīyè dōu méishwèi.	Yīyè dōu méishwèi.
méichī	Yīyè dōu méichī.
Yìdyǎr	Yìdyǎr dōu méichī.
méimǎi	Yìdyǎr dōu méimǎi.
Yìjāng	Yìjāng dōu méimǎi.
Wǒ yě jèng syǎng	
chyù ne.	Wǒ yě jèng syǎng chyù ne.
dzǒu	Wǒ yě jèng syáng dzǒu ne.
Tā	Tā yě jèng syáng dzǒu ne.
shwèi	Tā yě jèng syǎng shwèi ne.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen yě jèng syǎng shwèi ne.
Wǒmen gěi nǐn dàile	
dyǎr dūngsyi.	Wǒmen gěi nǐn dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.
táng	Wǒmen gěi nǐn dàile dyǎr táng.
Wǒ	Wǒ gěi nǐn dàile dyǎr táng.
shwéigwǒ	Wǒ gěi nǐn dàile dyǎr shwéigwǒ.
Tāmen	Tāmen gěi nǐn dàile dyǎr shwéigwǒ.
Tā yìwánle jyòu méi	
byéde shr le.	Tā yìwánle jyòu méi byéde shr le.
chyù hē chá	Tā yìwánle jyòu chyù hē chá le.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen yìwánle jyòu chyù hē chá le.
dàu nèr chyù	Wǒmen yìwánle jyòu dàu nèr chyùle.
Tāmen	Tāmen yìwánle jyòu dàu nèr chyùle.
Wǒmen hái děi dàu byé-	Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù
jyā chyù bàinyán ne.	bàinyán ne.
tántan	Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù tántan ne.
Tā	Tā hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù tántan ne.

chīfàn	Tā hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù chīfàn ne.
Wǒ	Wǒ hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù chīfàn ne.
Wǒmen háishr dzǒu ba.	Wǒmen háishr dzǒu ba.
tsānjyā	Wǒmen háishr tsānjyā ba.
Nǐn	Nǐn háishr tsānjyā ba.
chyù	Nǐn háishr chyù ba.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen háishr chyù ba.

RESPONSE DRILL

Gwònyán wárde hǎu a?

(hén hǎu)	Gwònyán wárde hén hǎu.
(jēn gāusyìng)	Gwònyán wárde jēn gāusyìng.
(bùhǎu)	Gwònyán wárde bùhǎu.
(bùhén hǎu)	Gwònyán wárde bùhén hǎu.

Nǐ děi chyù gěi shéi bàinyán ne?

(Wáng Lǎushr)	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lǎushr bàinyán.
(Jāng Syānsheng)	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Jāng Syānsheng bàinyán.
(Lǐ Syānsheng)	Wǒ děi chyù géi Lǐ Syānsheng bàinyán.
(Chén Lǎushr)	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Chén Lǎushr bàinyán.
(Lín Hwá-míng)	Wǒ děi chyù gěi Lín Hwá-míng bàinyán.

Nǐ dzwótyan wǎnshang shwèide hǎu ma?

(hén hǎu)	Wǒ dzwótyan wǎnshang shwèide hén hǎu.
(bùhǎu)	Wǒ dzwótyan wǎnshang shwèide bùhǎu.
(yíyè dōu méishwèi)	Wǒ dzwótyan wǎnshang yíyè dōu méishwèi.

Nǐ dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ?

(bīnggān)	Wǒ dài yìhér bīnggān.

(shwéigwǒ) Wǒ dái yìlǒur shwéigwǒ.

Nǐ syǎng sùng dyǎr shémma lǐ ne?
(shwéigwǒ) Wǒ syǎng sùng yìlǒur shwéigwǒ.
(bǐnggān) Wǒ syǎng sùng yìhér bǐnggān.

Nǐmen gěi shéi dàile dyǎr dūngsyi ne?
(Chén Jyā-jyùn) Wǒmen gěi Chén Jyā-jyùn dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.
(Jāng Měi-fāng) Wǒmen gěi Jāng Měi-fāng dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.
(Lǐn Hwá-mǐng) Wǒmen gěi Lǐn Hwá-mǐng dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.

Tā yìwánle hái yǒu byéde shì ma?
(méiyou) Tā yìwánle jyòu méi byéde shì le.
(chīfàn) Tā yìwánle jyòu chyù chīfàn.
(shwèi) Tā yìwánle jyòu chyù shwèi.

Nǐmen hái děi dàu byéjyā dzwò shémma?
(bàinyán) Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù bàinyán.
(hē chá) Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù hē chá.
(chī táng) Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù chī táng.
(sùnglǐ) Wǒmen hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù sùnglǐ.

Nǐmen shì dzǒu ne, háishr bùdzǒu?
(yàu dzǒu) Wǒmen yàu dzǒule
(háishr dzǒu) Wǒmen háishr dzǒu ba.
(hái bùdzǒu) Wǒmen hái bùdzǒu ne.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā gwònyán wárde hău buhău.	<u>Nǐ gwònyán wárde hău ma</u>? Wǒ gwònyán wárde hén hău. Wǒ gwònyán wárde jēn gāusyìng. Wǒ gwòyán wárde bùhén hău. Wǒ gwòyán wárde bùhău.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā dzwótyan wănshang shwèile méishwèi.	<u>Nǐ dzwótyan wănshang shwèile méishwèi</u>? Wǒ dzwótyan wănshang yíyè dōu méishwèi. Wǒ dzwótyan wănshang shwèide hén hău. Wǒ dzwótyan wănshang shwèide bùhău.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā děi chyù gěi shéi bàinyán.	<u>Nǐ děi chyù gěi shéi bàinyán ne</u>? Wǒ děi chyù gěi Wáng Lăushr̄ bàinyán. Wǒ děi chyù gěi Lǐ Syānsheng bàinyán. Wǒ děi chyù gěi Jāng Lăushr̄ bàinyán. Wǒ děi chyù gěi Chén Syānsheng bàinyán.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā syăng sùng dyăr shémma lǐ.	<u>Nǐ syăng sùng dyăr shémma lǐ ne</u>? Wǒ syăng sùng yìhér bīnggān. Wǒ syăng sùng yìlǒur shwéigwǒ. Wǒ syăng sùng yìhér bīnggān, yìlǒur shwéigwǒ.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā shr̀ dài yìhér bīnggān, háishr yìlǒur shwéigwǒ.	<u>Nǐ shr̀ dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr yìlǒur shwéigwǒ</u>? Wǒ dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ. Wǒ dài yìhér bīnggān.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā gěi shéi dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.	<u>Nǐ gěi shéi dàile dyǎr dūngsyi?</u> Wǒ gěi Chén Jyā-jyùn dàile dyǎr dūngsyi. Wǒ gěi Jāng Měi-fāng dàile dyǎr dūngsyi. Wǒ gěi Lǐn Hwá-míng dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā yǐwánle hái yǒu byéde shr méiyou.	<u>Nǐ yǐwánle hái yǒu byéde shr ma?</u> Wǒ yǐwánle jyòu méi byéde shr le. Wǒ yǐwánle jyòu chyù chrfàn. Wǒ yǐwánle jyòu dàu nèr chyù. Wǒ yǐwánle jyòu chyù hē bēi chá.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā hái děi dàu byéjyā dzwò shémma.	<u>Nǐ hái děi dàu byéjyā dzwò shémma?</u> Wǒ hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù bàinyán. Wǒ hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù chrfan. Wǒ hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù sùnglǐ.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā shr dzǒu, háishr bùdzǒu.	<u>Nǐ shr dzǒu ne, háishr bùdzǒu?</u> Wǒ yàu dzǒule. Wǒ háishr dzǒu ba. Wǒ hái bùdzǒu ne.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Gūngsyi gūngsyi.
Bàinyán bàinyán.
Gwònyán wárde hǎu a.
Várde tài hǎule. Nǐ ne?
Wǒ várde tài lèile. Yíyè dōu méishwèi.
Nǐ chwānde jēn pyàulyang a.
Nǐ syīhwan wǒde yīshang ma?
Wó syīhwanjíle. Nǐ syàndzài dàu nǎr chyù ne?

Wǒ syǎng dàu Měi-fāng nèr chyù gěi tāmen bàinyán chyu.
Wǒ kéyi gēn nǐ yíkwàr chyù ma?
Kéyi. Kěshr nǐ děi dài dyǎr dūngsyi chyù a.
Hǎu a. Nǐ syǎng sùng shémma lǐ ne?
Wǒ dàile yìhér bīnggān le.
Nà wǒ jyòu sùng yìlǒur shwéigwǒ ba.

Měi-fāng, gūngsyi gūngsyi.
Gūngsyi gūngsyi. Nǐmen gwònyán wárde hǎu ba.
Hén hǎu. Nǐ Bàba dzài jyā ma?
Tā dàu sywésyàu chyù tsānjyā twánbǎi chyùle.
Nà Bwómǔ ne? Wǒmen déi gěi tā bàinyán a.
Nǐmen byé kèchile. Tā yě dàu byéjyā chyù bàinyán chyùle.
Nà wǒmen jyòu dzǒu ba. Dzàijyàn.

NARRATION

Dzwótyan wǎnshang gwònyán. Wǒmen wárde tài hǎule. Yíyè dōu méishwèi. Jīntyan dzǎushang chǐle dzǎufàn, wǒ jyòu gēn Hwá-míng yíkwàr dàu Wáng Lǎushī jyā chyù bàinyán. Wáng Shǐmǔ hén syǐhwan wǒmen. Tā jyànle wǒmen jyòu hěn gāusyìng. Tā géi wǒmen hē chá, yé géi wǒmen chī hěn dwō táng. Wáng Lǎushī jīntyan hěn máng. Tā děi chyù tsānjyā twánbǎi. Wǒmen dzwòle yìhwěr jyòu dzǒule.

Gwònyán Mama dzwòle hěn dwō hǎuchǐde tsài, yé géi wǒmen mǎile hěn dwō pyàulyangde yǐshang. Bàba yé géi wǒmen mǎile hěn dwō dūngsyi, yǒu táng, yǒu bīnggān, yǒu shwéigwǒ. Tā gěile wǒ shǐkwai chyán, wǒ jyòu chyù mái dyǎr dūngsyi sùngle Wáng Lǎushī le.

RHYMES

Gūngsyi gūngsyi,
Bàinyán bàinyán,
Gwònyán wǎnshang wárde hǎu,

Jīntyan hái děi chyù bàinyán.
Lǎushr̄ Shr̄mǔ dōu dzài jyā,
Chr̄ kwài táng,
Hē bēi chá,
Dzwòle yihwěr women jyou dzǒu.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Nǐ gwònyán wárde hǎu a.
(Wárde jēn gāusyìng.)
Nǐ dzwótyan wǎnshang yǒu méiyou shwèi?
(Wǒ yíyè dōu méishwèi.)
Nǐ syǎng sùng shémma lǐ ne?
(Wó syǎng sùng yìhér bīnggān, yìlǒur shwéigwǒ.)
Nǐ dài yìhér bīnggān ne, háishr dài yìlóur shwéigwǒ?
(Wǒ dài yìhér bīnggān, nǐ dài yìlǒur shwéigwǒ ba.)
Nǐ gěi shéi dàile dyǎr dūngsyi ne?
(Wó gěi Wáng Lǎushr̄ dàile dyǎr dūngsyi.)
Wáng Lǎushr̄ děi chyù tsānjyā shémma?
(Tā děi chyù tsānjyā twánbài.)
Nǐ hái děi dàu nǎr chyù bàinyán ne?
(Wǒ hái děi dàu byéjyā chyù bàinyán.)
Tā yìwánle hái yǒu byéde shr̀ ma?
(Tā yìwánle jyòu méi byéde shr̀ le.)
Shéi gèi nǐ hē chá chr̄ táng?
(Wáng Shr̄mǔ géi wǒ hē bēi chá chr̄ kwài táng.)
Nǐ shr̀ dzǒu ne, háishr bùdzǒu?
(Wǒ háishr dzǒu ba.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passages in English)

Wǒmen gwònyán wárde gāusyìng. Wǒmen wárde hěn lèi. Yíyè dōu méishwèi. Jīntyan dzǎushang wǒ gēn Jyā-jyùn yíkwàr dàu Wáng Lǎushī jyā chyù bàinyán. Wǒmen déi gěi tā sùng dyár lǐ. Wǒ dàile yìhér bīnggān, Jyā-jyùn dàile yìlǒur swéigwǒ.

Wáng Lǎushī Wáng Shīmǔ jyànle wǒmen dōu hěn gāusyìng. Kěshr Wáng Lǎushī děi chyù tsānjyā twánbài. Tā jyàu wǒmen gēn Shīmǔ tántan. Wáng Shīmǔ géi wǒmen hē chá, yé géi wǒmen chī táng. Wǒmen chīle kwài táng, hēle bēi chā jyòu dzǒule.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese characters)

UNIT IX

A FESTIVE DAY AT SCHOOL

Yáng Jŕ-pîng and Chén Jyā-jyùn go to see a school parade and talk about the band and the majorette. She turns out to be a schoolmate of Chén's sister. Chén agrees to introduce her to Yáng at the evening program.

They meet in the evening, talk about the parade, and Chén with his proverbial good appetite cajoles Yáng to buy everybody something to eat.

DIALOGUE

Jyā-jyùn: Jīr-píng, kwài lái, kwài dyǎr lái kàn yǒusyìng a!

Jīr-píng: Nǐ máng shénma? Byé nèmma jāujǐ, hǎu buhǎu?

Jyā-jyùn: Ywèdwèi yǐjing láile. Nǐ hái bukwài yidyǎr!

Jīr-píng: He! Gú dāde jēn hǎu a. Lǎba chwēide yě hén hǎutǐng.

Jyā-jyùn: Nǐ kànkan, tāmen chwānde jīrfú tsái pyàulyang ne.

Jīr-píng: Hē, jīthwēide nèiwèi syáujye dwó shénchì a!

Jyā-jyùn: Nǐ jīrdau tā shìr shéi ma? Tā shìr wo mèimeide péngyou, Jāu Mā-lì.

Jīr-píng: Nǐ rènshr tā ya! Néng bunéng géi wǒ jyèshau?

Jyā-jyùn: Dāngrán kéyi. Búgwò jèige děi mànmār lái.

Jīr-píng: Wǒ chíng nǐ chyu tsānjyā wānhwèi. Nǐ géi wǒ jyèshau, hǎu buhau?

Jyā-jyùn: Hǎu a. Nà nǐ hái děi chíng wǒ chī ge bīngbàng.

Jyā-jyùn: Jèiwèi shìr Yáng Jīr-píng, jèiwèi shìr Jāu Mā-lì.

Jīr-píng: Jāu Mā-lì, nǐ jīntyan byáuyānde jēn hǎu a.

Mā-lì: Nǎrde hwà. Nǐ gāngtsái chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.

Jyā-jyùn: Nǐmen dōu byé kèchi le! Wǒmen chyu chī dyǎr dūngsyi ba.

Jīr-píng: Gāngtsái jyùtsān nǐ chīde hái búgòu ma?

Jyā-jyùn: Nǐ bujīrdau wǒ néng chī ma? Syàndzài wǒ yòu èle.

Jīr-píng: Jāu Mā-lì, nǐ syǎng chī dyǎr dūngsyi ma?

Mā-lì: Swéibyàn. Nǐmen shwō ba.

Jyā-jyùn: Jīr-píng a, nǐ yàu chíng wǒmen chī shénma a?

Jŕ-píng, kwài lái,...
Nǐ máng shémma?
Ywèdwèi yǐjing láile.

He... Gú dàde jēn hǎu a.
Nǐ kànkan, tāmen chwānde jŕfú...

He, jŕhwēide nèiwèi syáujye...
Nǐ jŕdau tā shŕ shéi ma?
Nǐ rènshr tā ya. Néng bunéng...

Dāngrán kéyi. Búgwò...
Wǒ chíng nǐ chyu tsānjyā wānhwèi...
Hǎu a. Nà nǐ hái děi chíng wǒ chī ge bīngbàng.

Jèiwèi shr̀...,
jèiwèi shr̀...

Jàu Mă-lì, nǐ jīntyan...
Nărde hwà. Nǐ
gāngtsái chànggēr...

Nǐmen dōu byé kèchi le. ...
Gāngtsái jyùtsān nǐ
chīde...?
Nǐ bujīdau wǒ néng
chǐ ma? ...

Jàu Mă-lì, nǐ syăng...
Swéibyàn. Nǐmen shwō ba.
Jŕ-píng a, nǐ yàu chíng
wǒmen chī shémma a?

Jyā-jyùn: Jŕ-pǐng, hurry up, come quickly and watch the parade!

Jŕ-pǐng: What's the hurry? Don't get so excited, will you?

Jyā-jyùn: The band is already here. You are still taking your time.

Jŕ-pǐng: Hey! The drums are really swell. The trumpets are also doing very well.

Jyā-jyùn: Look at them. The uniforms they are wearing are nice looking.

Jŕ-pǐng: Hey, the majorette (the girl who is leading) is truly impressive.

Jyā-jyùn: Do you know who she is? She is my sister's friend, Jàu Mǎ-lì.

Jŕ-pǐng: You know her! Can you introduce me to her?

Jyā-jyùn: Of course. But this must go slowly.

Jŕ-pǐng: I will invite you to the party. You introduce us, all right?

Jyā-jyùn: Fine. But you must also treat me to a popsicle.

Jyā-jyùn: This is Yáng Jŕ-pǐng; this is Jàu Mǎ-lì.

Jŕ-pǐng: Jàu Mǎ-lì, you did very well today.

Mǎ-lì: Thank you. It's your singing today that was really good.

Jyā-jyùn: Now, quit paying each other compliments! Let's get something to eat.

Jŕ-pǐng: Didn't you eat enough at the dinner party a while ago?

Jyā-jyùn: Don't you know I am a big eater? Now I'm hungry again.

Jŕ-pǐng: Jàu Mǎ-lì, would you care for something to eat?

Mǎ-lì: As you wish. Why don't you two decide.

Jyā-jyùn: Jŕ-pǐng, what kind of a treat do you want to give us?

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

Yáng	Chinese surname
Jŕ-píng	boy's name
yóusyíng	parade
ywèdwèi	musical band
gŭ	drum
lăba	trumpet
jŕfú	uniform
syáujye	miss; young lady
péngyou	friend
Jàu	Chinese surname
Mă-lì	girl's name
wănhwèi	evening party
bīngbàng	popsicle
jyùtsān	group dinner or any group meal

2. Verb

dă	hit (cf. Units VI, VII)
chwēi	play (a musical instrument by blowing)
jŕhwēi	conduct
jyèshau	introduce
byáuyăn	perform
chàng(gēr)	sing (VO)
chĭng	treat (cf. Unit V)
rènshr	know; recognize; be acquainted with

3. Adjective

jāujĭ	worried; excited
hăutīng	good (to listen to)
shénchi	impressive; the "air" surrounding a person
gòu	enough

4. Adverb

tsái	only (cf. Unit VIII) In one exchange in this dialogue it suggests, "Only your singing today was good," or "It's your singing today which was good - not my performance." In this case, the stress is on "your singing" not on tsái. In another exchange, tsái adds an emphasis. Hence, Tāmen chwānde jŕfú tsái pyàulyang ne suggests "Their uniforms are really good looking." The stress is on tsái.
dwó (me)	very much; how...it is! (cf. Unit V)
dāngrán	of course
búgwò	but; however
mànmār	slowly
gāngtsái	just a moment ago
yòu	again

5. Measure

-wèi	person (polite form)

6. Idiomatic Expressions

máng shémma?	what's the hurry?
ya!	added at the end of a sentence to express something unexpected, also represented by a according to many Chinese speakers.
swéibyàn	as one wishes
mànmār lái	go slowly; do it slowly; take your time

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Modifying clauses S Vde-N

Modifying phrases precede the nouns which they modify, and almost always take the suffix -de. There is no Chinese equivalent for the relative pronouns "who," "when," "which," and "that." For example, in English one says: "The dress which Mary wore," whereas in Chinese it is "the Mary-wore-dress." (Compare English expressions, such as "self-made man," home-cooked meals," etc.)

Tāmen chwānde jŕfú...

2. Relation of clauses to other qualifying elements Vde Sp-M N

When a noun is already specified, or both specified and numbered, the modifying clause usually stands in front of these specifying elements. Compare the following expressions:

nèiwei syáujye (that young lady)

jŕhwēide nèiwei syáujye (the young lady who is conducting)

3. Describing manner with an object

In describing the manner in which the action of a verb is carried out, a modifying phrase (with -de) which contains the verb is used. This stands before the adjective which denotes the intensity of that manner (cf. Unit VIII):

Wǒmen wárde jēn hǎu S Vde Adj

When the object is expressed, it may be transposed to the front of the sentence as a topic, functioning as the subject; or the verb and its object may first be given, then the verb is repeated with -de affixed, followed by the adjective:

Gú dǎde jēn hǎu a. (topic as S) Vde Adj

Nǐ chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne. S V O, Vde Adj

4. Expressing manner in command A V (or A yidyăr V)

Indicating the manner in which an action is expected to be performed, the unqualified adverb of manner stands immediately before the verb:

Kwài lái!

Kwài lái chīfàn!

Yidyăr or just dyăr (a little) is often added to the adverb to express a greater or less degree. These qualified expressions of manner may stand just before or just after the verb:

Kwài dyăr lái.

Lái kwài dyăr.

NOTES

1. Cultural Notes

a. On public holidays the schools in China usually observe the occasion with appropriate programs which may include parades, dinner parties, sports events, or even academic contests, such as essay contests for prizes. Evening programs are often organized to mark a certain special day. In these programs the students stage plays and musical or dance performances. Activities of this kind are encouraged by the school authorities.

b. Several occasions are observed with particular attention in Chinese schools. These are the New Year's Day, the National Day, which falls on the 10th of October to commemorate the founding of the Republic of China in 1912, and Youth Day on March 29. The last has been declared a school holiday because on this day in 1910, 72 young revolutionaries were executed after their heroic but abortive attempt to overthrow the Manchu Imperial authority in Canton, Kwangtung Province, China.

c. The fireworks used on festive occasions in China are not restricted to firecrackers. Many elaborate pyrotechnical devices developed by the Chinese since ancient times are still in use today. When set off, some of these devices present scenes from folk tales complete with figures of men and animals made of paper, others show colorful blossoms of dazzling colors and patterns.

d. Social dance parties as a means to observe festivities are not common in Chinese schools. In fact, most schools are opposed to letting their students take part in a social dance because it has not been popularly accepted as a proper social activity befitting the youths.

FLUENCY DRILL

Dā.
Dāde hǎu.
Dāde jēn hǎu.
Gú dāde jēn hǎu.
Gú dāde jēn hǎu a.
Tāmende gú dāde jēn hǎu a.

Chwēi.
Chwēide hǎutǐng.
Chwēide hén hǎutǐng.
Lǎba chwēide hén hǎutǐng.
Lǎba chwēide yé hén hǎutǐng.
Tāmende lǎba chwēide yé hén hǎutǐng.

Jrhwēi.
Jrhwēide syáujye.
Jrhwēide nèiwei syáujye.
Jrhwēide nèiwei syáujye bútswò.

Jrhwēide nèiwei syáujye dwó shénchi.
Jrhwēide nèiwei syáujye dwó shénchi a.

Jyèshau.
Jyèshau wo.
Géi wǒ jyèshau.
Nǐ géi wǒ jyèshau.
Chǐng nǐ géi wǒ jyèshau.
Jīntyan chǐng nǐ géi wǒ jyèshau.

Byáuyān.
Byáuyānde hāu.
Byáuyānde jēn hāu.
Byáuyānde jēn hāu a.
Jīntyan byáuyānde jēn hāu a.
Nǐ jīntyan byáuyānde jēn hāu a.

Chàng.
Chàngde hāu.
Changgēr chàngde hāu.
Changgēr chàngde jēn hāu.
Nǐ changgēr chàngde jēn hāu.
Nǐ gángtsái changgēr chàngde jēn hāu.

Chǐng.
Chǐng chī.
Chǐng chī shémma?
Chǐng wǒmen chī shémma?
Nǐ chǐng wǒmen chī shémma?
Nǐ yàu chǐng wǒmen chī shémma?

Rènshr.
Rènshr ta.
Wǒ rènshr ta.
Wǒ rènshr ta a.
Wǒ yě rènshr ta a.
Wǒmen dàjyā dōu rènshr ta a.

Jŕfú.
Chwān jŕfú.
Chwānde jŕfú pyàulyang.
Tāmen chwānde jŕfú pyàulyang.
Tāmen chwānde jŕfú jēn pyàulyang.
Tāmen chwānde jŕfú tsái pyàulyang ne.

Mànmār
Mànmār lái.
Děi mànmār lái.
Jèige děi mànmār lái.
Búgwo jèige děi mànmār lái.
Búgwo jèige děi mànmār lái a.

Jāujĭ.
Byé jāujĭ.
Byé nèmma jāujĭ.
Nĭ byé nèmma jāujĭ.
Byé nèmma jāujĭ hău buhau.
Nĭ byé nèmma jāujĭ hău buhau.

Wānhwèi.
Tsānjyā wānhwèi.
Chyù tsānjyā wānhwèi.
Nĭ chyu tsānjyā wānhwèi.

Chǐng ni chyu tsānjyā wānhwèi.
Wǒ chǐng ni chyu tsānjyā wānhwèi.

Búgòu.
Hái búgòu.
Chīde hái búgòu.
Wǒ chīde hái búgòu.
Jyùtsān wǒ chīde hái búgòu.
Gángtsái jyùtsān wǒ chīde hái búgòu.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushī — Sywésheng

S Vde N (plus predicate)

Tāmen chwānde jŕfú hěn pyàulyang. (Student repeats
Wǒmen chwēide lǎba hén hǎukàn. after the model)
Nǐ chàngde gēr hén hǎutǐng.
Nèiwei syáujye chàngde gēr jēn hǎutǐng.
Tā dǎde nèige gū jēn bútswò.

Vde Sp-M N

Jŕhwēide nèiwei syáujye.
Chīfànde nèiwei syáujye.
Chwēilǎbade jèiwei syáujye.
Dágūde nǐge sywésheng.
Chwānjŕfúde nèige rén.

S Vde Adj

Wǒmen wárde jēn hǎu.
Tā chàngde hén hǎutǐng.
Tāmen chwēide yé hén hǎutǐng.
Tā láide tài dzǎule.
Nǐ chīde tài dwōle.
Nǐmen yùbeide tài wānle.

S VO Vde Adj

Tā dágū dāde (jēn) hāu (a).
Wǒ chànggēr chàngde (jēn) hāu.
Tā chànggēr chàngde (yě) bútswò.
Nèiwei syáujye dāmáuyǐ dāde (tsai) hāu ne.
Wǒ gēge chwēilāba chwēide (hén) hāu.

A V (or A Yidyār V)

Kwài lái.
Kwài chyù.
Kwài yìdyār lái.
Kwài yìdyār chyù.
Kwài chī!

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Kwài dyār lái kàn yóusyíng a.	Kwài dyār lái kàn yóusyíng a.
chyù	Kwài dyār chyù kàn yóusyíng a.
Byé nèmma jāujǐ, hāu buhau?	Byé nèmma jāujǐ, hāu buhau?
máng	Byé nèmma máng, hāu buhau?
kwài	Byé nèmma kwài, hāu buhau?
dzāu	Byé nèmma dzāu, hāu buhau?
wān	Byé nèmma wān, hāu buhau?
Nǐ hái búkwài yìdyār!	Nǐ hái búkwài yìdyar!
bùdzāu	Nǐ hái bùdzāu yìdyār!
bùwān	Nǐ hái bùwān yìdyār!
Ywèdwèi yījing láile.	Ywèdwèi yījing láile.
Sywésheng	Sywésheng yījing láile.
Lāushī	Lāushī yījing láile.
Tāmen	Tāmen yījing láile.

Jāng Měi-fāng	Jāng Měi-fāng yǐjing láile.
Dìdi	Dìdi yǐjing láile.
Jŕhwēide nèiwei syáujye dwó shénchi a!	Jŕhwēide nèiwei syáujye dwó shénchi a!
lǎushr̄	Jŕhwēide nèiwei lǎushr̄ dwó shénchi a!
Sywésheng	Jŕhwēide nèiwei sywésheng dwó shénchi a!.
Měigwo ren	Jŕhwēide nèiwei Měigwo ren dwó shénchi a!
Jūnggwo ren	Jŕhwēide nèiwei jūnggwo ren dwó shénchi a!
Nǐ Jŕdau tā shr shéi ma?	Nǐ jŕdau tā shr shéi ma?
wǒ	Nǐ jŕdau wǒ shr shéi ma?
tāmen	Nǐ jŕdau tāmen shr shéi ma?
wǒmen	Nǐ jŕdau wǒmen shr shéi ma?
Tā shr wǒ mèimeide péngyou.	Tā shr wǒ mèimeide péngyou.
lǎushr̄	Tā shr wǒ mèimeide lǎushr̄.
túngsywé	Tā shr wo mèimeide túngsywé.
Nǐ rènshr tā ma?	Nǐ rènshr tā ma?
jŕdau	Nǐ jŕdau tā ma?
chīng	Nǐ chīng tā ma?
ywē	Nǐ ywē tā ma?
jǎu	Nǐ jǎu tā ma?
jyàu	Nǐ jyàu tā ma?
Néng bùneng géi wo jyèshau?	Néng bùneng géi wǒ jyèshau?
kàn	Néng bùneng géi wǒ kàn?

tīng	Néng bùneng géi wǒ tīng?
chī	Néng bùneng géi wǒ chī?
măi	Néng bùneng géi wó măi?
dzwò	Néng bùneng géi wǒ dzwò?
Búgwo jèige děi mànmār lái.	Búgwo jèige děi mànmār lái.
kàn	Búgwo jèige děi mànmār kàn.
hē	Búgwo jèige děi mànmār hē.
jău	Búgwo jèige děi mànmār jău.
dzwò	Búgwo jèige děi mànmār dzwò.
tīng	Búgwo jèige děi mànmār tīng.
Wǒ chíng ni chyù tsānjyā wănhwèi.	Wǒ chíng ni chyù tsānjyā wănhwèi.
tā	Wó chíng tā chyù tsānjyā wănhwèi.
nímen	Wó chíng nímen chyù tsānjyā wănhwèi.
tāmen	Wó chíng tāmen chyù tsānjyā wănhwèi.
Měi-fāng	Wó chíng Měi-fāng chyù tsānjyā wănhwèi.
Wáng Lăushī	Wó chíng Wáng Lăushī chyù tsānjyā wănhwèi.
Nà nǐ hái děi chíng wo chī ge bīngbàng.	Nà nǐ hái děi chíng wo chī ge bīngbàng.
tā	Nà nǐ hái déi chíng tā chī ge bīngbàng.
wŏmen	Nà nǐ hái děi chíng wŏmen chī ge bīngbàng.
tāmen	Nà nǐ hái déi chíng tāmen chī ge bīngbàng.
Měi-fāng	Nà nǐ hái déi chíng Měi-fāng chī ge bīngbàng.

Hwá-mǐng Nà nǐ hái déi chǐng Hwá-mǐng chī ge bīngbàng.

Nǐ jīntyan byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.
  dzwótyan Nǐ jīntyan byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.
  chyántyan Nǐ dzwótyan byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.
  dzǎushang Nǐ chyántyan byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.
  gángtsái Nǐ dzǎushang byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.
  Nǐ gāngtsái byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.

Nǐ gángtsái chànggēr chàngde tsái hǎu ne.
  chyántyan Nǐ gángtsái chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.
  dzwótyan Nǐ chyántyan chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.
  jīntyan Nǐ dzwótyan chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.
  dzǎushang Nǐ jīntyan chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.
  Nǐ dzǎushang chàngger chàngde tsai hǎu ne.

Wǒmen chyù chī dyǎr dūngsyi ba.
  chǎumyàn Wǒmen chyù chī dyǎr dūngsyi ba.
  chǎufàn Wǒmen chyù chī dyár chǎumyàn ba.
  bǐnggān Wǒmen chyù chī dyár chǎufàn ba.
  shwéigwo Wǒmen chyù chī dyár bǐnggān ba.
  Wǒmen chyù chī dyǎr shwéigwo ba.

Nǐ bùjīrdau wǒ néng chī ma?
  Nǐ bùjīrdau wǒ néng chī ma?
  hē Nǐ bùjīrdau wǒ néng hē ma?
  chàng Nǐ bùjīrdau wǒ néng chàng ma?
  dzwò Nǐ bùjīrdau wǒ néng dzwò ma?

dá gŭ	Nǐ bùjīrdau wŏ néng dá gŭ ma?
chwēi lăba	Nǐ bùjīrdau wŏ néng chwēi lăba ma?

Syàndzai wŏ yòu èle.	Syàndzai wŏ yòu èle.
tā	Syàndzai tā yòu èle.
dìdi	Syàndzai dìdi yòu èle.
mèimei	Syàndzai mèimei yòu èle.
jyĕjye	Syàndzai jyĕjye yòu èle.
gēge	Syàndzai gēge yòu èle.

Nǐ syăng chī dyăr	
dūngsyi ma?	Nǐ syăng chī dyăr dūngsyi ma?
chīngtsài	Nǐ syăng chī dyăr chīngtsài ma?
ròu	Nǐ syăng chī dyăr ròu ma?
myànbāu	Nǐ syăng chī dyăr myànbāu ma?
shwéigwo	Nǐ syăng chī dyăr shwéigwo ma?
yú	Nǐ syăng chī dyăr yú ma?

Nǐmen shwō ba.	Nǐmen shwō ba.
kàn	Nǐmen kàn ba.
tīng	Nǐmen tīng ba.
chàng	Nǐmen chàng ba.
lái	Nǐmen lái ba.
dzŏu	Nǐmen dzŏu ba.

Nǐ yàu chíng wŏmen	
chī shémma a?	Nǐ yàu chíng wŏmen chī shémma a?
kàn	Nǐ yàu chíng wŏmen kàn shémma a?
chàng	Nǐ yàu chíng wŏmen chàng shémma a?
dzwò	Nǐ yàu chíng wŏmen dzwò shémma a?
tīng	Nǐ yàu chíng wŏmen tīng shémma a?
măi	Nǐ yàu chíng wŏmen măi shémma a?

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Kwài dyǎr lái kàn	
yóusyíng a.	Kwài dyǎr lái kàn yóusyíng a.
chyù	Kwài dyǎr chyù kàn yóusyíng a.
wánhwèi	Kwài dyǎr chyù kàn wánhwèi a.
Byé nèmma jāujì,	
hǎu bùhau?	Byé nèmma jāujì, hǎu bùhau?
máng	Byé nèmma máng, hǎu bùhau?
ma?	Byé nèmma máng, hǎu ma?
Ywèdwèi yǐjing láile.	Ywèdwèi yǐjing láile.
dzǒule	Ywèdwèi yǐjing dzǒule.
Lǎushr̄	Lǎushr̄ yǐjing dzǒule.
kànle	Lǎushr̄ yǐjing kànle.
Tāmen	Tāmen yǐjing kànle.
Jīhwēide nèiwèi syáujye	
dwō shénchi a.	Jīhwēide nèiwèi syáujye dwō shénchi a.
Jūnggwo rén	Jīhwēide nèiwèi Junggwo rén dwō shénchi a.
Chànggērde	Chànggērde nèiwèi Jūnggwo rén dwō shénchi a.
sywésheng	Chànggērde nèiwèi sywésheng dwō shénchi a.
Dágūde	Dágūde nèiwèi sywésheng dwō shénchi a.
Nǐ rènshr tā ma?	Nǐ rènshr tā ma?
syǐhwan	Nǐ syǐhwan tā ma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen syǐhwan tā ma?
jǎu	Nǐmen jǎu ta ma?
Lǎushr̄	Lǎushr̄ jǎu ta ma?

Néng bùneng gěi wǒ jyèshau?	Néng bunèng géi wǒ jyèshau?
Měi-fāng	Néng bunèng géi Měi-fāng jyèshau?
kàn	Néng bunèng géi Měi-fāng kàn?
tāmen	Néng bunèng gěi tāmen kàn?
tīng	Néng bunèng gěi tāmen tīng?
Nǐ jīrdau tā shr shéi ma?	Nǐ jīrdau tā shr shéi ma?
wǒ	Nǐ jīrdau wǒ shr shéi ma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen jīrdau wǒ shr shéi ma?
Tā shì wǒ mèimeide péngyou.	Tā shì wǒ mèimeide péngyou.
dìdide	Tā shì wǒ dìdide péngyou.
Tāmen	Tāmen shì wǒ dìdide péngyou.
gēgede	Tāmen shì wǒ gēgede péngyou.
Jī-pīng	Jī-pīng shì wǒ gēgede péngyou.
Búgwo jèige děi mànmār lái.	Búgwo jèige děi mànmār lái.
nèige	Búgwo nèige děi mànmār lái.
dzwò.	Búgwo nèige děi mànmār dzwò.
Wǒ chíng nǐ chyù tsānjyā wānhwèi.	Wǒ chíng nǐ chyù tsānjyā wānhwèi.
nǐmen	Wó chíng nìmen chyù tsānjyā wānhwèi.
Tā	Tā chíng nǐmen chyù tsānjyā wānhwèi.
Nà nǐ hái déi chíng wǒ chī ge bīngbàng.	Nà nǐ hái dei chíng wo chī ge bīngbàng.
tā	Nà nǐ hái déi chíng tā chī ge bīngbàng.

Wǒmen	Nǎ wǒmen hái déi chíng tā chī ge bīngbàng.
Nǐ jīntyan byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.	Nǐ jīntyan byáuyǎnde jēn hǎu a.
chàngde	Nǐ jīntyan chàngde jēn hǎu a.
Tā	Tā jīngtyan chàngde jēn hǎu a.
Nǐ gángtsái chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.	Nǐ gángtsái chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.
dzwótyan	Nǐ dzwótyan chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen dzwótyan chànggēr chàngde tsai hǎu ne.
Wǒmen chyù chī dyār dūngsyi ba.	Wǒmen chyù chī dyār dūngsyi ba.
shwéigwo	Wǒmen chyù chī dyār shwéigwo ba.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen chyù chī dyār shwéigwo ba.
Nǐ bujīdàu wǒ néng chī ma?	Nǐ bujīdàu wǒ néng chī ma?
tā	Nǐ bujīdàu tā néng chī ma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen bujīdàu tā néng chī ma?
chàng	Nǐmen bujīdàu tā néng chàng ma?
Lǎushī	Lǎushī bujīdàu tā néng chàng ma?
Syàndzai wǒ yòu èle.	Syàndzai wǒ yòu èle.
bǎule	Syàndzai wǒ yòu bǎule.
gēge	Syàndzai gēge yòu bǎule.

Nǐ syāng chr̄ dyār dūngsyi	
ma?	Nǐ syāng chr̄ dyār dūngsyi ma?
bīnggān	Nǐ syāng chr̄ dyár bīnggān ma?
Tā	Tā syāng chr̄ dyár bīnggān ma?
chāumyàn	Tā syāng chr̄ dyár chāumyàn ma?
Nīmen	Nīmen syāng chr̄ dyár chāumyàn ma?
Nīmen shwō ba.	Nīmen shwō ba.
kàn	Nīmen kàn ba.
Wōmen	Wōmen kàn ba.
tīng	Wōmen tīng ba.
Nī	Nī tīng ba.
Nǐ yàu chǐng wōmen	
chr̄ shémma a?	Nǐ yàu chǐng women chr̄ shémma a?
hē	Nī yàu chǐng wōmen hē shémma a?
Tā	Tā yàu chǐng wōmen hē shémma a?
kàn	Tā yàu chǐng wōmen kàn shémma a?
Lāushr̄	Lāushr̄ yàu chǐng wōmen kàn shémma a?

RESPONSE DRILL

Ywèdwèi yījing láile ma?	
(láile)	Ywèdwèi yījing láile.
Nī jr̄dau tā shr̀ shéi ma?	
(Jr̄dau)	Wō jr̄dau tā shr̀ shéi.
(bujr̄dàu)	Wō bujr̄dàu tā shr̀ shéi.
Tā shr̀ nī mèimeide péngyou ma?	
(shr̀)	Tā shr̀ wō mèimeide péngyou.
(búshr)	Tā búshr wō mèimeide péngyou.

Chinese-Mandarin I

Néng buméng géi wo jyèshau?

(Néng)	Néng géi nǐ jyèshau.
(Bùnéng)	Bùnéng géi nǐ jyèshau.

Nǐ rènshr ta ma?

(rènshr)	Wǒ rènshr ta.
(búrènshr)	Wǒ búrènshr ta.

Tā gángtsái chànggēr chàngde hāu buhāu?

(hāujǐle)	Tā gángtsái chànggēr chàngde hāujǐle.
(bùhāu)	Tā gángtsái chànggēr chàngde bùhāu.
(jěn hāu)	Tā gángtsái chànggēr chàngde jěn hāu.

Nǐ bùjǐdau wo néng chǐ ma?

(jǐdau)	Wǒ jǐdau nǐ néng chǐ.
(bujǐdàu)	Wǒ bujǐdàu nǐ néng chǐ.

Syàndzai nǐ yòu èle ma?

(èle)	Syàndzai wǒ yòu èle.
(hái méi)	Syàndzai wǒ hái méiè.

Nǐ syāng chǐ dyār dūngsyi ma?

(syāng)	Wǒ syāng chǐ dyār dūngsyi.
(bùsyāng)	Wǒ bùsyāng chǐ shémma dūngsyi.

Nǐ yàu chǐng wǒmen chǐ shémma a?

(bǐngbàng)	Wǒ yàu chǐng nǐmen chǐ bǐngbàng.
(yú)	Wǒ yàu chǐng nǐmen chǐ yú.
(nyóupái)	Wǒ yàu chǐng nǐmen chǐ nyóupái.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

NÍ wèn ta, yuèdwèi yijing láile ma.	Yuèdwèi yijing láile ma? Yuèdwèi yijing láile. Yuèdwèi hái méilái ne. Yuèdwèi jyòu yàu láile.
NÍ wèn ta, tā jīrdau tā shr shéi ma.	NÍ jīrdau tā shì shéi ma? Wǒ jīrdau, tā shì Wáng Lǎushī. Wǒ jīrdau, tā shì Wǒde Yīngwen laushr. Wǒ jīrdau, tā shì wǒde tóngsywé. Wǒ bujīrdàu. Wǒ bujīrdàu tā shì shéi.
NÍ wèn ta, tā shì nǐ mèimeide péngyou ma.	NÍ shì wǒ mèimeide péngyou ma? Wǒ shì nǐ mèimeide péngyou. Wǒ búshr nǐ mèimeide péngyou.
NÍ wèn ta, tā néng bunéng gěi wo jyèshau.	NÍ néng bunéng gěi ta jyèshau? Wǒ néng gěi ta jyèshau. Wǒ bùnéng gěi ta jyèshau.
NÍ wèn tā, tā gāngtsái chènggēr chàngde hāu buhau?	NÍ gāngtsái chènggēr chàngde hāu buhau? Wǒ gāngtsái chènggēr chàngde hén hāu. Wǒ gāngtsái chènggēr chàngde bútswò. Wǒ gāngtsái chènggēr chàngde hāujíle.
NÍ wèn ta, tā bujīrdàu wǒ néng chī ma?	NÍ bujīrdàu tā néng chī ma? Wǒ jīrdau tā néng chī. Wǒ bujīrdàu tā néng chī. Wǒ bujīrdàu tā néng bunéng chī.

Nī wèn ta, syàndzài tā yòu èle ma?	Syàndzài nī yòu èle ma? Syàndzài wō yòu èle. Syàndzài wō hái méiyou è.
Nī wèn ta, tā syāng chr̄ dyār dūngsyi ma.	Nī syāng chr̄ dyār dūngsyi ma? Wó syāng chr̄ dyār dūngsyi. Wō bùsyāng chr̄ dūngsyi. Wō yìdyār dūngsyi dōu bùsyāng chr̄. Wō shémma dūngsyi dōu bùsyāng chr̄.
Nī wèn ta, tā yàu chīng wōmen chr̄ shémma.	Nī yàu chīng wōmen chr̄ shémma? Wō yàu chīng nīmen chr̄ shwéigwo. Wō yàu chīng nīmen chr̄ jájī. Wō yàu chīng nīmen chr̄ táng. Wō yàu chīng nīmen chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn. Wō yàu chīng nīmen chr̄ chāumyàn.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Nī chr̄le ma?
Wō chr̄le. Nī ne?
Wó yē chr̄le.
Nī jīntyān dzāushang yōu méiyou kàn yóusyīng?
Kànle. Jēn bútswò a.
Gú dāde bútswò, lāba yē chwēide hāutīng jīle.
Jr̄hwēide nèiwei syáujye jēn shénchi a!
Shr̀ a. Tā shr̀ wō dìdide péngyou.
Òu! Tā shr̀ nī dìdide péngyou, nà tài hāule.
Dàjyā dōu syīhwan tā.
Tā hwèi búhwei Jūngwen?
Hwèi. Tāde Jūngwen hén hāu.
Míngtyan wō yàu nī dìdi chīng wō chr̄ táng.
Tā yīdìng chīng.

Nǐ jīntyān wǎnshang tsānjyā bùtsānjyā wǎnhwèi?
Wǒ tsānjyā. Wǒ hén syǎng tīngting chànggēr.
Nǐ yíding yàu lái, Měi-fāng chàngde hǎujíle.
Hǎu. Wǒmen wǎnshang jyàn.

NARRATION

Wǒmen sywésyàu yǒu yíge hén hǎude ywèdwèi, tāmende jīfú jēn pyàulyang. Tāmende gú dàde hǎu, lǎba chwēide yé hǎutīng. Jīntyañ dzǎushang wǒmen sywésyàude ywèdwèi yě tsānjyāle yóusyíng. Tāmen byáuyǎnde hǎujíle. Jīhwēide nèi wei syáujye hěn shénchi, yòu pyàulyang yòu hwèi shuō Jūnggwo hwà. Dàjyā dōu syǐhwan ta, dōu syǎng rènshr ta. Jī-píng gèng syǎng rènshr ta. Tā chīng Jyā-jyùn gěi ta jyèshau, búgwo Jyā-jyùn yàu Jī-píng chīng ta chī ge bīngbàng.

Tāmen lyǎngge rén yòu chyù tsānjyāle wǎnhwèi. Jī-píng byáuyǎnle chànggēr. Tā chàngde jēn hǎu. Jyā-jyùn hěn néng chī, tā tsānjyāle jyùtsān, kěshr tā hái méiyou chī bǎu, tā yòu èle. Tā yàu Jī-píng chīng ta chī dūngsyi. Jī-píng bùsyáng chīng ta, kěshr bùchīng yòu bùsyíng, tā jyòu ywē Jyā-jyùn gēn Mǎ-lì yíkwar chyùle.

RHYME

Kwài lái, kwài lái, kwài dyǎr lái.
Ywèdwèi yǐjing yàu láile!
Jīrdau, jīrdau, jīrdaule,
Byé nèmma jāujǐ, hǎu buhǎu.
Chwēi lāba, dǎ dà gū,
Chwānde jīrfú jēn pyàulyang.
Jīhwēide syáujye dwó shénchi.
Tā shì mèimeide péngyou. Jǎu Mǎ-lì.
Tsānjyā wǎnhwéi, tīng chànggēr,
Wǒmen dàjyā dōu gāusyìng.

Chinese-Mandarin I

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Ywèdwèi yǐjing láile ma?

(Ywèdwèi yǐjing láile.)

Nǐ jīdau tā shì shéi ma?

(Wǒ jīdau)

Tā shì nǐ mèimeide péngyou ma?

(Tā shì wǒ mèimeide péngyou.)

Néng bùneng gèi wǒ jyèshau?

(Néng. Wǒ néng gěi ni jyèshau.)

Nǐ rènshr tā ma?

(Wǒ rènshr ta.)

Tā gāngtsái chànggēr chàngde hǎu buhǎu?

(Tā gāngtsái chànggēr chàngde hǎujîle.)

Nǐ bujīdàu wǒ néng chī ma?

(Wǒ bujīdàu nǐ néng chī.)

Syàndzài nǐ yòu èle ma?

(Syàndzài wǒ yòu èle.)

Nǐ syǎng chī dyǎr dūngsyi ma?

(Wǒ syǎng chī dyǎr dūngsyi.)

Nǐ yàu chǐng wǒmen chī shémma?

(Wǒ yàu chǐng nǐmen chī nyóupái.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following passages in English.)

Jīntyande ywèdwèi hǎujîle. Tāmen chwānde jìrfú yě pyàulyangjîle. Tāmende gū dǎde bútswò, lǎba chwēide yé hàutīng. Jīhwēide nèiwèi syáujye shì wǒ mèimeide péngyou, tā jēn shénchi. Dàjyā dōu syǎng rènshr ta. Jì-pīng yé syǎng rènshr ta. Tā wèn wǒ néng bunéng gěi ta jyèshau. Wǒ shwō: Kéyi, búgwò nǐ děi chǐng wǒ chī ge bīngbàng.

Wǎnshang wǒmen lyǎngge rén yòu tsānjyāle wǎnhwèi. Jì-pīng chànggēr chàngde jēn bútswò. Mǎ-lì yě shwō tā chàngde

bútswò. Wǒ yàu Jr̄-pīng chīng wǒ chr̄ dūngsyi, tā wèn Mă-lì syăng busyăng chr̄ dūngsyi. Mă-lì shwō: Swéibyàn. Nǐmen shwō ba. Wǒmen kànle wănhwèi, jyòu yǐkwàr chyù chr̄le yìdyăr dūngsyi.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese Characters)

UNIT X

GOING TO A MOVIE

Yáng Jŕ-píng arrives at the movie theatre first to buy two tickets. The better seats have been sold out. He can only get two seats in the middle.

Yáng Jŕ-píng's friend, Jàu Mă-lì, arrives. They go to have some ice cream before entering the theatre. At the snack bar, they talk about the film, the movie actress, and why Yáng likes her films.

DIALOGUE

Jŕ-ping: Chīngwèn lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái yŏu ma?

Màipyàude: Dwèibuchĭ. Yĭjing méiyoule.

Jŕ-ping: Jūngjyàrde gēn chyánpáide ne?

Màipyàude: Hái yŏu, nĭn yàu jĭjāng?

Jŕ-ping: Géi wó lyăngjāng jūngjyàrde pyàu ba.

Mă-lì: Jŕ-ping, jēn dwèibuchĭ. Nĭ dzài jèr dĕngle hén jyŏule ba.

Jŕ-ping: Méi shémma, Wó yĕ gāng dàule yìhwĕr.

Mă-lì: Kwài kāiyănle, wŏmen jìnchyù ba.

Jŕ-ping: Hái dzău ne. Wŏmen syān chyù hē bēi jyúdzshwĕi.

Mă-lì: Chī bīngjilĭng ba. Wó chĭngkè!

Jŕ-ping: Na dzĕmma hău yìsz. Háishr wó chĭng.

Mă-lì: Yàushr jèige dyànyĭngr shŕ tsăisède jyou gèng hăule.

Jŕ-ping: Jŕyàu gùshr hău, tsăisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng.

Mă-lì: Wó jyĕjye shwōgwo gùshr hăude dyànyĭngr dōu shŕ bēijyù.

Jŕ-ping: Nà yĕ bùyidìng. Mĕigwode Syĭbupyāndz yé yŏu hén hăude.

Mă-lì: Jīntyande dyányĭngr shŕ àichĭngpyāndz búshr?

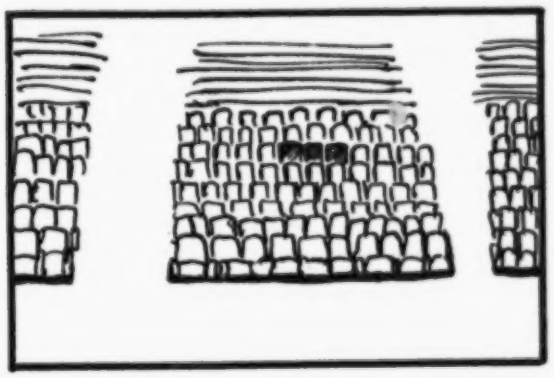
Jŕ-ping: Shŕ a. Wŏ dzwèi syĭhwan jèige nyújújyáu yănde àichĭngpyār.

Mă-lì: Nĭ dzĕmma jèmma syĭhwan kàn tā yănde ne?

Jŕ-ping: Nĭ bujĭrdàu ma? Yīnwei tā hĕn syàng nĭ a.

Mă-lì: Byé kāi wánsyàu le. Shĭhou dàule. Wŏmen chyu kàn ba!

Chīngwèn lóusyà
hòupáide pyàu
hái yǒu ma?
Dwèibuchī. Yījing...



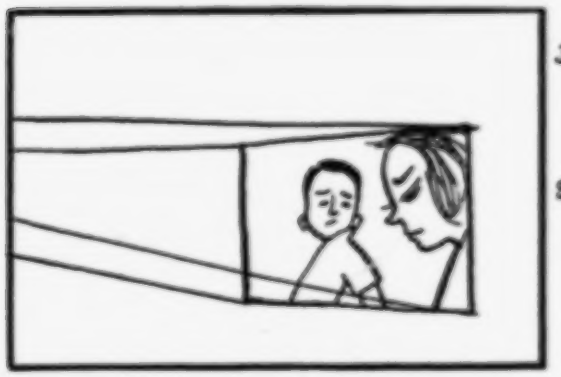
Jūngjyàrde gēn
chyánpáide ne?
Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu
jījāng?
Géi wó jūngjyàrde
pyàu ba.

Jī-pīng, jēn dwèibuchī.
nǐ dzài jèr děngle
hén jyǒule ba.
Méi shémma. wó yě...

Kwài kāiyǎnle, wǒmen
jìnchyù ba.
Hái dzǎu ne. Wǒmen
syān chyù...
Chī bǐngjilǐng ba.
Wó chīngkè!
Na dzěmma hǎu yìsz.
Háishr wó chīng.

Yàushr jèige dyàn-
yĭngr shì tsāisède
jyou gèng hăule.
Jīyàu gùshr hău...

Wó jyājye shwōguo
gùshr hăude dyăn-
yĭngr dōu shì...
Nà yĕ bùyidĭng.
Măigwode ... yĕ
yōu hén hăude.



JĬntyande dyànyĭngr
shì àichĭngpyānde
bŭshr?
Shì a. Wŏ dzwèi
syĭhwan jèige...

NĬ dzĕmma jèmma syĭhwan
kàn tā yănde ne?
NĬ bujīdàu ma? YĬnwei...
Byé kāi wánsyàu le.
Shíhou dàule. Wŏmen
chyu kàn ba!

Jŕ-ping: Please tell me, are there any seats left in the back rows downstairs?

Ticket Clerk: I'm sorry. All sold out.

Jŕ-ping: Anything in the middle and in front?

Ticket Clerk: Yes, we still have some. How many do you want?

Jŕ-ping: Give me two in the middle.

Mă-lì: Jŕ-ping, I'm awfully sorry. You have waited here for quite awhile, haven't you?

Jŕ-ping: Not at all. I only arrived a moment ago.

Mă-lì: The show is starting soon; let's go in.

Jŕ-ping: It's still early. Let's go first to get a glass of orange juice.

Mă-lì: Let's have ice cream. I will buy it.

Jŕ-ping: That would be embarrassing. It should be on me.

Mă-lì: It would have been even better if the movie were in color.

Jŕ-ping: So long as the story is good, it doesn't make any difference if it is black and white or in color.

Mă-lì: My sister said that all movies with good stories are tragedies.

Jŕ-ping: Not necessarily. There are also many good ones among the American western movies.

Mă-lì: Is today's film a love-story movie?

Jŕ-ping: Yes. I particularly like the love-story films starring this actress.

Mă-lì: Why do you like her pictures so much?

Jŕ-ping: Don't you know? That's because she looks like you.

Mă-lì: Now, don't make fun of me. It's time for us to go in.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

hòupái	rear row
pyàu	ticket
chyánpái	front row
jyúdzshuěi	orange juice
bīngjīlíng	ice cream
dyànyĭngr	movie
gùshr	story
Syībupyǎndz	Western movie
àichíngpyǎndz	love-story movie
nyújújyǔu	actress in major role
bēijyù	tragedy

2. Place Word

jūngjykr	middle

3. Verb

kāiyǎn	start to perform (movie and show)
chìngkè	treat (VO); never chìngkè nǐ (to treat you), but chìng nǐ.
yǎn	perform
syàng	resemble
jylnchyu	go in

The verb chyù and lái may be affixed to certain verbs of motion to form compound verbs, chyù indicating direction away from the speaker, and lái direction towards the speaker. These compounds do not take objects, since "here" or "there" is inherent in them. For example:

jìnchyu	go in
jìnlai	come in

4. Adjective

yiyàng	one kind; the same
tsáisède	color
hēibáide	black and white

5. Adverb

gàng(gàng)	just this minute
yàushr	if; in case (MA)
gèng	still more; even
jǐyàu	as long as (MA)
dzwèi	the most; -est
yìnwei	because; for (MA)

6. Particle

-gwo	experiential suffix to verbs -gwo is never added to the verb shì

7. Idiomatic Expression

nà dzǐmma hǎu yìsz	that would be embarrassing
dzǐmma jìmma	why so (to be followed by a verb or an adjective)
byé kǎi wánsyàu	don't joke with me; quit kidding

8. Auxiliary Verb

syǐhwan	like; enjoy (cf. Unit II)

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

syǐjyù	comedy
nánjújyǎu	actor in major role
màipyàude	ticket clerk (see "Use of de" in the structural patterns of this unit.)

2. Verb

chūlai	come out
chūchyu	go out

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Experiential verb suffix -guo Vguo

When it is desired to indicate that an action has or has not ever been experienced, the verb suffix -guo is used with both positive and negative forms of the verb:

Wǒ jyǎjye shuōguo...

Wǒ jyǎjye méishuōguo...

In this use it can be considered as an integral part of the verb, and the resulting compound behaves with respect to -le like any other verb:

Nǐ dǎu nèr chyùle ma? Chyùguole.

Nǐ chīfànle ma? Chīguole.

2. Degree of comparison with adverbs gèng and dwèi

When it is desired to state that a person or thing is better or larger, for instance, than one which is already regarded as good or large, the adverb gèng (even more) is used:

Yàushr jèige dyànyingr shì tsáisède jyòu gèng hǎule.

The adverb dwèi (the most, -est) before adjectives and auxiliary verbs (e.g., syǐhuan) indicates the superlative degree:

Wǒ dwèi syǐhuan jèige nyǘjújyàu yǎnde àichíngpyàndz.

3. Yàushr...jyòu... structure

Supposition, as in English, is expressed by conditioning clauses which (unlike English) always precede the main clauses which they condition. Whereas "if" is essential to the English clause, and "then" is seldom used in English to introduce the main clause, the reverse is true in Chinese:

Yàushr jèige dyànyingr shì tsáisède jyou gèng hǎule.

Jèige dyànyingr shì tsáisède jyou gèng hǎule.

If a subject appears in the main clause, it must precede jyou.

Yàushr nǐ bùlái, wǒ jyou búchyù. If you don't come, I will not go.

4. Use of de in modifying phrases compared

hěn hǎude dyànyingr	very good movie
tāde dyànyingr	his movie
wǒ dzwótyan kànde dyànyingr	the movie I saw yesterday
gùshr hǎude dyànyingr	the movie with a good story (plot)

When the modified noun is understood, it can always be omitted.

NOTES

Cultural Notes

Motion pictures are about as popular among Chinese students as among American students. Going to a movie in China is relatively a greater treat than in America because it is less available and because television is less developed there. Reserved seats, sold at different prices according to their locations, are a common system in Chinese movie theatres. The Chinese movie making industry has not developed enough to compete with Hollywood. Consequently, American films continue to enjoy good attendance in Formosa. Most American films shown in China are presented with Chinese titles whereby the non-English-speaking audience is helped to follow the story in the film. Many Chinese high school students are as good as their American counterparts in their knowledge of Hollywood stars.

FLUENCY DRILL

Kāiyān.
Kwài kāinyānle.
Kwài yàu kāiyānle.
Jyòu kwài yàu kāiyānle.
Dyànyǐngr jyòu kwài yàu kāiyānle.
Syàndzai dyànyǐngr jyòu kwài yàu kāiyānle.

Chīngkè.
Wǒ chingkè.
Nǐ chīngkè ma?
Wǒ syàndzài bùnéng chīngkè.
Nǐ syàndzài néng bunéng chīngkè.
Nǐ syàndzài néng bunéng chīngkè a.
Nǐ jīntyān wānshang néng bunéng chīngkè a.

Yān.
Yānde àichǐngpyāndz.
Nyújújyāu yānde àichǐngpyāndz.
Jèige nyújújyāu yānde àichǐngpyāndz.
Kàn jèige nyújújyāu yānde àichǐngpyāndz.
Wǒ syǐhwan jèige nyújújyāu yānde àichǐngpyāndz.
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan jèige nyújújyāu yānde àichǐngpyāndz.

Syàng.
Syàng nǐ.
Hěn syàng nǐ.
Hěn syàng nǐ a.
Tā hěn syàng nǐ a.
Yīnwei tā hěn syàng nǐ a.

Jînchyu.
Wǒmen jînchyu.
Wǒmen jînchyu ba.
Kāiyǎnle, wǒmen jînchyu ba.
Kwài kāiyǎnle, wǒmen jînchyu ba.
Syàndzai kwài kāiyǎnle, wǒmen jînchyu ba.

Yíyàng.
Dōu yíyàng.
Hēibáide dōu yíyàng.
Tsǎisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng.
Tsǎisède hēibáide syībupyándz dōu yíyàng.
Tsǎisède hēibáide Měigwo syībupyándz dōu yíyàng.

Pyàu.
Chyánpáide pyàu.
Chyánpáide pyàu méiyǒu.
Chyánpáide pyàu méiyoule.
Chyánpáide pyàu yǐjing méiyoule.
Lóusyà chyánpáide pyàu yǐjing méiyoule.
Dwèibujù, lóusyà chyánpáide pyàu yǐjing méiyoule.

Bēijyù.
Kàn bēijyù.
Wǒ kàn bēijyù.
Wǒ ài kàn bēijyù.
Wǒ ài kàn hǎude bēijyù.

Gùshr.
Gùshr hǎu.
Nèige gùshr hǎu.
Nèige pyándzde gùshr hǎu.

Nèige Jūnggwo pyándzde gùshr hǎu.
Nèige Jūnggwo àichíngpyánde gùshr hǎu.

Shŕhou.
Shŕhou dàule.
Shŕhou kwài dàule.
Kāiyánde shŕhou kwài dàule.
Dyànyíngr kāiyánde shŕhou kwài dàule.
Syàndzai dyànyíngr kāiyánde shŕhou kwài dàule.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr **Sywésheng**

S Vgwo

Wó jyějye shwōgwo.
Wǒ kàngwo.
Tā yě chyùgwo.
Wǒ chīgwo.
Tāmen dōu tīnggwo.
Tā tsānjyāgwo jyùtsān.
Nǐ chwēigwo lǎba méiyou?
Nǐmen chīgwo Jūnggwo fàn méiyou?
Wáng syānsheng láigwo ma?
Shùsywé kǎugwole ma?

Gèng

Jèige dyànyíngr yàushr tsǎisède jyou gèng hǎule.
Jèige gāngbǐ yàushr Jūnggwode jyou gèng hǎule.
Jīntyande tsài yàushr jájī jyou gèng hǎuchīle.
Nèige bǐjiběr yàushr Měigwode jyou gèng gwèile.
Nèige gēr yàushr Syībāngyáde jyou gèng hǎutīngle.
Tāde yǐshang yàushr Fàgwode jyou gèng pyàulyangle.

Dzwèi

Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan jèige nyújújyáu yǎnde àichíngpyāndz.
Tā dzwèi ài chī Jūnggwo tsài.
Wǒmen dzwèi syīhwan tīng chàngpyār.
Tāmen dzwèi syīhwan Jūngwén.
Wǒmen dzwèi bùsyīhwan kàn bēijyù.
Nǐ dzwèi syīhwan chī shémma dūngsyi?
Tāmen dzwèi syīhwan chī nyóupái.
Nǐmen dzwèi syīhwan tīng shémma chàngpyār?

Yàushr...jyòu

(Yàushr) jèige pyāndz shǐ tsāisède jyou gèng hǎule.
(Yàushr) tā bùlái wǒmen jyou dzǒu ba.
(Yàushr) tā mǎi jyou gèng pyányile.
(Yàushr) nǐ chwān jyou gèng hǎukànle.
(Yàushr) nǐ chàng jyou gèng hǎutīngle.
(Yàushr) Jūnggwo tsài jyou gèng hǎuchīle.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Chīngwèn lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái yǒu ma?
  Chīngwèn lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái yǒu ma?
  chyánpáide Chīngwèn lóusyà chyánpáide pyàu hái yǒu ma?
  jūngjyàrde Chīngwèn lóusyà jūngjyàrde pyáu hái yǒu ma?

Dwèibuchǐ. Yǐjing méiyǒule.
  Dwèibuchǐ. Yǐjing méiyǒule.
dzǒule. Dwèibuchǐ. Yǐjing dzǒule.
màile. Dwèibuchǐ. Yǐjing màile.
wánle. Dwèibuchǐ. Yǐjing wánle.

Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu jǐjāng?	Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu jǐjāng?
jǐjr̄?	Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu jǐjr?
jǐgè?	Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu jǐge?
jǐběn?	Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu jǐběn?
jǐkwài?	Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu jǐkwài?
jǐbēi?	Hái yǒu, nǐn yàu jǐbēi?
Géi wǒ lyǎngjāng jūngjyàrde pyàu ba.	Géi wǒ lyǎngjāng jūngjyàrde pyàu ba.
hòupáide	Géi wǒ lyǎngjāng hòupáide pyàu ba.
chyánpáide	Géi wǒ lyǎngjāng chyánpáide pyàu ba.
Jūngjyàr gēn chyánpáide ne?	Jūngjyàr gēn chyánpáide ne?
hòupáide	Jūngjyàr gēn hòupáide ne?
Nǐ dzài jèr děngle hén jyǒule ba.	Nǐ dzài jèr děngle hén jyǒule ba.
kànle	Nǐ dzài jèr kànle hén jyǒule ba.
yùbeile	Nǐ dzài jèr yùbeile hén jyǒule ba.
tīngle	Nǐ dzài jèr tīngle hén jyǒule ba.
dzwòle	Nǐ dzài jèr dzwòle hén jyǒule ba.
jǎule	Nǐ dzài jèr jǎule hén jyǒule ba.
Wǒ gāng dàu yìhwěr.	Wǒ gāng dàu yìhwěr.
lái	Wǒ gāng lái yìhwěr.
kàn	Wǒ gāng kàn yìhwěr.
tīng	Wǒ gāng tīng yìhwěr.

Wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi	
jyúdzshwěi.	Wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi jyúdzshwěi.
nyóunǎi.	Wǒmen syān chyu hē bēi nyóunǎi.
chá.	Wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi chá.
bīngshwěi.	Wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi bīngshwěi.
Chī bīngjilíng ba.	Chī bīngjilíng ba.
jájī	Chī jájī ba.
yú	Chī yú ba.
chǎumyàn	Chī chǎumyàn ba.
ròu	Chī ròu ba.
Háishr wó chīng.	Hái shr wó chīng.
dzwò.	Hái shr wǒ dzwò.
mǎi.	Hái shr wó mǎi.
chàng.	Hái shr wǒ chàng.
jŕhwēi.	Hái shr wó jŕhwēi.
Yàushr jèige dyànyĭngr	
shì tsǎisède jyòu gèng hǎule.	Yàushr jèige dyànyĭngr shì tsǎisède jyòu gèng hǎule.
hēibáide.	Yàushr jèige dyànyĭngr shì hēibáide jyòu gèng hǎule.
Jūnggwode	Yàushr jèige dyànyĭngr shì Jūnggwode jyòu gèng hǎule.
syījyù	Yàushr jèige dyànyĭngr shì syījyù jyòu gèng hǎule.
Syībupyāndz	Yàushr jèige dyànyĭngr shì Syībupyāndz jyòu gèng hǎule.
Tsǎisède hēibáide dōu	
yíyàng.	Tsǎisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng.
hǎukàn.	Tsǎisède hēibáide dōu hǎukàn.
bútswò.	Tsǎisède hēibáide dōu bútswò.

Wǒ jyějye shwōgwo, gùshr hǎude dyànyǐngr dōu shì bēijyù.	Wǒ jyějye shwōgwo, gùshr hǎude dyànyǐngr dōu shì bēijyù.
syījyù.	Wǒ jyějye shwōgwo, gùshr hǎude dyànyǐngr dōu shì syījyù.
hēibáide.	Wǒ jyějye shwōgwo, gùshr hǎude dyànyǐngr dōu shì hēibáide.
Nà yě bùyídìng.	Nà yě bùyídìng.
bùsyìng.	Nà yě bùsyìng.
búgwèi	Nà yě búgwèi.
bùpyányi	Nà yě bùpyányi.
bùdwō	Nà yě bùdwō.
Měigwode syībupyāndz yé yóu hǎude.	Měigwode syībupyandz yé yóu hǎude.
àichǐngpyāndz	Měigwode àichǐngpyāndz yé yóu hǎude.
hēibáipyāndz	Měigwode hēibáipyāndz yé yóu hǎude.
tsǎisèpyāndz	Měigwode tsǎisèpyāndz yé yóu hǎude.
Jīntyande dyànyǐngr shr àichǐngpyāndz búshr?	Jīntyande dyànyǐngr shr àichǐngpyāndz búshr?
hēibáipyāndz	Jīntyande dyànyǐngr shr hēibáipyāndz búshr?
tsǎisèpyāndz	Jīntyande dyànyǐngr shr tsǎisèpyāndz búshr?
syījyù	Jīntyande dyànyǐngr shr syījyù búshr?
Nǐ dzěmma jèmma syǐhwan kàn tā yānde ne?	Nǐ dzěmma jèmma syǐhwan kàn tā yānde ne?
tāmen	Nǐ dzěmma jèmma syǐhwan kàn tāmen yānde ne?

Mă-lĭ	Nĭ dzĕmma jèmma syĭhwan kàn Mă-lĭ yănde ne?
Fàgwo rén	Nĭ dzĕmma jèmma syĭhwan kàn Fàgwo rén yănde ne?
wó	Nĭ dzĕmma jèmma syĭhwan kàn wó yănde ne?

Yĭnwei tā hĕn syàng nĭ a.	Yĭwei tā hĕn syàng nĭ a.
syĭhwan	Yĭwei tā hĕn syĭhwan nĭ a.
ài	Yĭwei tā hĕn ài nĭ a.

Wŏmen chyù kàn ba!	Wŏmen chyù kàn ba!
tĭng	Wŏmen chyù tĭng ba!
chē	Wŏmen chyù chē ba!
măi	Wŏmen chyù măi ba!
jău	Wŏmen chyù jău ba!

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Chĭngwen lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái yŏu ma?	Chĭngwen lóusyà hóupáide pyàu hái yŏu ma?
chyánpáide	Chĭngwen lóusyà chyánpáide pyàu hái yŏu ma?
lóushàng	Chĭngwen lóushàng chyánpáide pyàu hái yŏu ma?

Dwèibujù. Yĭjing méiyŏule.	Dwèibujù. Yĭjing méiyŏule.
dzău	Dwèibujù. Dzău méiyŏule.
màile.	Dwèibujù. Dzău màile.

Hái yŏu, nĭn yàu jĭjāng?	Hái yŏu, nĭn yàu jĭjāng?
jĭbĕn?	Hái yŏu, nĭn yàu jĭbĕn?
tā	Hái yŏu, tā yàu jĭbĕn.

Cěi wǒ lyǎngjāng jūng-	
jyàrde pyàu ba.	Cěi wǒ lyǎngjāng jūngjyàrde pyàu ba.
jyōujāng	Cěi wǒ jyōujāng jūngjyàrde pyàu ba.
hòupáide	Cěi wǒ jyōujāng hòupáide pyàu ba.
tā	Cěi tā jyōujāng hòupáide pyàu ba.
chyánpáide	Cěi tā jyōujāng chyánpáide pyàu ba.
Jūngjyàrde gēn	
hòupáide ne?	Jūngjyàrde gēn hòupáide ne?
chyánpáide	Jūngjyàrde gēn chyánpáide ne?
Lǒushàngde	Lǒushàngde gēn chyánpáide ne?
Nǐ dzài jèr děngle hén	
jyōule ba.	Nǐ dzài jèr děngle hén jyōule ba.
dzwòle	Nǐ dzài jèr dzwòle hén jyōule ba.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen dzài jèr dzwòle hén jyōule ba.
wárle	Nǐmen dzài jèr wárle hén jyōule ba.
Tāmen	Tāmen dzài jèr wárle hén jyōule ba.
Wǒ gāng dàu yìhwěr.	Wǒ gāng dàu yìhwěr.
lái	Wǒ gāng lái yìhwěr.
Tā	Tā gāng lái yìhwěr
tǐng	Tā gāng tǐng yìhwěr.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī gāng tǐng yìhwěr.
Wǒmen syān chyù bēi	
jyúdzshwěi.	Wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi jyúdzshwěi.
chá	Wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi chá.
Nǐ	Nǐ syān chyù hē bēi chá.
nyóunǎi	Nǐ syān chyù hē bēi nyóunǎi.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen syān hē bēi nyóunǎi.

Háishr wó chīng.	Háishr wó chīng.
dzwò	Háishr wó dzwò.
nī	Háishr nī dzwò.
māi	Háishr nī māi.
wōmen	Háishr wōmen māi.
Yàushr jèige dyànyīngr shr̀ tsāisède jyòu gèng hāule.	Yàushr jèige dyànyīngr shr̀ tsāisède jyòu gèng hāule.
hēibáide	Yàushr jèige dyànyīngr shr̀ hēibáide jyòu gèng hāule.
nèige	Yàushr nèige dyànyīngr shr̀ hēibáide jyòu gèng hāule.
Wó jyējye shwōgwo, gùshr hāude dyànyīngr dōu shr bēijyù.	Wó jyējye shwōgwo, gùshr hāude dyànyīngr dōu shr bēijyù.
syījyù.	Wó jyējye shwōgwo, gùshr hāude dyànyīngr dōu shr syījyù.
gēge	Wō gēge shwōgwo, gùshr hāude dyànyīngr dōu shr syījyù.
Nà yē búyídìng.	Nà yē bùyídìng.
bùsyíng.	Nà yē bùsyíng.
Jèi	Jèi yē bùsyíng.
Mēigwode Syībupyāndz yé yóu hāude.	Mēigwode Syībupyāndz yé yóu hāude.
àichíngpyāndz	Mēigwode àichíngpyāndz yé yóu hāude.
Jūnggwode	Jūnggwode àichíngpyāndz yé yóu hāude.
tsāisèpyāndz	Jūnggwode tsāisèpyāndz yé yóu hāude.
Syībāngyáde	Syībāngyáde tsāisèpyāndz yé yóu hāude.

Jīntyande dyànyīngr shì àichīngpyāndz búshr?	Jīntyande dyànyīngr shì àichīngpyāndz búshr?
Syībupyāndz	Jīntyande dyànyīngr shì Syībupyāndz búshr?
Dzwótyande	Dzwótyande dyànyīngr shì Syībupyāndz búshr?
tsāisèpyāndz	Dzwótyande dyànyīngr shì tsāisèpyāndz búshr?
Chyántyande	Chyántyande dyànyīngr shì tsāisèpyāndz búshr?
hēibáipyāndz	Chyántyande dyànyīngr shì hēibápyāndz búshr?
Nǐ dzēmma jèmma syīhwan kàn tā yānde ne?	Nǐ dzēmma jèmma syīhwan kàn tā yānde ne?
byáuyānde	Nǐ dzēmma jèmma syīhwan kàn tā byáuyānde ne?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen dzēmma jèmma syīhwan kàn tā byáuyānde ne?
Yīnwei tā hěn syàng nǐ a.	Yīnwei tā hěn syàng nǐ a.
Mǎ-lì	Yīnwei tā hěn syàng Mǎ-lì a.
nǐ	Yinwei nǐ hěn syàng Mǎ-lì a.
syīhwan	Yīnwei nǐ hén syīhwan Mǎ-lì a.
nǐmen	Yīnwei nǐmen hén syīhwan Mǎ-lì a.
Wǒmen chyù kàn ba!	Wǒmen chyù kàn ba!
tīng	Wǒmen chyù tīng ba!
Nǐ	Nǐ chyù tīng ba!
mǎi	Nǐ chyù mǎi ba!
Wǒ	Wǒ chyù mǎi ba!

RESPONSE DRILL

Chīngwen lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái yǒu ma?
(Méiyǒule) Lóusyà hòupáide pyàu yǐjing méiyǒule.
(Hái yǒu) Lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái yǒu.

Jūngjyàrde gēn chyánpáide ne?
(hái yǒu) Jūngjyàrde gēn chyánpáide hái yǒu.
(yě méiyǒule) Jūngjyàrde gēn chyánpáide yě méiyǒule.

Hái yǒu, nín yàu jǐjāng?
(lyǎngjāng) Géi wǒ lyǎngjāng jūngjyàrde (pyàu ba).
(sìjāng) Géi wǒ sìjāng jūngjyàrde (pyàu ba).

Nǐ dzài jèr dēngle hén jyǒule ba?
(hén jyǒule) Wǒ dzài jèr dēngle hén jyǒule.
(gāng dàu) Wǒ gāng dàu yìhwěr.

Kwài kāiyānle, wǒmen jìnchyu ba.
(Hāi dzǎu ne) Hāi dzǎu ne, wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi jyúdzshwěi.

Jŕyàu gùshr hǎu, tsǎisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng ma?
(yíyàng) Jŕyàu gùshr hǎu, tsǎisède hēibāide dōu yíyàng.

Měigwode Syīnbùpyāndz yé yóu hǎude ma?
(yǒu) Měigwode Syīnbùpyāndz yé yǒu hǎude.
(méiyou) Měigwode Syīnbùpyāndz méiyou hǎude.

Jīntyande dyànyīngr shr̀
  àichíngpyāndz búshr?
(shr̀) Jīntyande dyànyīngr shr̀ àichíngpyāndz.
(búshr) Jīntyande dyànyīngr búshr
  àichíngpyāndz.

Nǐ dzĕmma jèmma syīhwan kàn tā
  yānde ne?
(syàng) Yīngwei tā hĕn syàng nī.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nī wèn ta, lóusyà
  hòupáide pyàu hái
  yŏu ma.

Chīngwèn lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái
  yŏu ma?
Dwèibujù. Yījing méiyŏule.
Dwèibujù. Yìjāng dōu méiyŏule.
Hái yŏu sānjāng.

Nī wèn ta, jūngjyàrde
  gēn chyánpáide ne?

Jūngjyàrde gēn chyánpáide ne?
Hái yŏu, nín yàu jījāng?
Yìjāng dōu méiyŏule.

Nì wèn ta, tā dzài jèr
  dĕngle hén jyŏule ba.

Nī dzài jèr dĕngle hén jyŏule ba?
Wŏ gāng dàu yìhwĕr.
Wó yĕ gāng dàu yìhwĕr.
Wó dĕngle hén jyŏule.
Wŏ gāng dĕngle yìhwĕr.

Nī wèn ta, wŏmen
  jìnchyu ba.

Wŏmen jìnchyu ba.
Hái dzău ne.
Hău. Wŏmen jìnchyu ba.
Hái dzău ne, wŏmen syān chyu hē
  bei jyúdzshwéi ba.

Nǐ wèn ta, jǐyau gùshr hău tsăisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng ma?	<u>Jǐyau gùshr hău, tsăisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng ma</u>? Jǐyau gùshr hău, tsăisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng. Háishr tsăisède hău. Háishr hēibáide hău.
Nǐ wèn ta, gùshr hăude dyànyíngr dōu shr bēijyù ma?	<u>Gùshr hăude dyànyíngr dōu shr bēijyù ma</u>? Gùshr hăude dyànyíngr dōu shr bēijyù. Gùshr hăude dyànyíngr hěn dwō shǐ beījyù.
Nǐ wèn ta, Měigwode Syībupyāndz yé yŏu hén hăude ma?	<u>Měigwode Syībupyāndz yé yŏu hén hăude ma</u>? Měigwode Syībupyāndz yé yŏu hén hăude. Měigwode Syībupyāndz méiyou hén hăude. Měigwode Syībupyāndz dōu búshr hén hăude.
Nǐ wèn ta, jīntyande dyànyíngr shǐ àichíngpyāndz bushr?	<u>Jīntyande dyànyíngr shǐ àichíngpyāndz búshr</u>? Jīntyande dyànyíngr shǐ àichíngpyāndz. Jīntyande dyànyíngr búshr àichíngpyāndz. Jīntyande dyànyíngr shǐ Syībùpyāndz.
Nǐ wèn ta, tā dzwèi syíhwan jèige nyújújyáu yănde àichíngpyāndz ma.	<u>Nǐ dzwèi syíhwan jèige nyújújyáu yănde àichíngpyāndz ma</u>? Wŏ dzwèi syíhwan jèige nyújújyáu yănde àichíngpyāndz.

Wǒ bùsyǐhwan jèige nyújújyáu
yǎnde àichíngpyāndz.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Chíngwen lǒushàng chyánpáide pyàu hái yǒu ma?
Hái yǒu. Nǐn yàu jījāng?
Wǒ yàu lyòujāng. Hái yǒu méiyou jūngjyàrde?
Dwèibuchǐ. Jūngjyàrde yǐjing méiyǒule.
Nà, chyánpáide yě sying.
Nǐn yàu jǐdyan jūngde ne?
Géi wǒ jyóudyǎnbànde ba.
Lyòujāng yígùng lyòushrkwai chyán.

Jīntyande jèige dyànyíngr jēn bútswò a.
Shì a. Gùshr hǎu, tsáisè yě pyàulyang.
Nyújújyáu yǎnde hǎu buhǎu?
Tā yǎnde jēn hǎu, wǒ dzwèi aì kàn tā yǎnde pyāndz le.
Dzěmma nǐ jèmma aì kàn tā yǎnde pyāndz ne?
Nǐ bujīdàu, tā tài syàng nǐ le.
Nǐ yòu kāi wánsyàu le.
Búshr kāi wánsyàu, tā jēn syàng nǐ a.
Wǒ nár yǒu tā nèmma pyàulyang a.
Byé kèchile. Nǐ gēn tā yíyàng pyàulyang.
Dyànyíngr kwài wánle, wǒmen dzǒu ba.
Hái dzǎu ne. Děng yìhwěr dzài dzǒu.

NARRATION

Wǒde túngsywé dōu syǐhwan kàn dyànyíngr. Tsáisède hēibáide tāmen dōu syǐhwan. Wǒ bùsyǐhwan Syībupyāndz, kěshr wǒ dzwèi ai kàn àichíngpyāndz. Àichíngpyāndzde gùshr dōu bútswò, búgwò chángchang dōu shì bēijyù.

Dzwótyande dyànyíngr shì àichíngpyāndz, gùshr hǎujíle. Wǒ gēn Jì-píng dóu hén syǐhwan. Wó jyějye yě chyù kànle.

Tā yě shwō nánjújyǎu nyújújǎu dōu yǎnde hǎujǐle. Dzwótyan kàn dyànyǐngrde rén hěn dwō, lóusyàde pyàu hén dzǎu jyòu méile, wǒmen lyǎngge rén jyòu mǎile lyǎngjāng lóushàng chyánpáide pyàu. Kànle dyànyǐngr, tā yàu wǒ chǐng tā chī bīngjilíng. Wǒ búaì chī bīngjilíng, wǒ jyòu hēle yìbēi jyúdzshwěi.

Jī-píng hěn ài kàn Měigwode Syībupyāndz, wǒ yìdyǎr dōu bùsyǐhwan. Búgwò yǒude Syībupyāndz yě hái bútswò. Dzwèi hǎude àichíngpyāndz shì Fàgwo rén yǎnde.

RHYME

Dyànyǐngr dyànyǐngr jēn hǎukàn.
Yìjāng pyàu yàu shírkwàibàn.
Hēibáide gùshr hǎu.
Tsǎisède wǒmen dōu syǐhwan.
Jī-píng ài kàn Syībupyāndz.
Mǎ-lì syǐhwan àichíngpyāndz.
Jīntyande dyànyǐngr jēn bútswò.
Wǒmen dōu shwō hén hǎukàn.
Nyújújyǎu, jēn pyàulyang,
Yǒu syàng Mǎ-lì, yòu hwèi yǎn.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Chǐngwèn lóusyà hòupáide pyàu hái yǒu ma?
(Dwèibuchǐ. Yǐjing méiyǒule)
Jūngjyàrde gēn chyánpáide ne?
(Hái yǒu, nín yàu jǐjāng.)
Nǐ dzài jèr děngle hén jyǒule ba.
(Méi shémma. Wǒ yě gāng dàu yìhwěr.)
Kwài kāiyǎnle, wǒmen jìnchyu ba.
(Hái dzǎu ne. Wǒmen syān chyù hē bēi jyúdzshwěi.)

Chī bīngjilíng ba. Wǒ chīngkè.
(Nà dzěmma hǎu yìsz. Háishr wó chíng ba.)
Jǐyàu gùshr hǎu, tsáisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng ma?
(Jǐyàu gùshr hǎu, tsáisède hēibáide dōu yíyàng.)
Měigwode Syībupyándz yé yǒu hén hǎude ma?
(Měigwode Syībupyándz yé yǒu hén hǎude.)
Jīntyande dyànyíngr shì àichíngpyándz búshr?
(Jīntyande dyànyíngr shì àichíngpyándz.)
Nǐ dzěmma jèmma syíhwan kàn tā yánde ne?
(Ní bujīdàu ma? Tā hěn syàng ní a!)
Nǐ syíhwan jèige nyújújyáu yánde àichíngpyándz ma?
(Wǒ dzwèi syíhwan jèige nyújújyáu yánde àichíngpyándz.

2. Auditory Comprehension (retell the following in English.)

Wǒmen dàjyā dōu ài kàn dyànyíngr. Hēibáide tsáisède wǒmen dōu ài kàn. Dyànyíngr pyàu hěn gwèi, yìjāng yàu shǐkwài chyán. Kěshr wǒmen háishr chángchang chyù kàn.

Wǒ bùsyíhwan Syībupyándz, Syībupyándzde gùshr dōu yíyang. Wǒ dzwèi ài kàn àichíngpyándz, gùshr hǎu, nánjújyǎu nyjújyǎu dōu yánde hǎujíle. Búgwò àichíngpyándz chánchang shì bēijyù. Yàushr syíjyù jyòu gèng hǎule.

Jīntyan wánshangde dyànyíngr tài hǎule. Wǒ shì gēn Jī-píng yíkwàr chyùde. Lóusyàde pyàu méiyǒule, wǒmen mǎile lyǎngjāng lóushàng hòupáide pyàu, yígùng èrshrkwài chyán. Kànle dyànyíngr, shǐhou hái dzǎu, tā yàu wó chīng tā chī bīngjilíng, wǒ bùsyíhwan bīngjilíng, wó hēle yìbēi jyúdzshwěi.

Dzwèi hǎude dyànyíngr shì Fàgwode. Tsáisè hǎu gùshr yé hǎu. Nyújújyǎu dōu hěn pyàulyang.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese Characters)

UNIT XI

GOING TO THE POST OFFICE

Hwá-mǐng inquires from a pedestrian on a Taipei street about the location of a post office. Upon learning that Hwá-mǐng wants to mail a package, the pedestrian suggests that he go to Jūng-shān Road by taking the No. 15 bus. But the bus does not stop exactly in front of the post office. Whereupon Hwá-mǐng decides to take a pedicab.

At the post office Hwá-mǐng asks about the postage rates. He sends one letter by air mail and another by first class mail to America. His package, which the postal clerk weighs for him, is sent by surface mail, registered and insured.

DIALOGUE

Hwá-míng: Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóujyú?

Syíngrén: Jèr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyou yǒu yíge yóutǔng.

Hwá-míng: Wǒ yàu jì bāugwǒ, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.

Syíngrén: O. Nà nǐ děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.

Hwá-míng: Jūng-shāng Lù lǐ jèr ywǎn bùywǎn a?

Syíngrén: Kě bújìn a. Nǐ děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù.

Hwá-míng: Dzwò jílùde gūnggùng chìchē ne?

Syíngrén: Shírwūlù. Nǐ dzài dìchíge jyēkǒur syàchē.

Hwá-míng: Yisyàchē jyòu shì yóujyóu ma?

Syíngrén: Bù. Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu yityáu jyē tsái dàu ne.

Hwá-míng: Nà tài máfanle. Wǒ kàn wǒ háishr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.

Hwá-míng: Chíngwèn jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?

Jyúywán: Hángkūng syìn shírkwai chyán, píngsyìn sānkwai-wǔ.

Hwá-míng: Jèifēng jì hángkūng, jèifeng jì píngsyìn.

Jyúywán: Nín nèige bāugwó yě jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?

Hwá-míng: Shìde. Jèi yùng píngjì, chēngyicheng yǒu dwó jùng?

Jyúywán: Jènghǎu yíbàngbàn. Yàu buyàu gwàhàu?

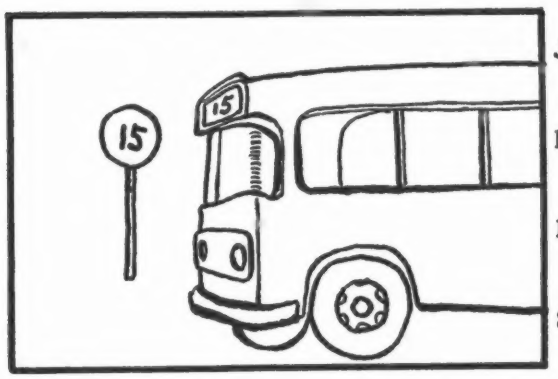
Hwá-míng: Yàu gwàhàu, yé děi báusyān. Bǎu yibǎikwai ba.

Jyúywán: Hǎu. Yígùng shì lyòushrkwai chyán. Jèi shì nínde shōujyàu.

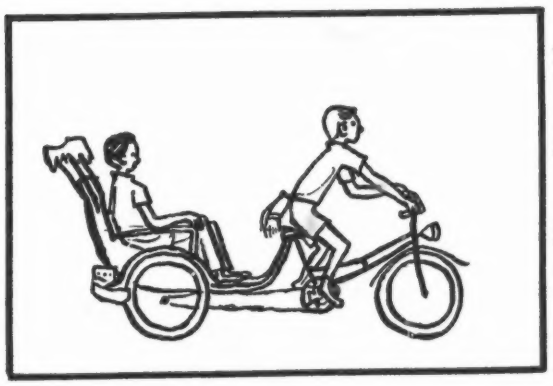
Hwá-míng: O, wǒ hái yàu wǔjāng hángkūng yóujyǎn, jyòujāng míngsyìnpyàr.

Chīngwèn jèr fùjìn
yǒu méiyou...?
Jèr fùjìn méiyou
yóujyú, jyòu yǒu...

Wǒ yàu jì bāugwǒ,
swóyi...
O. Nà nǐ děi dàu...

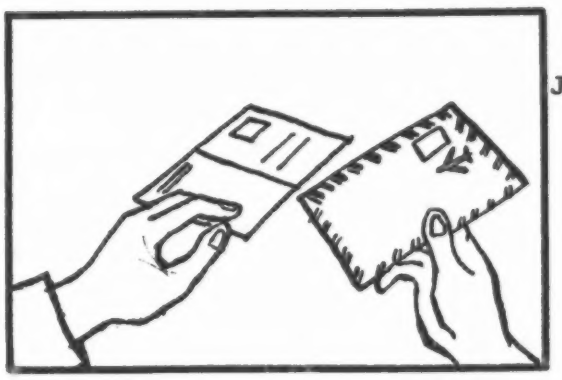


Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr
ywǎn buywǎn a?
Kě bújìn a. Nǐ děi
dzwò...
Dzwò jǐlùde gūnggùng
chìchē ne?
Shŕwǔlù. Nǐ dzài
dìchǐge...

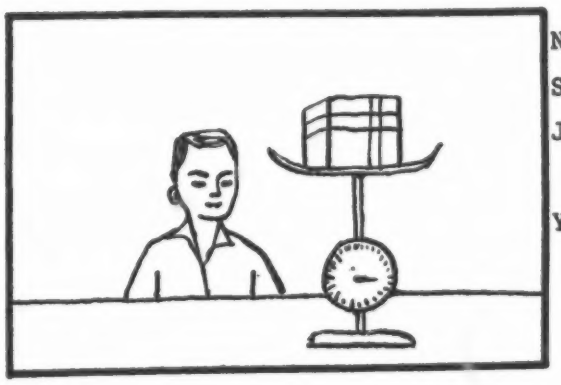


Yisyàchē jyòu shì
yóujyú ma?
Bù. Nǐ hái děi wàng
yòu dzǒu...
Nà tài máfanle. Wǒ
kàn wǒ háishr.

Chīngwèn jì dàu
Měigwo chyùde
syìn...
Hángkūng syìn...,
pīngsyìn...



Jèifēng jì...,
jèifēng jì...



Nǐn nèige bāugwó yě...
Shìde. Jèi yùng...
Jènghǎu yībàngbàn. Yàu
buyàu...?
Yàu gwàhàu, yé děi
báusyǎn. Bǎu...

Hǎu. Yìgùng shǐ...
O, wǒ hái yàu...

Hwá-míng: Please tell me, is there a post office near here?

Pedestrian: There is no post office near here, there is only a mailbox.

Hwá-míng: I want to send a package; I have to go to a post office to do it.

Pedestrian: Oh, then you have to go to Jūng-shān Road.

Hwá-míng: Is Jūng-shān Road far from here?

Pedestrian: It isn't near. You have to go by bus.

Hwá-míng: Which bus shall I take?

Pedestrian: No. 15. You get off after seven blocks.

Hwá-míng: Is the post office right where I will get off?

Pedestrian: No, you still have to walk one block to the right before you reach it.

Hwá-míng: That's too complicated. I think I'd better take a pedicab.

Hwá-míng: Please tell me, how much postage should I put on a letter to be sent to America?

Postal Clerk: $10 for air mail, $3.50 for ordinary first class.

Hwá-míng: This one goes air mail; this goes first class.

Postal Clerk: Is that package of yours also going to America?

Hwá-míng: Yes, this will go by surface mail. Please weigh it and see how heavy it is.

Postal Clerk: Just one and a half pounds. Do you wish to have it registered?

Hwá-míng: Yes, I would like to have it registered as well as insured. Let's insure it for $100.

Postal Clerk: All right. It's $60 altogether. This is your receipt.

Hwá-míng: Oh, I still need five air letters and nine postcards.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

fùjìn	neighborhood
yóujyú	post office
yóutǔng	mailbox
bāugwǒ	parcel
Jūng-shān	first name of Dr. Sun Yat-sen
lù	road
chìchē	automobile (gūnggùng chìchē means bus)
jyēkóur	block; intersection
jyē	street
sānlwúnchē	Chinese pedicab
syìn	mail; letter
yóupyàu	stamp
hángkūng	aviation (hángkūng syìn means airmail letter)
píngsyìn	regular letter; first-class letter
píngjì	regular mailing; surface mail
shōujyù	receipt
hángkūng yǒujyǎn	air letter
míngsyìnpyàr	post card

2. Verb

jì	send; mail
syàchē	get off a wheeled vehicle (VO)
tyē	stick; affix
chēng	weigh
gwàhàu	register (VO)
báusyǎn	insure (VO)

3. Co-Verb

lí	from (be separated or distant from)
wàng	towards (in direction of)
yùng	with (cf. Unit IV)

4. Adjective

ywǎn	far
jìn	near
máfan	troublesome
jùng	heavy
gūnggùng	public

5. Adverb

swóyi	so; therefore
kě	indeed; certainly; however
jènghǎu	just; exactly

6. Particle

dì-	ordinalizing prefix to numbers

7. Measure

-lù	route number of bus
-tyáu	line
-bàng	pound
-fēng	unit measure for letters

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

syíngrén	pedestrian
jyúywán	postal clerk

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Distance with co-verb lí S CV O Adj

To indicate the distance between two points, the co-verb pattern with lí (distant from) is used, together with the adjective ywǎn (far) or jìn (near), as the case may be:

Jūng-shān Lù lí jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?

Jūng-shān Lù lí jèr hěn jìn.

The extent of separation is indicated by appropriate adverbs standing just before the adjective as above, or by

endings attached to the adjectives, such as -de hěn (very), and jíle (extremely):

Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywǎnjíle.

Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr jǐnde hěn.

2. Ordinal Numbers

The ordinalizing prefix dì is equivalent to the English endings -st, -nd, -rd, etc. and signifies any single unit of a series (as dìyī, number one; dìèrge, the second one, etc.):

Nǐ dzài dìchíge jyēkòur syàchē.

3. Dàu...chyù (or lái) pattern as a verb complement — S V dàu... chyù (lái)

The co-verb patterns, dàu...chyù and dàu...lái, can be used as a complement to certain verbs of motion, such as jì (send), dzǒu (walk), etc.:

Nín nèige bāugwó yě jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?

Tā dzǒu dàu jèr láile.

4. Use of yǒu in measurement — S yǒu Nu-M Adj

For measuring distance, weight, height, age, etc:

Chēngyicheng (jèige bāugwǒ) yǒu dwō jùng?

(Jèige bāugwǒ) jènghāu (yǒu) yìbàngbàn (jùng).

NOTES

Cultural Notes

a. The mailbox commonly seen in China, both on the mainland and in Taiwan, is a heavy-weight cylinder cast in cement about four feet tall painted dark green. From this shape comes the name, yóutǔng, "mail tube," rather than "mailbox."

b. The postage rates used in this dialogue are based on those prevailing in Taiwan nowadays. The current rate of exchange is about forty-five Taiwan dollars to U.S. $1. On the mainland the currency unit is rénmínbì, or people's

money, exchanging one dollar for about U.S. $2.30. The postal rates in mainland China are approximately twenty cents for a first class letter and forty cents for air mail.

c. The rickshaw has, for all practical purposes, disappeared both in Mainland China and Taiwan. A few of them are still to be found in Hong Kong. Even in Japan, the rickshaw has long become a rarity preserved purposely for the tourist's benefit. The pedicab is a tricycle with the operator pedaling it either in front or behind the seat for the passenger. Quite often more than one passenger can share a pedicab. The cost for riding in a pedicab is only about one-third of the taxi fare for the same distance.

d. Notice the use of a western weight measurement, the pound, in the postal service of China where the traditional weight unit is the catty. The catty is about the equivalent of 16 American ouncs. Since there has been considerable western influence in the establishment of modern Chinese postal service, the use of the pound and the ounce as basic weight units has been maintained in the post office. It is ironic to recall that China is probably the first country in the world to institute the form of postal service known as the pony express, yet China had to have the help of western specialists to help her in setting up a modern, efficient postal service system in the late 19th Century.

e. Some of the world's most beautiful postage stamps have been issued by Mainland China and Taiwan in recent years. Among them the butterfly series from Taiwan and the ancient Dunhwang Cave wall painting series from the mainland are worth showing the students.

f. The efficiency of the postal service in Formosa is the pride of the government there. For an extra penny or two, one can send a special delivery letter that races from one tip of the island to the other (about 200 miles) and reaches

the recipient in the same day. In most Taiwan cities there are five or six deliveries a day.

FLUENCY DRILL

Jì.
Jìsyìn.
Wǒ jìsyìn.
Tá yě jìsyìn.
Wǒmen dōu jìsyìn.
Wǒmen jīntyan dōu jìsyìn.
Tā yàu jìsyìn dàu měigwo chyù.

Syàchē.
Tā syàchē.
Dzài jyēkǒur syàchē.
Dzài dìchíge jyēkǒur syàchē.
Nǐ dzài dìchíge jyēkǒur syàchē.
Nǐ děi dzài dìchíge jyēkǒur syàchē.

Tyē.
Tyē yóupyàu.
Tyē dwōshau yóupyàu.
Tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu.
Yàu tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu.
Chǐngwèn yàu tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu.

Chēngyicheng.
Nǐ chēngyicheng.
Chíng nǐ chēngyicheng.
Chēngyicheng yǒu dwó jùng.
Nǐ chēngyicheng yǒu dwó jùng.
Chíng ni chēngyicheng yǒu dwó jùng.

Gwàhàu.
Yàu gwàhàu.
Yàu búyau gwàhàu?
Jèige yàu búyau gwàhàu?
Jèige bāugwǒ yàu búyau gwàhàu?
Chingwèn jèige bāugwǒ yàu búyau gwàhàu?

Báusyǎn.
Yàu báusyǎn.
Yě yàu báusyǎn.
Jèige yě yàu báusyǎn.
Jèige bāugwǒ yě yàu báusyǎn.
Wǒ jèige bāugwǒ yě yàu báusyǎn.

Lǐ.
Lǐ jèr ywǎn.
Lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn?
Sywésyàu lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn?
Nǐde sywésyàu lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn?

Wàng.
Wàng yòu.
Wàng yòu dzǒu.
Děi wàng yòu dzǒu.
Hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu.
Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu.

Yùng.
Yùng píngjì.
Jèi yùng píngjì.
Jèige bāugwǒ yùng píngjì.
Jèige bāugwǒ yě yùng píngjì.
Jèige bāugwǒ yé děi yùng píngjì.

Jìn.
Bújìn.
Lǐ jèr bújìn.
Lǐ jèr kě bújìn.
Lǐ jèr kě bújìn a.
Lǐ jèr kě jēn bújìn a.

Sānlwúnchē.
Dzwò sānlwúnchē.
Dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.
Háishr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.
Wǒ háishr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.
Wǒ kàn háishr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.

Jènghǎu.
Jènghǎu yíbàngbàn.
Jèige jènghǎu yíbàngbàn.
Jèige bāugwǒ jènghǎu yíbàngbàn.
Wǒde jèige bāugwǒ jènghǎu yíbàngbàn.
Wǒde jèige dà bāugwǒ jènghǎu yíbàngbàn.

Yǒujyú.
Méiyou yǒujyú.
Yǒu méiyou yǒujyú?
Fùjìn yǒu méiyou yǒujyú?
Jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yǒujyú?
Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yǒujyú?

Chìchē.
Gūnggùng chìchē.
Jyǒulùde gūnggùng chìchē.
Dzwò jyǒulùde gūnggùng chìchē.
Wǒ dzwò jyǒulùde gūnggùng chìchē.
Wǒ dzwò jyǒulùde gūnggùng chìchē chyù.

Jyē.
Yìtyáu jyē.
Dzǒu yìtyáu jyē.
Dzài dzǒu yìtyáu jyē.
Děi dzài dzǒu yìtyáu jyē.
Nǐ děi dzài dzǒu yìtyáu jyē.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr̄ — Sywésheng

S CV O Adj

Jūngshān Lù lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Nǐde sywésyàu lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Nǐde jyā lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Túshūgwǎn lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Dùngwuywán lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Yóujyú lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?

Jūngshān Lù lǐ jèr hěn jìn.
Wǒde jyā lǐ jèr hěn jìn.
Syībānyá fàngwǎr lǐ jèr hěn jìn.
Túshūgwǎn lǐ jèr hěn jìn.
Dùngwuywán lǐ jèr hěn jìn.
Yóujyú lǐ jèr hěn jìn.

Dì

Nǐ dzài dìchǐge jyēkòur syàchē.
Wǒ dzài dìjyǒuge jyēkòur syàchē.
Tā yàu dzài dìlyòuge jyēkòur syàchē.
Jèr shr dièrkwài nyóupái.
Jèr shr dìsānwǎn tāng.
Nèi shr wó mǎide dìchīben shū.

S V dàu...chyù (lái)

Nín nèige bāugwǒ yě jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?
Tā nèige bāugwǒ yǐjing jì dàu jèr láile.
Wǒ yàu dzǒu dàu sywésyàu chyù.

Tā yàu dzǒu dàu wǒ jyā lái.
Lǐ Lǎushī dzwōtyan dzǒu dàu chéng li chyù.
Jèifēng syìn yàu jì dàu syāngsya chyù.

S Yǒu Nu-M Adj

Chēngyicheng yǒu dwó jùng?
Sywésyàu lǐ jèr yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Dùngwuywán lǐ nèr yǒu dwò ywǎn?
Nǐ jyā lǐ jèr yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Túshūgwǎn lǐ nèr yǒu dwó ywǎn?

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóujyú?	Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóujyú?
yóutǔng	Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóutǔng?
sywésyàu	Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou sywésyàu?
túshūgwǎn	Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou túshūgwǎn?
dùngwuywán	Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou dùngwuywán?
jyàushì	Chíngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou jyàushì?

Jèr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yǒu yíge yóutǔng.	Jèr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yǒu yíge yóutǔng.
Nèr	Nèr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yǒu yíge yóutǔng.
Syāngsya	Syāngsya fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yǒu yíge yóutǔng.
Dùngwuywán	Dùngwuywán fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yǒu yíge yóutǔng.

Fàngwăr	Fàngwăr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yŏu yíge yóutŭng.
Sywésyàu	Sywésyàu fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yŏu yíge yóutŭng.
Wŏ yàu jì bāugwŏ, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.	Wŏ yàu jì bāugwŏ, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
Hángkūngsyìn	Wŏ yàu jì Hángkūngsyìn, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
dūngsyi	Wŏ yàu jì dūngsyi, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
shwéigwŏ	Wŏ yàu jì shwéigwŏ, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
bīnggān	Wŏ yàu jì bīnggān, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
shū	Wŏ yàu jì shū, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
Nà nǐ děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.	Nà nǐ děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.
wŏ	Nà wŏ děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.
nǐmen	Nà nǐmen děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.
Měi-fāng	Nà Měi-fāng děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.
jyějye	Nà jyějye děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.
Lǐ Laushr	Nà Lǐ Laushr děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyù.
Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywán buywán a?	Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywăn buywăn a?
nèr	Jung-shān Lù lǐ nèr ywăn buywăn a?
yóujyú	Jūng-shān Lù lǐ yóujyú ywăn buywăn a?
túshūgwăn	Jūng-shān Lù lǐ túshūgwăn ywăn buywăn a?
sywésyàu	Jūng-shān Lù lǐ sywésyàu ywăn buywăn a?

dùngwuywán — Jūng-shān Lù li dùngwuywán ywăn buywăn a?

Kĕ bújìn a.
- bùpyányi — Kĕ bùpyányi a.
- búgwèi — Kĕ búgwèi a.
- bújùng — Kĕ bújùng a.
- bùdwō — Kĕ bùdwō a.
- bùshău — Kĕ bùshău a.

Nǐ dĕi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù.
- shŕwŭlù — Nǐ dĕi dzwò shŕwŭlù chìchē chyù.
- tāde — Wó dĕi dzwò tāde chìchē chyù.
- Měi-lìde — Tā dĕi dzwò Měi-lìde chìchē chyù.
- Jūnggwo — Nǐmen dĕi dzwò Jūnggwo chìchē chyù.

Nǐ dzài dìyīge jyēkŏur syàchē.
- dìsžge — Nǐ dzài dìyīge jyēkŏur syàchē.
- nèige — Nǐ dzài dìsžge jyēkŏur syàchē.
- jèige — Nǐ dzài nèige jyēkŏur syàchē.
- Nǐ dzài jèige jyēkŏur syàchē.

Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú ma?
- sywésyàu — Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú ma?
- túshūgwăn — Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr sywésyàu ma?
- dùngwuywán — Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr túshūgwăn ma?
- fàntīng — Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr dùngwuywán ma?
- Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr fàntīng ma?

Nǐ hái dĕi wàng yòu dzŏu yìtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
- sžtyáu — Nǐ hái dĕi wàng yòu dzŏu yìtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
- Nǐ hái dĕi wàng yòu dzŏu sžtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.

lyǎngtyáu	Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu lyǎngtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
chǐtyáu	Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu chǐtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
jyǒutyáu	Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzóu jyǒutyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
shŕtyáu	Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu shŕtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.

Wǒ kàn wǒ hái shr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.	Wǒ kàn wǒ hái shr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.
chìchē	Wǒ kàn wǒ hái shr dzwò chìchē ba.
shŕwǔlùchē	Wǒ kàn wǒ hái shr dzwò shŕwǔlùchē ba.
gūnggùng chìchē	Wǒ kàn wǒ hái shr dzwò gūnggùng chìchē ba.
jyǒulùchē	Wǒ kàn wǒ hái shr dzwò jyǒulùchē ba.
sìlùchē	Wǒ kàn wǒ hái shr dzwò sìlùchē ba.

Chīngwèn jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?	Chīngwèn jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
Fàgwo	Chīngwèn jì dàu Fàgwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
Syībānyá	Chīngwèn jì dàu Syībānyá chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
Dégwo	Chīngwèn jì dàu Dégwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
Jūnggwo	Chīngwèn jì dàu Jūnggwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?

Hángkūng syìn shŕkwài chyan, pingsyìn sānkwài-wu.	Hángkūng syìn shŕkwài chyán, píngsyìn sānkwài-wǔ.

chîkwài — Hángkūng syìn chîkwài chyán, píngsyìn sānkwài-wū.

èrshrkwài — Hángkūng syìn èrshrkwài chyán, píngsyìn sānkwài-wū.

shŕèrkwài — Hángkūng syìn shŕèrkwài chyán, píngsyìn sānkwài-wū.

bákwài — Hángkūng syìn bákwài chyán, píngsyìn sānkwài-wū.

Yígùng shì lyòushrkwài chyán. — Yígùng shì lyòushrkwài chyán.

sìbǎikwài — Yígùng shì sìbǎikwài chyán.

èrbǎi lyòushrsìkwài — Yígùng shì èrbǎi lyòushrsìkwài chyán.

yìchyān èrbǎikwài — Yígùng shì yìchyān èrbǎikwài chyán.

jyǒushrjyǒukwài — Yígùng shì jyǒushrjyǒukwài chyán.

Jèi shr nǐde shōujyù. — Jèi shr nǐde shōujyù.

syìn. — Jèi shr nǐde syìn.

yóupyàu. — Jèi shr nǐde yóupyàu.

yóujyǎn. — Jèi shr nǐde yóujyǎn.

míngsyìnpyàr. — Jèi shr nǐde míngsyìnpyàr.

shū. — Jèi shr nǐde shū.

Wǒ hái yàu wǔjāng hángkūng yóujyǎn. — Wǒ hái yàu wǔjāng hángkūng yóujyǎn.

sānjāng — Wǒ hái yàu sānjāng hángkūng yóujyǎn.

jyǒujāng — Wǒ hái yàu jyǒujāng hángkūng yóujyǎn.

wǔshrjāng — Wǒ hái yàu wǔshrjāng hángkūng yóujyǎn.

sānshrsìjāng — Wǒ hái yàu sānshrsìjāng hángkūng yóujyǎn.

Bǎu yìbǎikwài ba. — Bǎu yìbǎikwài ba.

wǔshrkwài — Bǎu wǔshrkwài ba.

èrshrkwài	Bău èrshrkwài ba.
chǐshrchíkwài	Bău chǐshrchíkwài ba.
lyángbăikwài	Bău lyángbăikwài ba.
yìbăi èrshrkwài	Bău yìbăi èrshrkwài ba.
Nǐ nèige bāugwŏ yĕ jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?	Nǐ nèige bāugwŏ yĕ jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?
Fàgwo	Nǐ nèige bāugwo yĕ jì dàu Fàgwo chyù ma?
Syībānyá	Nǐ nèige bāugwŏ yĕ jì dàu Syībānyá *chyù ma?*
Dégwo	Nǐ nèige bāugwo yĕ jì dàu Dégwo chyù ma?
Jūnggwo	Nǐ nèige bāugwo yĕ jì dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?
Jèi yùng píngjì.	Jèi yùng píngjì.
hángkūng jì	Jèi yùng hángkūng jì.
gwàhàu jì	Jèi yùng gwàhàu jì.
Jènghău yíbàngbàn.	Jènghău yíbàngbàn.
szbàng.	Jènghău szbàng.
wŭbàngbàn.	Jènghău wŭbàngbàn.
jyŏubàng.	Jènghău jyŏubàng.
chíbàngbàn.	Jènghău chíbàngbàn.
shŕèrbàng.	Jènghău shŕèrbàng.
Yàu búyàu gwàhàu?	Yàu búyàu gwàhàu.
báusyăn?	Yàu búyàu báusyăn.
shōujyù?	Yàu búyàu shōujyù.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Chīngwèn jèr fùjìn yŏu méiyou yóujyú?	Chīngwèn jèr fùjìn yŏu méiyou yóujyú?

yóutǔng?	Chīngwèn jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóutǔng?
nèr	Chīngwèn nèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóutǔng?
túshūgwǎn	Chīngwèn nèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou túshūgwǎn?
sywésyàu	Chīngwèn sywésyàu fùjìn yǒu méiyou túshūgwǎn?
Wǒ yàu jì bāugwǒ, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.	Wǒ yàu jì bāugwǒ, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
hángkūng syìn	Wǒ yàu jì hángkūng syìn, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
Tā	Tā yàu jì hángkūng syìn, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
gwàhau syìn	Tā yàu jì gwàhau syìn, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
Tāmen	Tāmen yàu jì gwàhau syìn, swóyi děi dàu yóujyú chyù jì.
Nà nǐ děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyu.	Nà nǐ děi dàu Jūng-shān Lù chyu.
jyàushr	Nà nǐ děi dàu jyàushr chyu.
tā	Nà tā děi dàu jyàushr chyu.
shŕyànshr	Nà tā děi dàu shŕyànshr chyu.
nǐmen	Nà nǐmen děi dàu shŕyànshr chyu.
Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywan buywǎn a?	Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
nèr	Jūng-shān Lù lǐ nèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Shŕyànshr	Shŕyànshr lǐ nèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
jyàushr	Shŕyànshr lǐ jyàushr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Túshūgwǎn	Túshūgwǎn lǐ jyàushr ywǎn buywǎn a?
Nǐ děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyu.	Nǐ děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyu.

shŕwǔlù	Nǐ děi dzwò shŕwǔlù chìchē chyu.
Tā	Tā děi dzwò shŕwǔlù chìchē chyu.
jyǒulù	Tā děi dzwò jyǒulù chìchē chyu.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen děi dzwò jyǒulù chìchē chyu.
Nǐ dzài dìyīge jyēkǒur syàchē.	Nǐ dzài dìyīge jyēkǒur syàchē.
dìchíge	Nǐ dzài dìchíge jyēkǒur syàchē.
Tā	Tā dzài dìchíge jyēkǒur syàchē.
Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú ma?	Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú ma?
sywésyàu	Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr sywésyàu ma?
Yǐsyà sānlwúnchē	Yǐsyà sānlwúnchē jyòu shr sywésyàu ma?
dùngwuywán	Yǐsyà sānlwúnchē jyòu shr dùngwuywán ma?
Yǐsyà gūnggùng chìchē	Yǐsyà gūnggùng chìchē jyòu shr dùngwuywán ma?
Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu yìytáu jyē tsái dàu ne.	Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu yìtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
sztyáu	Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu sztyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu sztyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
shŕyītyáu	Nǐmen hái děi wàng yǒu dzǒu shŕyītyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
Wǒ kàn wǒ háishr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.	Wǒ kàn wǒ háishr dzwò sānlwúnchē ba.
gūnggùng chìchē	Wǒ kàn wǒ háishr dzwò gūnggùng chìchē ba.

nǐ	Wǒ kàn nǐ háishr dzwò gūnggùng chìchē ba.
shŕwǔlùchē	Wǒ kàn nǐ háishr dzwo shŕwǔlùchē ba.
nǐmen	Wǒ kàn nǐmen háishr dzwò shŕwǔlùchē ba.

Chǐngwèn jì dàu Měigwo chyùde

syīn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?	Chǐngwèn jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syīn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
Fàgwo	Chǐngwèn jì dàu Fàgwo chyùde syīn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
bāugwǒ	Chǐngwèn jì dàu Dégwo chyùde bāugwǒ, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
Syībānyá	Chǐngwèn jì dàu Syībānyá chyùde bāugwǒ děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
hángkūng syīn	Chǐngwèn jì dàu Syībānyá chyùde hángkūng syīn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?

Nǐ nèige bāugwǒ yě jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?	Nǐ nèige bāugwǒ yě jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?
Syībānyá	Nǐ nèige bāugwǒ yě jì dàu Syībānyá chyù ma?
jèige	Nǐ jèige bāugwǒ yě jì dàu Syībānyá chyù ma?
Fàgwo	Nǐ jèige bāugwǒ yě jì dàu Fàgwo chyù ma?

RESPONSE DRILL

Chǐngwèn jèr fùjìn yòu méiyou yóujyú?

(yǒu)	Jèr fùjìn yǒu yóujyú.
(méiyou)	Jèr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú.

Jung-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywăn buywăn?

(ywăn) Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywăn.

(bùywăn) Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr bùywăn.

(jìn) Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr jìn.

(hěn jìn) Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr hěn jìn.

(hén ywăn) Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr hén ywăn.

Nǐ děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù ma?

(děi) Wó děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù.

(bù) Wò búdzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù.

Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú ma?

(jyòu shr) Yǐsyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú.

(búshr) Yǐsyàchē búshr yóujyú.

Chǐngwèn jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn,
děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?

(èrshrkwài) Jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē èrshrkwài chyánde yóupyàu.

(shŕwŭkwài) Jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē shŕwŭkwài chyánde yóupyàu.

(sānshrkwài) Jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē sānshrkwài chyánde yóupyàu.

Nìn nèige bāugwŏ yĕ jì dàu Měigwo chyù ma?

(Shŕde) Shŕde. Wŏ nèige bāugwŏ yĕ jì dàu Měigwo chyù.

(búshr) Búshr. Wŏ nèige bāugwŏ búshr jǐ dàu Měigwo chyude.

(búshr) Búshr. Wŏ nèige bāugwŏ shŕ jì dàu Jūnggwo chyude.

Chēngyicheng yǒu dwó jùng?

(Yìbàngbàn) Yìbàngbàn.

(Jènghǎu) Jènghǎu shŕèrbàng.

Yàu búyau gwàhàu?

(Yàu) Yàu gwàhàu.

(Búyàu) Búyàu gwàhàu.

Yàu búyàu báusyǎn?

(Yàu) Yàu báusyǎn.

(Yě yàu) Yě yàu báusyǎn.

(Yé děi) Yé děi báusyǎn.

(Búyàu) Búyàu báusyǎn.

Yígùng shr dwōshau chyán?

(lyòushrkwài) Yígùng shr lyòushrkwài chyán.

(sānshrwǔkwài) Yígùng shr sānshrwǔkwài chyán.

(lyángbǎikwài) Yígùng shr lyángbǎikwài chyán.

(sìchyānkwài) Yígùng shr sìchyānkwài chyán.

(jyǒuwànkwài) Yígùng shr jyǒuwànkwài chyán.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn ta, jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóujyú.

Jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóujyú?
Jèr fùjìn yǒu yóujyú.
Jèr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú.
Jèr fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yǒu yíge yóutǔng.

Nǐ wèn ta, Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn.

Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn?
Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywǎn.
Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr hén ywǎn.
Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr bútài ywǎn.
Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr jēn ywǎn.

Nǐ wèn ta, tā děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù ma.	<u>Nǐ děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù ma</u>? Wǒ děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù. Wǒ búdzwo gūnggùng chìchē chyù. Wǒ syǎng dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù. Wǒ yàu dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù. Wǒ yídìng děi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyù.
Nǐ wèn ta, dzwò jǐlùde gūnggùng chìchē ne.	<u>Dzwò jǐlùde gūnggùng chìchē ne</u>? Dzwò shŕwǔlùde gūnggùng chìchē. Dzwò jyǒulùde gūnggùng chìchē. Dzwò shŕèrlùde gūnggùng chìchē. Dzwò sìlùde gūnggùng chìchē.
Nǐ wèn ta, tā dzài dìjǐge jyēkǒur syàchē.	<u>Nǐ dzài dìjǐge jyēkǒur syàchē</u>? Wǒ dzài dìyíge jyēkǒur syàchē. Wǒ děi dzài dìlyòuge jyēkǒur syàchē. Wǒ chángchang dzài dìsìge jyēkǒur syàchē. Wǒ syǎng dzài dìjyǒuge jyēkǒur syàchē. Wǒ yàu dzài dìbáge jyēkǒur syàchē.
Nǐ wèn ta, yisyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú ma.	<u>Yísyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú ma</u>? Yísyàchē jyòu shr yóujyú. Yísyàchē hái búshr yóujyú. Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu yìtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.
Nǐ wèn ta, jǐ dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu.	<u>Jǐ dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn, děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu</u>? Hángkūng syìn shŕkwai chyán, píngsyìn sānkwai-wǔ.

Hángkūng syìn lyòukwai chyán,
píngsyìn sìkwai-wǔ.
Hángkūng syìn sìkwai chyán,
píngsyìn sānkwaibàn.
Hángkūng syìn wǔkwai chyán,
píngsyìn sìkwai-èr.
Hángkūng syìn lyǎngkwai chyán,
píngsyìn yíkwài.

Nǐ wèn ta, tā nèige bāugwǒ yě jì dau Měigwo chyù ma.

Nǐ nèige bāugwǒ yě jì dau Měigwo chyù ma?
Wǒ jèige bāugwǒ yě jì dau Měigwo chyù.
Wǒ jèige bāugwǒ bújì dau Měigwo chyu.
Wǒ jèige bāugwǒ búshr jì dau Měigwo chyùde.
Búshr. Wǒ jèige bāugwǒ shì jì dàu Fàgwo chyùde.

Nǐ wèn ta, yǒu dwó jùng.

Yǒu dwó jùng?
Yíbàngbàn.
Jènghǎu lyǎngbàngbàn.

Nǐ wèn ta, yàu búyau gwàhàu?

Yàu búyau gwàhàu?
Yàu gwàhàu.
Búyau gwàhàu.
Yàu gwàhàu, yě yàu báusyǎn.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Chíngwen nár yǒu yóujyú?
Yóujyú dzài Jūng-shān Lù.
Jūng-shān Lù lí jèr ywǎn buywǎn.
Bútài ywǎn. Nín kéyi dzwò gūnggùng chìchē chyu.

Dzwò nēilùde gūnggùng chìchē ne?
Dzwò jyǒulù, shírèrlù dōu kéyi.
Chīngwen gūnggùng chìchē pyàu dwōshau chyán yìjāng?
Hěn pyányi. Yìkwai chyán yìjāng.
Yìsyàle gūnggùng chìchē jyou shr yóujyú ma?
Bù. Nǐn hái děi dzǒu lyǎngge jyētour.
Nà wǒ dzwò sānlwúnchē sying busying.
Sying. Sānlwúnchē yé hěn pyányi.

Chīngwen jì dàu Měigwo chyùde syìn dwōshau chyán?
Nín jì pingsyìn ne, háishr jì hángkūng?
Hángkūng děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
Hángkūng syìn chírkwai chyán. Nín yàu buyàu gwàhàu?
Búyàule. Ching nǐ géi wǒ shírkwai chyánde yóupyàu.
Jèige bāugwǒ yě yùng hángkūng jì ma?
Nà tài gwèile. Pingjì jyou sying le.
Yìgùng shr èrshírlyòukwài-wǔ.

NARRATION

Wǒ yǒu yíge hǎu péngyou, tāde jyā dzài Měigwo. Wǒ syáng gěi tā jì yìfēng syìn gēn yíge bāugwǒ. Kěshr wǒmen jyā fùjìn méiyou yóujyú, jyòu yǒu yíge yóutūng. Yóutūng bùnéng jì bāugwǒ. Swóyi wó děi dàu yóujyú chyu. Yóujyú lǐ wǒmen jyā hén ywān, wó děi dzwò Shírwūlù gūnggùng chìchē chyu. Syàle chē hái děi dzài dzóu lyǎng ge jyētǒur tsài néng dàu. Yàushr dzwò gūnggùng chìchē tài máfan, wǒ jyòu dzwò sānlwúnchē chyu. Sānlwúnchē bútài gwèi, jyǒukwai chyán jyòu gòule.

Wǒ bujīdàu jìsyìn dàu Měigwo chyu yàu tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu. Wǒ jyòu wèn jyúywán. Tā shwō "Hángkūng syìn shírkwai chyán, pingsyìn jyòu yàu sānkwaibàn. Nèige bāugwǒ jènghǎu lyǎngbàngbàn. Hángkūng jì děi wùshrsìkwai chyán, ná tàigwèile, swóyi wǒ jyòu yùng pingjì le. Wǒ gwàlehàu, kěshr méiyou báusyān. Tā gěile wǒ yìjāng shōujyù. Yìgùng

chǐshŕlyòukwai chyán. Jīle syìn, wǒ yòu māile èrshr jāng hángkūng yóujyǎn gēn wūshr jāng míngsyìnpyàr, yīnwei wǒ hái you hěn dwō péngyou dōu dzài Fàgwo gēn Syībānyá, wǒ yé syǎng jìsyìn gěi tāmen, swóyi wǒ tsái māile nèmma dwōde hángkūng yóujyǎn gēn mínsyìnpyàr.

Yóujyúde rén dōu hěn máng, kěshr tāmen yě dōu hěn kèchi. Tyāntyan dōu yóu hěn dwō rén dàu nèr chyù māi yóupyàu, hángkūng yóujyǎn, míngsyìnpyàr, yé yóu hěn dwō rén dàu nèr chyù jìsyìn, jì bāugwǒ.

RHYME

Māi yóupyàu,
Jì bāugwǒ,
Yídìng děi dàu yóujyú chyù.
Sānlwùnchē wó syíhwan,
Gūnggùng chìchē jēn pyányi,
Sānlù, wūlù dōu kéyi.
Wǒ syǎng jì syìn dàu Měigwo,
Hángkūng tài gwèi, yùng píngjì,
Gwàhàu syìn yǒu shōujyù,
Búyàu báusyān yě kéyi.
Hángkūng yóujyǎn bútài gwèi,
Míngsyìnpyàr dzwèi pyányi.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Jèr fùjìn yǒu méiyou yóujyú?
(Jèr fùgìn méiyou yóujyú, jèr jyòu yǒu yíge yóutūng.)
Jūng-shān Lù lǐ jèr ywǎn buywǎn a?
(Kě bújìn a.)
Dzwò jílude gūnggùng chìchē chyu ne?
(Dzwò shŕwūlù gūnggùng chìchē chyu.)

Dzài dìjǐge jyēkòur syàchē?
(Dzài dìlyòuge jyēkòur syàchē.)
Yǐsyàchē jyòu shǐ yóujyú ma?
(Nǐ hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu yìtyáu jyē tsái dàu ne.)
Jī dàu Měigwo chyùde syīn děi tyē dwōshau chyánde yóupyàu?
(Hángkūng syīn shǐkwài chyán, píngsyīn sānkwài-wǔ.)
Jèi lyǎngfēng syīn dōu yào hángkūng jī ma?
(Bù, jèifēng jī hángkūng, jèifēng jī píngsyīn.)
Nǐn nèige bāugwǒ yě yào jī dàu Měigwo chyu ma?
(Shǐde. Jèi yùng píngjī.)
Chēngyicheng yǒu dwó jùng?
(Jènghǎu yíbàngbàn.)
Yàu buyào gwàhàu?
(Yàu gwàhàu, yé děi báusyǎn.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following in English)

Jūng-shān Lù yǒu yíge yóujyú, tyāntyan dōu yóu hěn dwō rén dàu nèr chyù jī syīn, jī bāugwǒ. Yé yóu hěn dwō rén dàu nèr chyù mǎi yóupyàu. Yóujyúde rén tàimángle. Kěshr tāmen dōu hěn kèchi.

Jūng-shān Lù lǐ wǒde jyā jēn bújīn, wó děi dzwò gūnggùng chǐchē chyu. Wó yě cháng dzwò sānlwúnchē chyu. Búgwò sānlwúnchē méiyou gūnggùng chǐchē nèmma kwài. Dzài Jūng-shān Lù syàlechē, hái děi wàng yòu dzǒu lyǎngge jyēkòur tsái dàu yóujyú.

Jī dàu Měigwo chyùde syīn tàigwèile. Yīfēng hángkūng syīn děi tyē èrshrkwài chyánde yóupyàu. Gwàhàu jyou gèng gwèi. Búgwò gwàhàu jyou búyung báusyān. Yīnwei gwàhàu yǒu shōujyù.

Wǒ jǐle yīfēng hángkūng syīn, yòu jǐle yíge bāugwǒ. Dōu shǐ jǐdau Měigwo chyùde. Yígùng wūshrjyǒukwai chyán. Jǐle syīn gēn bāugwǒ, wǒ yòu mǎile èrshrjāng hángkūng yóujyān gēn sìzshrjāng míngsyīnpyàr.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese Characters)

UNIT XII

A TRAIN RIDE

Chén Jyā-jyùn and Yáng Jŕ-píng make a trip together to Shanghai. They travel by train. In the first section of the dialogue they board the train and get settled, putting their bags on the hat rack.

In the second section of the dialogue, they talk about their experiences with different modes of transportation and compare their speeds. As the train approaches its destination, they wonder if Yáng's brother will meet them at the station.

DIALOGUE

Jyā-jyùn: Jīr-píng, wǒmen shàng jèilyàng chē ba.

Jīr-píng: Jèilyàng shì tsānchē, wǒmen děi dzwò chyántoude nèilyàng.

Jyā-jyùn: Jīr-píng, nèr yóu lyǎngge dzwòr.

Jīr-píng: Hǎujíle, wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu pángbyār.

Jyā-jyùn: Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba.

Jīr-píng: Hǎu. Syǎusyǐn dyǎr, chē kāile!

Jyā-jyùn: Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shì dàu Shànghǎi chyùde ma?

Jīr-píng: Búshì ba, dàgài shì dàu Hángjou chyùde.

Jyā-jyùn: Nǐ kàn nèijyà fēijī dzěmma fēide nèmma màn a!

Jīr-píng: Hǎusyàng hěn màn, kěshr bǐ hwǒchē kwài dwōle.

Jyā-jyùn: Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu. Nǐ dzwògwo ma?

Jīr-píng: Wǒ dzwògwo háujihwéi, diyítsž shì chyánnyan dzwòde.

Jyā-jyùn: Wǒ dzwògwo chwán. Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár.

Jīr-píng: Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu màn, wǒ bùsyǐhwan dzwò chwán.

Jyā-jyùn: Nǐ kàn, fēngjǐng dwó hǎu a! Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya ma?

Jīr-píng: Wó syǐhwan jù dzài chéng lǐtou, chéng li rènau.

Jyā-jyùn: Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō lóufáng, jyòu shì Shànghǎi le ba!

Jīr-píng: Dwèile. Dàgài dzài yǒu shírfen jūng jyou dàule.

Jyā-jyùn: Nǐ gège yídìng dàu hwochējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?

Jīr-píng: Nǐ fàngsyǐn. Tā bùlái wǒmen yě búhwèi dyōu de.

Jyā-jyùn: Jŕ-pǐng, let's get on this car.

Jŕ-pǐng: This one is a dining car. We have to get on the one in front.

Jyā-jyùn: Jŕ-pǐng, there are two seats over there.

Jŕ-pǐng: Very good, I like best to sit next to a window.

Jyā-jyùn: Let's put our suitcases up on the rack.

Jŕ-pǐng: Fine. Be careful, the train is starting.

Jyā-jyùn: Is that train over there also going to Shanghai?

Jŕ-pǐng: Maybe not. Perhaps it's going to Hangchow.

Jyā-jyùn: Look at that airplane. Why is it flying so slowly?

Jŕ-pǐng: It seems slow, but it's much faster than the train.

Jyā-jyùn: It must be very comfortable to ride in an airplane. Have you ever been in one?

Jŕ-pǐng: I have been in one quite a few times. The first time I did was the year before last.

Jyā-jyùn: I have been on a boat. I believe it's fun to travel by boat.

Jŕ-pǐng: The boat is slower than both the plane and the train. I don't like it.

Jyā-jyùn: Look, what beautiful scenery. Do you like to live in the country?

Jŕ-pǐng: I like to live in town. There is a lot going on in the city.

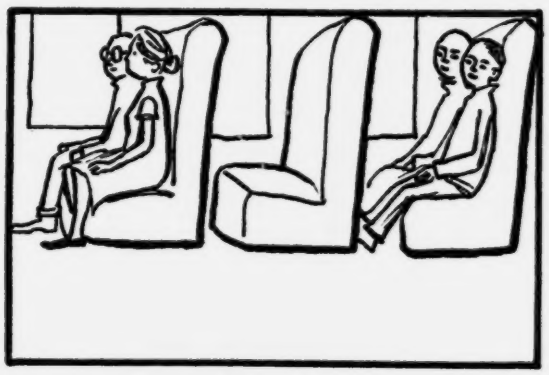
Jyā-jyùn: There are lots of tall buildings over there. That must be Shanghai.

Jŕ-pǐng: Right. In about ten more minutes, we will be there.

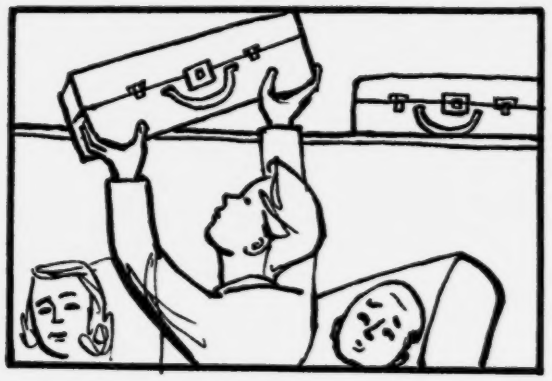
Jyā-jyùn: Is your brother definitely coming to meet us at the station?

Jŕ-pǐng: Don't worry. Even if he doesn't come, we still won't be lost.

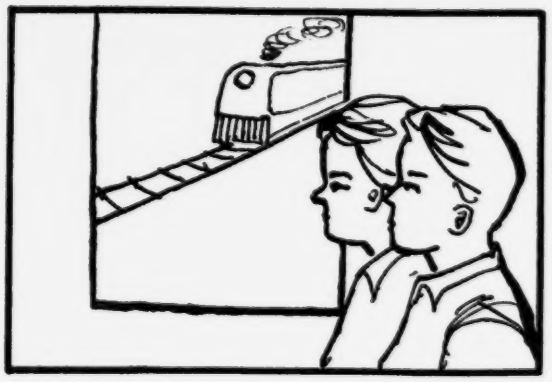
Jŕ-píng, wǒmen shàng
jèilyàng chē ba.
Jèilyàng shŕ...,
wǒmen děi...



Jŕ-píng, nèr yóu
lyǎngge dzwòr.
Hǎujíle, wǒ dzwèi
syīhwan...



Wǒmende syāngdz fàng
dzài jyàdz...
Hǎu. Syǎusyīn dyǎr,
chē kāile.



Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě
shŕ...
Búshŕ ba, dàgài shŕ...

Nǐ kàn nèijyà fēijī dzěmma...
Hǎusyàng hěn màn, kěshr...
Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu. Nǐ...?
Wǒ dzwògwo háujihwéi, diyítsž shr̀...

Wǒ dzwògwo chwán. Wǒ jywéde...
Chwán bǐ...dōu màn, wǒ bùsyíhwan...

Nǐ kàn, fēngjǐng dwó hǎu a. Nǐ...?
Wó syíhwan jù dzài...
Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō lóufáng, ...
Kwàile. Dàgài dzài yǒu...

Nǐ gēge yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái...
Nǐ fàngsyīn. Tā bùlái wǒmen yě...

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

tsānchē	dining car
dzwòr	seat
chwānghu	window
syāngdz	luggage; box; suitcase
jyàdz	shelf; luggage rack
hwǒchē	train
fēijī	airplane
chwán	ship
fēngjǐng	landscape
lóufáng	storied building
hwǒchējàn	train station

2. Place Word

chyán(tou)	front
pángbyār	side
Shànghǎi	Shanghai
Hángjou	Hangchow (a city south of Shanghai)

3. Verb

shàngchē	get on a car (VO)
fàng	put
kāi	start (engine, cf. Unit VII)
fēi	fly
hǎusyàng	seem
jywéde	feel; think
jù	live
jyē	meet (or pick up a person at a terminal or station)
dyōu	lost; be lost

4. Auxiliary Verb

hwèi	will (cf. Unit IV)

5. Co-Verb

bǐ	compare with (see Structural Patterns)

6. Adjective

syăusyĭn	careful
màn	slow
shūfu	comfortable
hăuwár	of fun
fàngsyĭn	rest assured
rènau	prosperous; bustling

7. Time Word

chyánnyan	the year before last year

8. Measure

-lyàng	unit measure for wheeled vehicles
-jyà	unit measure for airplanes
-byār	-side
-tsż	a time; occasion
-hwéi	a time; occurrence

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Time Word

jīnnyan	this year
míngnyan	next year
hòunyan	the year after next year

2. Measure

-jr̄	unit measure for ships

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. V dzài PW construction — S V dzài PW

Dzài has already been presented as a co-verb (Unit III) and a verb (Unit VI). Whereas the adverbial phrase formed by dzài and a place word usually precedes the main verb, such a phrase may appear behind the main verb if the latter is one of a few special verbs, including dzwò (sit) and jù (live).

Wǒ dzwèi syihwan dzwò dzai chwānghu pángbyār.

Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzai jyàdz shàngtou ba.

Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzai syāngsya ma?

Wǒ syǐhwan jù dzai chéng lǐtou.

2. Shì...de construction S shì...de

The shì...de construction is used to emphasize the predicate or a part thereof placed between the shì and the de. The exact part of the predicate thus emphasized depends upon the context. The shì is often omitted.

Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shì dàu Shànghāi chyù de ma?

Búshì ba, dàgài shì dàu Hángjou chyù de.

Diyǐtsž shì chyánnyán dzwò de.

Wǒmen yě shì búhwèi dyōude.

3. The measures -tsž and -hwéi

a. Specified occasions with the measure -tsž or hwéi behave like regular time words indicating the time of the action. They precede the verb concerned:

Diyǐtsž shì chyánnyán dzwòde.

b. Frequency of occurrences with -tsž or hwéi follow the time-spent pattern, and come after the verb:

Wǒ dzwògwo háujihwéi.

c. When an object is expressed, the frequency expression behaves like a measure word appearing between the verb and the object:

Wǒ dzwòle lyǎngtsž hwǒchē le.

Exception: When the object is a person or place, the frequency expression usually stands after the object:

Wǒ dzwótyan kànle tā sāntsž le.

4. Comparison with co-verb bǐ N bǐ N Adj

To express comparison, the co-verb pattern with bǐ (in comparison with) and an appropriate adjective, are used:

Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu màn.

And to express the degree of difference:

(Fēijī) bǐ hwǒchē kwài dwōle. (The plane) is much faster than the train.

Note: With bǐ, the adjectives are almost always in the positive. Hence, "Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu búmàn" usually is not permissible.

5. Topic as subject

Any topic, regardless of its complexity can function as a subject:

Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu. To ride in an airplane must be very comfortable.

Wǒ búchyù bùhǎu. It is bad (if) I don't go. (ProN NegV as subject)

NOTES

Cultural Notes

a. Group outing is quite popular among Chinese students on holidays. For this purpose the Chíng-míng Festival seems to be a favorite occasion. The festival, literally meaning "Clear and Bright," is the traditional time for the Chinese to visit the graves of their deceased relatives with offerings of food and wine. The significance of the practice, which is still observed by many Chinese, stems from the traditional age-honored Chinese respect for the family and ancestral worship. On the calendar the festival roughly corresponds with Easter. The schools declare a spring vacation about that time.

b. The romance of the city of Shanghai is a story worthy of being told in full. Though it is not a very old city, it grew very rapidly during the 19th Century into the largest port on the China coast. It is located on the estuary of the Yangtze River which enables the port of Shanghai to serve

the interior of China. The ships, however, dock on the Hwang-pu River which flows by the city. It has been said that in Shanghai one can find everything, good and bad, that exists on earth. Although the conditions have changed much now, at the height of its commercial life shortly before World War II, Shanghai had a population of over eight million who followed all trades on earth. In Shanghai the western countries established their areas of control, called "concessions," since the middle of the 19th Century. Westerners living in their concessions enjoyed extraterritoriality. These are history now. The concessions were returned to China upon the close of World War II.

c. Travel in China nowadays is aided by the facilities of airplanes, trains, buses and, along the waterways, steamships. In the relatively remote areas, however, automobiles are still rather rare, and people rely heavily upon horses and mules for transport. In the north and northwest, camels are still among the beasts of burden. Wooden sampans ply all the lesser inland waterways.

d. The tradition of railroad transportation in China provided passenger service in three differentiated classes with widely varying degrees of elegance in the train's interior appointment. There were local and express trains. In Taiwan now there are still several types of trains. Seats on "reserved express" and "flying express" trains have to be reserved in advance. On these trains courtesy tea, reading materials, and hot towels are distributed by stewardesses to the patrons. There are also ordinary express and regular trains for which no reservation is necessary. First, second, and third class accommodations, with corresponding degrees of comfort and price, are available on some of these trains. The government operates all major railways. Only a few short lines are controlled by private firms. In the aviation,

steamship, and bus companies, government and private interests seem to be quite equally distributed.

FLUENCY DRILL

Shàngchē.
Shàng jèilyang chē.
Shàng jèilyang chē ba.
Wǒmen shàng jèilyang chē ba.
Wǒmen jyòu shàng jèilyang chē ba.

Fàng.
Fàng dzài shàngtou.
Fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou.
Syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou.
Syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba.
Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba.

Kāile.
Chē kāile.
Syāusyīn, chē kāile.
Syāusyīn dyǎr, chē kāile.
Nǐmen syāusyīn dyǎr, chē kāile.
Chǐng nǐmen syāusyīn dyǎr, chē kāile.

Fēi.
Fēide màn.
Fēide nèmma màn.
Dzěmma fēide nèmma màn.
Dzěmma fēide nèmma màn a!
Fēijī dzěmma fēide nèmma màn a!
Nèijyà fēijī dzěmma fēide nèmma màn a!

Hāusyàng.
Hāusyàng màn.
Hāusyàng hěn màn.
Fēijī hāusyàng hěn màn.
Nèijyà fēijī hāusyàng hěn màn.
Nǐ kàn, nèijyà fēijī hāusyàng hěn màn.

Jywéde.
Jywéde hāuwár.
Wǒ jywéde hāuwár.
Jywéde dzwò chwán hāuwár.
Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hāuwár.
Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hāuwár.

Jù.
Jù lǐtou.
Jù dzài lǐtou.
Jù dzāi chéng lǐtou.
Wǒ jù dzài chéng lǐtou.
Wǒ syǐhwan jù dzài chéng lǐtou.
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan jù dzài chéng lǐtou.

Jyē.
Jyē wǒmen.
Lái jyē wǒmen.
Yídìng lái jyē wǒmen.
Dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.
Yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.
Tā yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.

Dyōu.
Búhwèi dyōu.
Búhwèi dyōude.
Wǒmen búhwèi dyōude.
Wǒmen yě búhwèi dyōude.
Fàngsyīn, wǒmen yě búhwèi dyōude.
Nǐ fàngsyīn, wǒmen yě búhwèi dyōude.

Hwǒchē.
Hwǒchē kwài.
Bǐ hwǒchē kwài.
Fēijī bǐ hwǒchē kwài.
Fēijī hǎusyàng bǐ hwǒchē kwài.
Nèijyà fēijī hǎusyàng bǐ hwǒchē kwài.
Nèijyà fēijī hǎusyàng bǐ hwǒchē kwài dwōle.

Shūfu.
Chwán shūfu.
Dzwò chwán shūfu.
Dzwò chwán hěn shūfu.
Dzwò chwán yídìng hěn shūfu.
Dzwò chwán bǐ dzwò hwǒchē shūfu.
Dzwò chwán yídìng bǐ dzwò hwǒchē shūfu.

Pángbyār.
Pángbyārde dzwòr.
Chwānghu pángbyārde dzwòr.
Dzwò chwānghu pángbyārde dzwòr.
Syǐhwan dzwò Chwānghu pángbyārde dzwòr.
Dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò chwānghu pángbyārde dzwòr.
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò chwānghu pángbyārde dzwòr.

Tsānchē.
Nèilyang tsānchē.
Chyántoude nèilyang tsānchē.
Shàng chyántoude nèilyang tsānchē.
Wǒmen shàng chyántoude nèilyang tsānchē.
Wǒmen shàng chyántoude nèilyang tsānchē ba.
Wǒmen dōu shàng chyántoude nèilyang tsānchē ba.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr̄ — Sywésheng

S V dzài Pos N

Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu pángbyār.
Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba.
Nǐ syīhwan jù dzài syāngsya ma?
Wǒ syīhwan jù dzài chéng lǐtou.
Nǐ byé dzwò dzài nèige yǐdz shang.
Tā jù dzài lóushàng ma?

S shr̀...de

Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shr dàu Shànghǎi chyùde ma?
Búshrde. Dàgài shr dàu Hángjou chyùde.
Dìyītsz̀ shr chyánnyan dzwòde.
Nèijr̄ chyānbǐ shr tā mǎide.
Jèige lǐ shr tā sùngde.
Jīntyande fàn shr tā dzwòde.

The Measures -tsz̀ and -hwéi

Dìyītsz̀ shr̀ chyánnyan dzwòde.
Jèi shr̀ tā dìyītsz̀ chànggēr.
Jèi shr̀ wǒ dièrtsz̀ dzwò chwán.
Tā yǐjing dzwòle sāntsz̀ hwǒchē le.
Wǒ dzwótyan kànle lyǎngtsz dyànyǐngr.
Jèi shr̀ wǒmen dìwǔtsz̀ dàu Měigwo lái.

Wǒ dzwògwo háujihwéi.
Tā láigwo háujihwéi.
Wǒ jyòu chyùgwo yìhwéi.
Tāmen chīgwo háujīhwéi Jūnggwo fàn.
Wǒ yìhwéi dōu méikàngwo.
Nǐ dàu syāngsya chyùgwo jǐhwéi?

Wǒ dzwòle lyǎngtsž hwǒchē le.
Tā láigwo lyǎngtsž le.
Nǐ dàu ner chyùgwo jǐtsž le?
Tāmen dzwògwo háujitsž le.
Wǒmen chīgwo lyòutsž le.
Wǒ chyùnyan dzwògwo yǐtsž.

N bǐ N Adj

Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu màn.
Měi-fāng bǐ Mǎ-lì pàng.
Jŕ-ping bǐ Hwá-míng shòu.
Gāngbǐ bǐ chyānbǐ hǎu.
Gūnggùng chìchē bǐ sānlwúnchē kwài.
Yíngwen bǐ Jūngwen nán.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Wǒmen shàng jèilyàng chē ba.

Wǒmen shàng jèilyàng chē ba.
nèilyàng — Wǒmen shàng nèilyàng chē ba.
dìyīlyàng — Wǒmen shàng dìyīlyàng chē ba.
pángbyārde — Wǒmen shàng pángbyārde chē ba.
chyántoude — Wǒmen shàng chyántoude chē ba.
dìjyǒulyàng — Wǒmen shàng dìjyǒulyàng chē ba.

Wǒmen děi dzwò chyántoude nèilyàng.

Wǒmen děi dzwò chyántoude nèilyàng.
pángbyārde — Wǒmen děi dzwò pángbyārde nèilyàng.

dzwǒbyārde Wǒmen děi dzwò dzwǒbyārde nèilyàng.
yòubyārde Wǒmen děi dzwò yòubyārde nèilyàng.
nèibyārde Wǒmen děi dzwò nèibyārde nèilyang.

Nèr yóu lyǎngge dzwòr. Nèr yóu lyǎngge dzwòr.
yīdz Nèr yóu lyǎngge yīdz.
rén Nèr yóu lyǎngge rén.
bāugwǒ Nèr yóu lyǎngge bāugwǒ.
shūjyàdz Nèr yóu lyǎngge shūjyàdz.

Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu dzài chwānghu pángbyār. Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu pángbyār.
nèibyār Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu nèibyār.
jèibyār Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu jèibyār.
dzwǒbyār Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu dzwǒbyār.
yòubyār Wǒ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu yòubyār.

Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba. Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba.
dzwǒbyār Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz dzwǒbyār ba.
yòubyār Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz yòubyār ba.
jèibyār Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz jèibyār ba.
nèibyār Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz nèibyār ba.

Syăusyīn dyăr, chē kāile.	Syăusyīn dyăr, chē kāile.
chwán	Syăusyīn dyăr, chwán kāile.
fēijī	Syăusyīn dyăr, fēijī kāile.
chìchē	Syăusyīn dyăr, chìchē kāile.
hwŏchē	Syăusyīn dyăr, hwŏchē kāile.

Nèibyārde hwŏchē yĕ shr dàu Shànghăi chyùde ma?	Nèibyārde hwŏchē yĕ shr dàu Shànghăi chyùde ma?
chìchē	Nèibyārde chìchē yĕ shr dàu Shànghăi chyùde ma?
chwán	Nèibyārde chwán yĕ shr dàu Shànghăi chyùde ma?
fēijī	Nèibyārde fēijī yĕ shr dàu Shànghăi chyùde ma?

Dàgài shr dàu Hángjōu chyùde.	Dàgài shr dàu Hángjou chyùde.
Shànghăi	Dàgài shr dàu Shànghăi chyùde.
nèibyār	Dàgài shr dàu nèibyār chyùde.
sywésyàu	Dàgài shr dàu sywésyàu chyùde.
dzwŏbyār	Dàgài shr dàu dzwŏbyār chyùde.
yòubyār	Dàgài shr dàu yòubyār chyùde.

Dzwò fēijī yídìng hĕn shūfu.	Dzwò fēijī yídìng hĕn shūfu.
chwán	Dzwò chwán yídìng hĕn shūfu.
hwŏchē	Dzwò hwŏchē yídìng hĕn shūfu.
sānlwúnchē	Dzwò sānlwúnchē yídìng hĕn shūfu.
gūnggùng chìchē	Dzwò gūnggùng chìchē yídìng hĕn shūfu.

Nǐ dzwògwo ma?	Nǐ dzwògwo ma?
kàngwo	Nǐ kàngwo ma?
tīnggwo	Nǐ tīnggwo ma?
chīgwo	Nǐ chīgwo ma?
hēgwo	Nǐ hēgwo ma?
jǎugwo	Nǐ jǎugwo ma?
Dìyītž shǐ chyánnyan dzwòde.	Dìyītž shǐ chyánnyan dzwòde.
chyùnyan	Dìyītž shǐ chyùnyan dzwòde.
jīnnyan	Dìyītž shǐ jīnnyan dzwòde.
Jyǒuywe	Dìyītž shǐ Jyǒuywe dzwòde.
Lǐbàilyòu	Dìyītž shǐ Lǐbàilyòu dzwòde.
èrshrhàu	Dìyītž shǐ èrshrhàu dzwòde.
Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár.	Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár.
fēijī	Wǒ jywéde dzwò fēijī hén hǎuwár.
hwǒchē	Wǒ jywéde dzwò hwǒchē hén hǎuwár.
sānlwúnchē	Wǒ jywéde dzwò sānlwúnchē hén hǎuwár.
gūnggùng chìchē	Wǒ jywéde dzwò gūnggùng chìchē hén hǎuwár.
Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu màn.	Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu màn.
shūfu	Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu shūfu.
gwèi.	Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu gwèi.
pyányi	Chwán bǐ hwǒchē gēn fēijī dōu pyányi.
Nǐ shǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya ma?	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya ma?
chéng lǐtou	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài chéng lǐtou ma?
jèr	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài jèr ma?

nèr	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài nèr ma?
lóushàng	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài lóushàng ma?
lóusyà	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài lóusyà ma?
Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō lóufáng.	Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō lóufáng.
shū	Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō shū.
chyānbǐ	Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō chyānbǐ.
máubǐ	Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō máubǐ.
dìdyǎn.	Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō dìdyǎn.
jwōdz	Nèibyār yóu hěn dwō jwōdz.
Dàgài dzài yōu shŕfēn jūng jyòu dàule.	Dàgài dzài yōu shŕfen jūng jyòu dàule.
chǐfen	Dàgài dzài yōu chǐfen jūng jyòu dàule.
yíkè	Dàgài dzài yōu yíkè jūng jyòu dàule.
èrshrwǔfen	Dàgài dzài yōu èrshrwǔfen jūng jyòu dàule.
shŕsānfen	Dàgài dzài yōu shŕsānfen jūng jyòu dàule.
jyǒufen	Dàgài dzài yóu jyǒufen jūng jyòu dàule.
Nǐ gēge yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?	Nǐ gēge yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?
dìdi	Nǐ dìdi yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?
mèimei	Nǐ mèimei yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?
jyějye	Nǐ jyějye yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?

jyěfu	Nǐ jyěfu yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?
bàba	Nǐ bàba yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Wǒmen shàng jèilyàng chē ba.	Wǒmen shàng jèilyang chē ba.
nèilyàng	Wǒmen shàng nèilyàng chē ba.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen shàng nèilyàng chē ba.
chyántoude	Nǐmen shàng chyántoude chē ba.
Nǐ	Nǐ shàng chyántoude chē ba.
Wǒmen děi dzwò chyántoude nèilyàng.	Wǒmen děi dzwò chyántoude nèilyàng.
pángbyārde	Wǒmen děi dzwò pángbyārde nèilyàng.
Nǐ	Nǐ děi dzwò pángbyārde nèilyàng.
yòubyārde	Nǐ děi dzwò yòubyārde nèilyàng.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen děi dzwò yòubyārde nèilyàng.
Nèr yǒu lyǎngge dzwòr.	Nèr yǒu lyǎngge dzwòr.
sìge	Nèr yǒu sìge dzwòr.
Jèr	Jèr yǒu sìge dzwòr.
jyǒuge	Jèr yǒu jyǒuge dzwòr.
Pángbyār	Pángbyār yǒu jyǒuge dzwòr.
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu nèibyār.	Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu nèibyār.
mén	Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài mén nèibyār.
Tā	Tā dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài jwōdz nèibyār.
yǐdz	Tā dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài yǐdz nèibyār.

Wǒmen	Wǒmen dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài yǐdz nèibyār.
Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba.	Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ba.
pángbyār	Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz pángbyār ba.
yǐshang	Wǒmende yǐshang fàng dzài jyàdz pángbyār ba.
yòubyār	Wǒmende yǐshang fàng dzài jyàdz yòubyār ba.
jǐrfú	Wǒmende jǐrfú fàng dzài jyàdz yòubyār ba.
Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shr dàu Shànghāi chyùde ma?	Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shr dàu Shànghāi chyùde ma?
Hángjou	Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shr dàu Hángjou chyùde ma?
fēijī	Nèibyārde fēijī yě shr dàu Hángjou chyùde ma?
syāngsya	Nèibyārde fēijī yě shr dàu syāngsya chyùde ma?
Dzěmma fēide nèmma man a!	Dzěmma fēide nèmma màn a!
kuài	Dzěmma fēide nèmma kuài a!
dzǒude	Dzěmma dzǒude nèmma kuài a!
Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu.	Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu.
chuán	Dzwò chuán yídìng hěn shūfu.

màn	Dzwò chwán yídìng hěn màn.
hwòchē	Dzwò hwòchē yídìng hěn màn.
kuài	Dzwò hwòchē yídìng hěn kuài.
Dìyītsì shì chyánnyan dzwòde.	Dìyītsì shì chyánnyan dzwòde.
chyùnyan	Dìyītsì shì chyùnyan dzwòde.
Dìertsì	Dìertsì shì chyùnyan dzwòde.
Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár.	Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár.
fēijī	Wǒ jywéde dzwò fēijī hén hǎuwár.
Tā	Tā jywéde dzwò fēijī hén hǎuwár.
hwòchē	Tā jywéde dzwò hwòchē hén hǎuwár.
Tāmen	Tāmen jywéde dzwò hwòchē hén hǎuwár.
Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzai syāngsya ma?	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzai syāngsya ma?
chéng lǐtou	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzai chéng lǐtou ma?
Tā	Tā syǐhwan jù dzai chéng lǐtou ma?
sywésyàu	Tā syǐhwan jù dzai sywésyàu ma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen syǐhwan jù dzai sywésyàu ma?
Nèibyār yǒu hěn dwō lóufáng.	Nèibyār yǒu hěn dwō lóufáng.
shū	Nèibyār yǒu hěn dwō shū.
Jèibyār	Jèibyār yǒu hěn dwō shū.
tsài	Jèibyār yǒu hěn dwō tsài.
Nèr	Nèr yǒu hěn dwō tsài.

Dàgài dzài yōu shŕfen jūng jyòu dàule.	Dàgài dzài yōu shŕfen jūng jyòu dàule.
láile	Dàgài dzài yōu shŕfen jūng jyòu láile.
wūfen jūng	Dàgài dzài yóu wūfen jūng jyòu láile.
wánle	Dàgài dzài yóu wūfen jūng jyòu wánle.
jyōufen	Dàgài dzài yóu jyōufen jūng jyòu wánle.

RESPONSE DRILL

Wōmen shàng jèilyàng chē ma?	
(shàng)	Wōmen shàng jèilyàng chē.
(bùnéng)	Wōmen bùnéng shàng jèilyàng chē.
Nèr yōu dzwòr ma?	Nèr yóu lyāngge dzwòr.
(yóu lyāngge)	Nèr yóu lyāngge dzwòr.
(méiyou)	Nèr méiyou dzwòr.
Nǐ dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzai chwānghu pángbyār ma?	
(syīhwan)	Wō dzwèi syīhwan dzwò dzai chwānghu pángbyār.
(bùsyīhwan)	Wō dzwèi bùsyīhwan dzwò dzai chwānghu pángbyār.
Wōmende syāngdz fàng dzai jyàdz shàngtou ma?	
(kéyi)	Wōmende syāngdz kéyi fàng dzai jyàdz shàngtou.
(bùnéng)	Wōmende syāngdz bùnéng fàng dzai jyàdz shàngtou.
(byé)	Wōmende syāngdz byé fàng dzai jyàdz shàngtou.

Nèibyārde hwōchē yē shr dàu
Shànghāi chyùde ma?

(shì)	Nèibyārde hwōchē yē shr dàu Shànghāi chyùde.
(búshì)	Nèibyārde hwōchē búshì dàu Shànghāi chyùde.
(dàgài shr)	Nèibyārde hwōchē dàgài shr dàu Shànghāi chyùde.

Nǐ kàn nèijya fēijī fēide màn búmàn?

(màn)	Wō kàn nèijya fēijī fēide màn.
(búmàn)	Wō kàn nèijya fēijī fēide búmàn.
(hěn màn)	Wō kàn nèijya fēijī fēide hěn màn.
(tài mànle)	Wō kàn nèijya fēijī fēide tài mànle.
(jēn màn)	Wō kàn nèijya fēijī fēide jēn màn.

Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu ma?

(hěn shūfu)	Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu.
(jēn shūfu)	Dzwò fēijī jēn shūfu.
(tài shūfule)	Dzwò fēijī tài shūfule.
(bùshūfu)	Dzwò fēijī bùshūfu.

Nǐ dzwòguo ma?

(dzwòguo)	Wō dzwòguo.
(méidzwòguo)	Wō méidzwòguo.
(lyǎnghwéile)	Wō dzwòguo lyǎnghwéile.
(chǐhwéile)	Wō dzwòguo chǐhwéile.

Nǐ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár ma?

(hén hǎuwár)	Wō jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár.
(bùhǎuwár)	Wō jywéde dzwò chwán bùhǎuwár.
(hái hǎuwár)	Wō jywéde dzwò chwán hái hǎuwár.
(tài hǎuwárle)	Wō jywéde dzwò chwán tài hǎuwárle.

(jēn hǎuwár) Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán jēn hǎuwár.

Nǐ bùsyihwan dzwò chwán ma?
(bùsyihwan) Wǒ bùsyihwan dzwò chwán.
(syihwan) Wǒ syihwan dzwò chwán.
(dzwèi syihwan) Wǒ dzwèi syihwan dzwò chwán.
(hén syihwan) Wǒ hén syihwan dzwò chwán.
(jēn syihwan) Wǒ jēn syihwan dzwò chwán.

Nǐ syihwan jù dzài syāngsya ma?
(syihwan) Wǒ syihwan jù dzài syāngsya.
(hén syihwan) Wǒ hén syihwan jù dzài syāngsya.
(jēn syihwan) Wǒ jēn syihwan jù dzài syāngsya.
(dzwèi syihwan) Wǒ dzwèi syihwan jù dzài syāngsya.

Nèibyār yǒu hěn dwō lóufáng ma?
(yǒu) Nèibyār yǒu hěn dwō lóufáng.
(méiyou) Nèibyār méiyou hěn dwō lóufáng.

Dàgài dzài yǒu jǐfēn jūng jyòu dàule?
(shŕfen) Dàgài dzài yǒu shŕfen jūng jyòu dàule.
(èrshŕfen) Dàgài dzài yǒu èrshrfen jūng jyòu dàule.
(yìkè) Dàgài dzài yǒu yìkè jūng jyòu dàule.
(chīfen) Dàgài dzài yǒu chīfen jūng jyòu dàule.
(jyǒufen) Dàgài dzài yǒu jyǒufen jūng jyòu dàule.

Nǐ gēge yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma?
(yídìng) Wǒ gēge yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.

bùyídìng) Wǒ gēge bùyídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.

(hwèi) Wǒ gēge hwèi dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.

(búhwèi) Wǒ gēge búhwèi dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, wǒmen kéyi shàng jèilyàng chē ma.

Wǒmen kéyi shàng jèilyàng chē ma?
Nǐmen kéyi shàng jèilyàng chē.
Nǐmen bùkéyi shàng jèilyàng chē.
Nǐmen bùnéng shàng jèilyàng chē.
Nǐmen byé shàng jèilyàng chē.

Nǐ wèn tā, nèr yǒu jǐge dzwòr.

Nèr yǒu jǐge dzwòr?
Nèr yǒu lyǎngge dzwòr.
Nèr yǒu sìge dzwòr.
Nèr jyòu yǒu jyǒuge dzwòr.
Nèr yǐgùng yǒu sānshrge dzwòr.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu nèibyār.

Nǐ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu nèibyār?
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu pángbyār.
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu yòubyār.
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu dzwǒbyār.
Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu jèibyār.

Nǐ wèn tā, wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ma.	<u>Wǒmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou ma</u>. Nǐmende syāngdz fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou. Nǐmende syāngdz búyàu fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou. Nǐmende syāngdz kéyi fàng dzài jyàdz shàngtou.
Nǐ wèn tā, nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shǐ dàu Shànghǎi chyùde ma.	<u>Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shǐ dàu Shànghǎi chyùde ma</u>. Nèibyārde hwǒchē yě shǐ dàu Shànghǎi chyùde. Nèibyārde hwǒchē búshǐ dàu Shànghǎi chyùde. Wǒ bùjīrdau nèibyārde hwǒchē shǐ dàu nèr chyùde.
Nǐ wèn tā, fēijī bǐ hwǒchē kwài ma?	<u>Fēijī bǐ hwǒchē kwài ma</u>? Fēijī bǐ hwǒchē kwài dwōle. Fēijī bǐ hwǒchē kwài yīdyǎr.
Nǐ wèn tā, dzwò fēijī shūfu bushūfu.	<u>Dzwò fēijī shūfu bushūfu</u>? Dzwò fēijī shūfu. Dzwò fēijī hěn shūfu. Dzwò fēijī tài shūfule. Dzwò fējī yìdyǎr dōu bùshūfu.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā dzwògwo fēijī méiyou.	<u>Nǐ dzwògwo fēijī ma</u>? Wǒ dzwògwo háujihwéi le. Wǒ dzwògwo sānhwéi le. Wǒ jyòu dzwògwo lyǎnghwéi. Wǒ hái méidzwògwo ne.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā diyītsì shì shémma shŕhou dzwòde.	Nǐ diyītsì shì shémma shŕhou dzwòde? Wǒ diyītsì shì chyánnyan dzwòde. Wǒ diyītsì shì chyùnyan dzwòde. Wǒ diyītsì shì Jyǒuywe dzwòde. Wǒ diyītsì shì Lǐbaiwǔ dzwòde. Wǒ diyītsì shì chǐdyanbàn dzwòde.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā jywéde dzwò chwán hǎu buhǎuwár.	Nǐ jywéde dzwò chwán hǎu buhǎuwár? Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár. Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán bùhǎuwár. Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán tài hǎuwár le. Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán yìdyǎr dōu bùhǎuwár. Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán jēn hǎuwár.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā syǐhwan bùsyǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya.	Nǐ syǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya ma? Wǒ syǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya. Wǒ bùsyǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya. Wǒ tài syǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya le. Wǒ yìdyǎr dōu bùsyǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya. Wǒ jēn syǐhwan jù dzài syāngsya.
Nǐ wèn tā, dzài yǒu jǐfēn jūng jyòu dàule.	Dzài yǒu jǐfēn jūng jyòu dàule? Dàgài dzài yǒu shŕfen jūng jyòu dàule. Hái yǒu wǔfen jūng jyòu dàule. Dzài yǒu yíkè jūng jyòu dàule.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā gēge shì bushì yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.	Nǐ gēge yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen ma? Wǒ gēge yídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.

Wǒ gēge bùyídìng dàu hwǒchējàn lái
jyē wǒmen.
Wǒ gēge dàgài hwèi dàu hwǒchējàn
lái jyē wǒmen.
Wǒ bùjrdau tā hwèi búhwèi dàu
hwǒchējàn lái jyē wǒmen.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Nǐ shǐ shémma shírhou láide?
Wǒ shǐ dzwótyan wǎnshang láide.
Nǐ dzwò shémma láide?
Wǒ dzwò fēijī láide.
Dzwò fēijī yídìng hěn shūfu ba?
Yòu kwài, yòu shūfu.
Tsúng Shànghǎi lái, yìjāng pyàu dwōshau chyán?
Tài gwèile. Yìjāng pyàu yàu sìbaikwai chyán?
Fēijī bǐ hwǒchē kwài ma?
Fēijī bǐ hwǒchē kwài dwōle.
Nǐ dzwògwo chwán méiyou?
Wǒ dzwògwo háujihwéile. Wǒ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hǎuwár.
Wǒ bútài syǐhwan dzwò chwán, wǒ háishr syǐhwan dzwò hwǒchē.
Hwǒchē yě bútswò, jyòu shǐ tài màn le.
Nǐ jīntyan wǎnshang yàu jù dzài chéng lǐtou ma?
Wó syǐhwan jù dzài chéng lǐtou, chéng li rènàu.
Yé hǎu, wǒmen syàndzài yíkwàr chyù chīfàn ba.

NARRATION

Māma:

Wǒmen dzwótyan wǎnshang jyóudyan yíkè dàule Shànghǎi. Wǒmen dzwòde hwǒchē yòu kwài, yòu shūfu. Dàule hwǒchējàn, Jǐr-píngde gēge yǐjing dzài nèr déng wǒmen le.

Shànghǎi hěn rènau, lóufáng yé hěn dwō. Wǒmen dōu hěn lèi, swóyi wǒmen hái méiyou dàu wàitou chyù wár. Jǐr-píngde

bàba gēn māma dōu hěn kèchi, tāmen dzwòle hěn dwō tsài, yǒu jī, yǒu yú, yé yǒu ròu. Chīle fàn, wǒmen tīngle jījāng chàngpyār jyòu chyù shwèijyàu le. Jŕ-píng yóu lyǎngge mèimei, tāmen dōu hěn pyàulyang.

Jīntyan dzǎushang wǒmen yíkwàr dàu dùngwuywán chyù wárle yítsž. Wǎnshang wǒmen yòu chyù kànle yítsž dyànyíngr, gùshr hǎujíle. Shànghǎide dūngsyi tài pyányile. Shémma dūngsyi wǒ dōu syáng měi, kěshr wǒde chyán búgòu, wǒ jyòu géi nǐ māile yídyár syǎu dūngsyi, gěi mèimei māile yíjŕ gāngbí, gěi dìdi māile yíběn dždyǎn, míngtyan wǒ hái yàu chyù gěi bàba mái dyár jyǒu.

Wǒmen dàgài yàu dzai jèr jù shŕtyan. Wǒmen hái yàu chyù kàn sywésyàu gēn túshūgwǎn.

Bàba máng bumáng? Nímen yě dōu hǎu ma? Mèimeide máuyī dá hǎule méiyou? Dìdide shùsywé kǎude hǎu buhǎu? Wǒ hén syǎng tāmen.

Shŕhou bùdzǎule, wó děi chyù shwèile.

Dzàijyàn.

Hwá-míng

Wǔywe Shŕyihau

RHYMES

Wǒ dzwò fēijī,
Nǐ dzwò chwán,
Tā dzwò hwǒchē chūchyu wár.
Mǎile pyàu,
Shàngle chē,
Dàu Shànghǎi yíkwàr wár.
Lóufáng gāu,
Chìchē dwō,
Hái yóu hěn dwō dà fàngwǎr.
Mǎile dūngsyi,

Kàn dyànyĭngr,
Shànghăi, Shànghăi jēn hăuwár.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Wŏmen shàng jèilyàng chē ba.
(Jèilyàng shr̀ tsānchē, wŏmen dĕi dzwò chyaǹtoude nèilyàng.)
Nĭ dzwèi syĭhwan dzwò dzài năr?
(Wŏ dzwèi syĭhwan dzwò dzài chwānghu pángbyār.)
(Nèibyārde hwŏchē yĕ shr̀ dàu Hángjou chyùde.)
Fēijī bĭ hwŏchē kwài ma?
(Fēijī bĭ hwŏchē kwài dwōle.)
Dzwò fēijī yídìng hĕn shūfu ba?
(Shr̀de, dzwò fēijī hĕn shūfu.)
Nĭ dzwògwo ma?
(Wŏ dzwògwo háujihwéile.)
Nĭ syĭhwan jù dzài syāngsya ma?
(Wó syĭhwan jù dzài chéng lĭtou, chéng li rènau.)
Dàgài dzài yóu jĭfen jūng jyòu dàule?
(Dàgài dzài yŏu shŕfen jūng jyòu dàule.)
Nĭ gēge yídìng dàu hwŏchējàn lái jyē wŏmen ma?
(Nĭ fàngsyĭn. Tā bùlái, wŏmen yĕ búhwèi dyōude.)
Nĭ diyĭtsž shr̀ shémma shŕhou dzwòde?
(Wŏ diyĭtsž shr̀ chyánnyan dzwòde.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following in English)

Jāng Měi-fāng hén yŏu chyán, tā chángchang dzwò fēijī dàu Shànghăi chyù. Tāmen yŏu chìchē, yé yŏu lóufáng.

Wŏmen dōu syĭhwan dzwò hwŏchē. Hwŏchē yòu shūfu, yòu pyányi. Wó yĕ dzwògwo jĭtsž chwán. Wŏ diyĭtsž shr̀ chyánnyan dzwòde. Wŏ jywéde dzwò chwán hén hăuwár. Búgwò chwán tài màn.

Wŏmen dàule Shànghăi hwŏchējàn, Jr̀-píngde gēge yĭjing dzài nèr déng wŏmen le. Wŏmen jyòu yíkwàr dzwò gūnggùng

chìchē dàu tā jyā lí chyù le. Tā māma géi wǒmen dzwòle hěn dwō tsài, yǒu jájī, yǒu yú yé yǒu chǐngtsài. Wǒmen dōu chīde hén hǎu. Chīle fàn, wǒmen yòu kànle yìhwěi dyànshì. Tā yóu lyǎngge mèimei, tāmen dōu hěn pyàulyang.

Shànghǎide rén tài dwōle. Dūngsyi hěn pyányi, swóyi wó gěi māma, mèimei, dìdi gēn bàba dōu mǎile yídyǎr dūngsyi. Wǒmen míngtyan yàu dàu dùngwuywán chyù wár, wǒmen yě yàu chyù kàn dyànyǐngr.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese Characters)

UNIT XIII

A VISIT TO THE CLINIC

A patient goes to a clinic. The clerk asks him which department he wishes to consult, and advises him to sign up for special registration because it is a busy day with a long waiting line. The patient first asks for Dr. Lin, but agrees to see any doctor upon learning that Dr. Lin is not on duty that day.

The patient explains his discomfort to the doctor who examines him by looking at his throat and taking his temperature. The patient is concerned over whether he should continue to go to school and to eat as usual. The doctor gives him an injection and warns him not to leave the window wide open when he goes to sleep at night.

DIALOGUE

Jíywán: Nǐn shì kàn nèikē, háishr wàikē?

Bīngrén: Nèikē. Wǒ yàu guà pǔtūng hàu.

Jíywán: Jīntyan bīngrén hěn dwō, nín guà tèbyé hàu ba.

Bīngrén: Hǎu. Nǎ wǒ yàu kàn Lǐn Dàifu.

Jíywán: Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu yǐywàn lái.

Bīngrén: Nǎ swéibyàn shéi dōu kéyi.

Dàifu: Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?

Bīngrén: Wǒ yòu késou, yòu tóuteng. Dàgài shì jāulyángle.

Dàifu: Nǐ bǎ shétou shēnchulai, wǒ kànkan. Nǐ shuō "A..."

Bīngrén: A... Dwèile, wǒ sǎngdz yě yóu dyǎr téng.

Dàifu: Shì a. Nǐde sǎngdz yóu dyǎr jūng ne.

Bīngrén: Yǎujīn buyǎujīn a. Wǒ hái néng dǎu syuésyàu chyù ma?

Dàifu: Nǐ děngje. Wǒ syān gěi nǐ shìshr wēndù.

Bīngrén: Dàifu, wǒ fāshāu fāde gāu ma? Búyung chī shemma yàu ba.

Dàifu: Bùgāu. Nǐ méiyou shemma bìng. Dǎ yìjēn pánni-syīlín jyou syíngle.

Bīngrén: Syèsye nín. Wǒ yǐjing jyuéde hǎude dwōle.

Dàifu: Jèi lyǎngtyān wàitou gānmào hěn lyóusyíng. Nǐ dǎi tèbyé syāusyīn.

Bīngrén: Dàifu, wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma?

Dàifu: Shémma dōu kéyi, kěshr shwèijyàude shíhou byé bǎ chwānghu kāide tài dàle.

Bīngrén: Hǎu. Wǒ gwò jityān dzai lái.

Chinese-Mandarin I

Clerk: Which department do you wish, medical or surgical?

Patient: Medical. I would like to have general registration.

Clerk: There are many patients here today; you should have special registration.

Patient: All right. In that case, I want Dr. Lin.

Clerk: Today is Dr. Lin's day off; he is not coming to the hospital.

Patient: Well, then anyone will do.

Doctor: What seems to be the trouble?

Patient: I cough, and have a headache. Perhaps I've caught a cold.

Doctor: Stick out your tongue; let me look at it. Say "ah..."

Patient: "Ah..." Yes, my throat is a little sore.

Doctor: Right. Your throat is a bit swollen.

Patient: Is it serious? Can I still go to school?

Doctor: Wait. I'll take your temperature first.

Patient: Doctor, is my temperature high? I don't have to take any medicine, do I?

Doctor: No, not very high. Your trouble is not serious. One shot of penicillin will do.

Patient: Thank you. I already feel much better.

Doctor: There's a lot of flu going around these days. You should be specially careful.

Patient: Doctor, can I eat anything I want?

Doctor: Yes, anything, but when you go to sleep, don't leave the window open too wide.

Patient: Fine. I'll come back in a few days.

Nǐn shì kàn...,
háishr...?
Nèikē. Wǒ yàu gwà...
Jīntyan bìngrén hěn
dwō, nǐn...

Hǎu. Nà wǒ yàu kàn
Lǐn Dàifu.
Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan...
Nà swéibyàn shéi
dōu kéyi.

Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?
Wǒ yòu késòu, yòu...

Nǐ bǎ shétou shēn-
chulai, wǒ...
A... Dwèile, wó
sǎngdz yě...
Shì a. Nǐde sǎngdz...

Yǎujīn buyǎujīn a.
Wǒ hái néng...
Nǐ dēngje. Wǒ syān
géi nǐ...

Dàifu, wǒ fāshāu fāde
gāu ma? ...
Bùgāu. Nǐ méiyou
shémma bìng. Dā...

Syèsye nǐn. Wǒ
jèihwěr...
Jèi lyǎngtyān
wàitou...

Dàifu, wǒ shémma
dūngsyi dōu...
Shémma dōu kéyi,
kěshr...
Hāu. Wǒ gwò jītyān
dzài lái.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

nèikē	medical department
wàikē	surgery
bìngren	patient
dàifu	doctor; Dr. (medical doctor)
yīyuàn	hospital
shétou	tongue
sǎngdz	throat
wēndù	temperature
yàu	medicine
bìng	sickness
pánnísyīlìn	penicillin
gǎnmào	flu

2. Verb

syōusyi	rest
késou	cough
tóuteng	have a headache
jāulyáng	catch a cold (VO)
jǔng	swell
shì	try
fāshāu	have a fever
dǎjēn	have a shot (VO)
gwò	pass
shēn	stretch

3. Compound Verb as Complement

Verbs compounded with lái or chyù (cf. Unit X) serve not only as main verbs, but they in turn may appear as complements to certain other verbs, and in each case they are unstressed.

Nǐ bǎ shétou shēnchulai, wǒ kànkan.

4. Co-Verb

bǎ	take hold of (cf. Structural Patterns)

5. Adjective

pǔtūng	ordinary
tèbyé	special
yàujǐn	serious
gāu	high
lyóusyǐng	popular
téng	painful

6. Adverb

yòu	...and also...
tèbyé	specially (cf. Adjective)
búyùng	not necessarily

7. Particle

-je	verb suffix, indicating continuance

8. Idiomatic Expression

jèi lyangtyan	these days
dwèile	that's it! correct!

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

jŕywán	clerk

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Inclusiveness and exclusiveness

To express inclusive ideas, such as "everyone" and "everything," and exclusive ideas, such as "no one" and "nothing," question words plus dōu (all) are used:

(Nà swéibyàn) shéi dōu kéyi.

Shémma dōu kéyi.

2. Continuance with verb-je

The addition of the particle -je to certain verbs (but never shì) prolongs the action of these verbs, either with or without the sentence suffix ne. Verb-je may also serve as an adverb.

Nǐ děngje. (prolonging action)
Mén kāije ne. (prolonging action plus ne)
Kāije chwānghu shwèi. (adverbial)

3. The bǎ construction

Bǎ is used with certain verbs to bring the object to a position before the verb. This generally has the effect of particularizing the object: Wǒ bǎ shū kànle, "I read the book;" Wǒ kàn shū le, "I was reading a book." It is to be noticed that the verb which uses the bǎ construction is most often a resultative compound verb, and that the verbial expression in any case must always have a complement. Hence, one can say wǒ bǎ shū kànwánle, wǒ bǎ shū kànle, but never wǒ bǎ shū kàn. One may think of bǎ as meaning "take...and ..." Wǒ bǎ shū kànwánle would be "I took the book and finished reading it." One of the most common uses of the bǎ construction is in sentences with compound verbs ending in lái and chyù.

Nǐ bǎ shétou shēnchulai.

4. Degree of comparison with yìdyǎr or -de dwō

In Unit X degree of comparison between three or more things with gèng and dzwèi has been presented. Degree of comparison can also be indicated by such words as yìdyǎr (a little) or -de dwō (much), after the adjective.

Wǒ jèihwér yījing jywéde hǎude dwōle. (or hǎu yìdyǎr le)

5. "A little" plus adjective Yǒu (yǐ) dyǎr Adj

Wǒ sǎngdz yé yóu (yi) dyǎr téng. (cf. Unit XI, Structural Pattern 4)

6. Specific relative time with -de shíhou

To be specific in time relationship, a descriptive clause stands just before -de shíhou. The resulting expressions behave like time words.

Kěshr shwèijyàude shíhou byé bǎ chwānghu kāide tài dà.

NOTES

Cultural Notes

Traditional medicine in China consists almost exclusively of herbs to which were added such oddities as cicada's skins and tiger's bones. The medicinal benefits from these articles (for they really have such benefits) were discovered empirically and handed down from generation to generation often by word of mouth and kept as family secrets. When handled by a careful and experienced physician, the proper combination of herbs does produce desired medicinal effect.

Several factors involved in the development of traditional Chinese medicine made its practice somewhat mysterious, often open to abuses, and always falling short of being a truly systematic science. First, the entire concept of the ways things work in the universe had a different basis in traditional China. Since high antiquity the Chinese conceived of the universe as composed of five irreducible elements; water, fire, metal, wood, and earth. Among these elements, one produces another, and in turn one cancels out or destroys another in a cyclical fashion. As all things in the universe are composed of one or a combination of several of these elements, their mutual begetting and destruction account for the growth and decay in nature. In addition, there are two principal forces at work that serve as the moving force behind all changes and growths: The yīn and the yáng forces. Roughly translated, these are the male and female forces. When these forces and elements are in proper, natural balance, things remain in natural harmony. Otherwise, disasters occur, and men take ill. The only remedy would be to restore the proper natural balance by adding what is lacking or reducing what is excessive. The man of medicine thus searches in nature for such items that can adjust the balance of these elements in man.

Secondly, because the traditional Chinese concept of the universe does not differentiate the physical from the metaphysical, the five elements and two principal forces are not taken either as material or as non-material exclusively. In practice they are identified with the five directions (the four cardinal positions plus the center), the five seasons (the four seasons plus the summer solstice), the five tastes (sweet, sour, bitter, acrid, salty), the five organs of the human being (spleen, lungs, heart, liver, kidneys), etc. Consequently, the five elements behave no longer as material elements but rather as classifying agents according to which things in the universe are grouped and identified. The ancient Chinese physicians (and metaphysicians) seized upon the interrelationships thus developed among these myriads of things and structured their theories of curing the ills of man, indeed, ills of the entire universe.

Thirdly, the basic Chinese cosmology encouraged the description of natural phenomena, including the physiology of man, in semi-metaphysical terms which consisted of these symbols representing agents, elements, and forces. The records of these descriptions thus became poetic accounts of mysterious alchemy, decipherable only to erudites familiar with ancient philosophy and mythology. It is a small wonder that there were more men of letters who practiced medicine in China than in any other comparable old culture in the world.

All this adds up to the fact that traditional Chinese medicine is a mixture of poetry, fanciful alchemy, and some down-to-earth grandmother's formulas learned through practical and often costly experiements. When you hear the Chinese herbalist say that the rhinoceros' horn is too cold to be applied to a patient with only a slight fire in him you may be sure that he is not using a language understandable

to the Western physician, but the symbols he uses in describing the effect of the deer's antler on an old man do contain a grain of empirical truth: the deer's horn, when ground into powder and taken with warm rice wine, works as a stimulant that quickens blood circulation and keeps an old man from feeling cold during the winter.

So much for the traditional Chinese medicine. In this unit the patient is actually visiting a modern Western-style hospital which had its beginning in China since the end of the 19th Century. Traditional medicine is not totally abandoned, either in Taiwan or Mainland China. Efforts are made to study traditional medicine with a scientific approach. Some medical students are trying to analyze the herbs and ancient medical theories to ascertain if they can be supported by empirical science. Meanwhile, both traditional and Western medicine are practiced, with the Western medical doctors enjoying a greater popularity in China.

The questions the clerk in a Chinese clinic, Western-style, asks of a patient may not be exactly the same as those asked in an American clinic, but they come very close.

About the warning not to leave the window wide open during the night in the dialogue of this unit, it should be noted that most Chinese houses are not equipped with central heating. In North China, the rigorous weather during the winter months demands heating which is traditionally provided with the kang arrangement. The kang is an elevated platform built of bricks which serves the purpose of a couch during the day and a bed at night. Under the kang fire can be lighted and maintained throughout the winter season to keep it warm. Thus in most regions in China it is essential that one sleeps well under warm cover on cool nights in order to avoid catching cold.

FLUENCY DRILL

Késou.	Yīywàn.
Byé késou.	Dàu yīywàn.
Nǐ byé késou.	Dàu yīywàn chyù.
Chǐng nǐ byé késou.	Syàndzai dàu yīywàn chyù.
Chǐng nǐ byé dzài késou.	Tā syàndzai dàu yīywàn chyù.
Pǔtūng.	Tèbyé.
Pǔtūng hàu.	Tèbyé hàu.
Gwà pǔtūng hàu.	Gwà tèbyé hàu.
Yàu gwà pǔtūng hàu.	Wǒ gwà tèbyé hàu.
Wǒ yàu gwà pǔtūng hàu.	Wó syǎng gwà tèbyé hàu.
Nèikē.	Wàikē.
Kàn nèikē.	Wàikē bìngren.
Wǒ kàn nèikē.	Shì wàikē bìngren.
Wǒ yàu kàn nèikē.	Tā shì wàikē bìngren.
Wǒ jīntyan yàu kàn nèikē.	Tā shì búshr wàikē bìngren?
Dǎjēn.	Gwò.
Dǎ yìjēn.	Gwò jityān.
Dà yìjēn Pánnǐsyīlín.	Gwò jityān lái.
Nǐ dǎ yìjēn Pánnǐsyīlín.	Gwò jityān dzài lái.
Géi nǐ dǎ yìjēn Pánnǐsyīlín.	Wǒ gwò jityān dzài lái.
Wǒ géi nǐ dǎ yìjēn Pánnǐsyīlín.	Wó syǎng gwò jityān dzài lái.
Tóuteng.	Syōusyi.
Wǒ tóuteng.	Jīntyan syōusyi.
Wǒ jīntyan tóuteng.	Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi.
Wǒ jīntyan jywéde tóuteng.	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi.
Wǒ jīntyan jywéde yóu dyǎr tóuteng.	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan dzǎushang syōusyi.

Jŭng.
Jŭngle.
Săngdz jŭngle.
Wŏde săngdz jŭngle.
Wŏde săngdz jīntyan jŭngle.
Wŏde săngdz jīntyan yóu dyár jŭngle.

Jāulyáng.
Jāulyángle.
Tā jāulyángle.
Tā dzwótyan jāulyángle.
Tā dzwótyan wănshang jāulyángle.
Tā dzwótyan wănshang yòu jāulyángle.

Yàujīn.
Yàujīn búyàujīn.
Gănmàu yàujīn búyàujīn?
Nǐde gănmàu yàujīn búyàujīn?
Nǐ jīntyande gănmàu yàujīn búyàujīn?

Shēnchulai.
Shétou shēnchulai.
Bă shétou shēnchulai.
Nǐ bă shétou shēnchulai.
Chĭng nǐ bă shétou shēnchulai.
Syàndzài chĭng nǐ bă shétou shēnchulai.

Fāshāu.
Wŏ fāshāu.
Fāshāu fāde gāu.
Fāshāu fāde gāu ma?
Wŏ fāshāu fāde gāu ma?
Dàifu, wŏ fāshāu fāde gāu ma?

Lyóusyíng.
Hĕn lyóusyíng.
Gănmàu hĕn lyóusyíng.
Wàitou gănmàu hĕn lyóusyíng.
Syàndzài wàitou gănmàu hĕn lyóusyíng.

Shr̀.
Shr̀shr.
Shr̀shr wēndù.
Nǐ shr̀shr wēndù.
Géi nǐ shr̀shr wēndù.
Wŏ géi nǐ shr̀shr wēndù.
Wŏ syàndzài géi nǐ shr̀shr wēndù.

Chinese-Mandarin I

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr̄ Sywésheng

Inclusiveness and Exclusiveness

Nà shéi dōu kéyi.
Tā shéi dōu syīhwan.
Wǒ shémma chē dōu dzwò.
Tā mǎide shémma dūngsyi dōu hén hǎukàn.
Wǒmen shēmma dàdyǎn dōu yǒu.
Tā yānde shémma pyāndz dōu bútswò.
Tā chàngde shémma gēr dōu hǎutǐng.
Wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu syǎng chr̄.
Jūnggwo rén shéi dōu hwèi yùng kwàidz.
Měigwo rén shéi dōu hwèi yùng dāuchā.

Wǒ syàndzài shémma dūngsyi dōu bùsyāng chr̄.
Tā shémma shū dōu méiyou.
Tāmen shémma dōu méikàn.
Nǐmen shémma dōu búyàu ma?
Wǒ shémma bǐjìběr dōu bùmǎi.
Wǒmen shémma tsài dōu bùsyīhwan chr̄.
Nǐ shémma kè dōu méiyùbèi ma?
Wǒ shémma dōu bùjr̄dau.
Tā shémma dūngsyi dou bùsyáng mǎi.
Tāmende shémma dūngsyi dōu hěn gwèi.

S Vje (Ne)

Wǒ dzài jèr dzwòje.
Nǐ dzài nèr děngje.
Tā dzài lóushang shwèije.
Kàije chwānghu shwèijyàu.
Chàngje gēr dàu sywésyàu chyù.
Tāmen tǐngje chàngpyār chr̄fàn.
Wǒmen chwānje jr̀fú yóusyíng.
Tā chwānje pyàulyangde yīshang chànggēr.

Tāmen hēje jyúdzshwěi dzwò syîtî.
Nîmen shì dzwòje chìchē láide ma?
Byé wàngle dàije lǐwù chyù bàinyán.
Nǐ búyàu shwèije kàn dyànshì.
Mén kāije ne.
Tā kànje shū ne.
Wó dăje dyànhwà ne.
Tā băije jwōdz ne.
Tāmen dōu chwānje máuyī ne.
Tā chwēije lăba ne.

S bă O V

Nǐ bă shétou shēnchulai.
Nǐ bă jwōdz băiyibai.
Chĭng nîn bă dždyán géi wŏ.
Wó bă chàngpyār băi dzài nèr.
Chĭng nîn bă dāuchā géi wŏ.
Chĭng nîn bă jèige bāugwŏ chēngyicheng.
Bă syîn sùng dàu yóujyú chyù.
Bă nèiběn dždyán gěi tā.
Bá nîde chyán dōu gěi tā.

S Adjde dwōle

Wŏ jèihwěr yǐjing jywéde hăude dwōle.
Wŏde bìng yǐjing hăude dwōle.
Chìchē syàndzài kwàide dwōle.
Jāng Měi-fāng syàndzài pyàulyangde dwōle.
Wŏ jèihwěr shīfude dwōle.

S V...de shíhou

Chīfànde shíhou búyàu chànggēr.
Nyànshūde shíhou búyàu chī dūngsyi.
Nǐ chyù bàinyánde shíhou yàu dài lǐwù.
Wŏ dàu sywésyàude shíhou yǐjing jyóudyăn le.
Tā dàu hwŏchējànde shíhou pyàu yǐjing méiyŏule.

Wǒ syǎng tāde shŕhou jyòu chyù kàn tā.
Wǒ ède shŕhou jyòu chyù chī dūngsyi.
Tā lèide shŕhou jyòu chyù shwèijyàu.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Nǐn shì kàn nèikē,	
háishr wàikē.	Nǐn shì kàn nèikē, háishr wàikē?
jǎu	Nǐn shì jǎu nèikē, háishr wàikē?
dzài	Nǐn shì dzài nèkē, háishr wàikē?
Nà wǒ yàu kàn Lǐ Dàifu.	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Lǐ Dàifu.
Jāng	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Jāng Dàifu.
Chén	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Chén Dàifu.
Yáng	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Yáng Dàifu.
Jàu	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Jàu Dàifu.
Lǐn	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Lǐn Dàifu.
Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan	
syōusyi, búdàu	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu
yīywàn lái.	yīywàn lái.
nèikē	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu nèikē lái.
wàike	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu wàikē lái.
sywésyàu	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu sywésyàu lái.
fàntīng	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu fàntīng lái.
shŕyànshì	Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu shŕyànshì lái.

Nà swéibyàn shéi dōu kéyi.	Nà swéibyàn shéi dōu kéyi.
nèijr̄	Nà swéibyàn nèijr̄ dōu kéyi.
néiběn	Nà swéibyàn néiběn dōu kéyi.
nèige	Nà swéibyàn nèige dōu kéyi.
shémma	Nà swéibyàn shémma dōu kéyi.
Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?	Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?
téng	Nǐ nǎr téng a?
jūngle	Nǐ nár jūngle a?
Wǒ hái néng dàu sywésyàu chyù ma?	Wǒ hái néng dàu sywésyàu chyù ma?
yīywàn	Wǒ hái néng dàu yīywàn chyù ma?
shŕyànshr̀	Wǒ hái néng dàu shŕyànshr̀ chvù ma?
túshūgwǎn	Wǒ hái néng dàu túshūgwǎn chyù ma?
Shànghǎi	Wǒ hái néng dàu Shànghǎi chyù ma?
Hángjou	Wǒ hái néng dàu Hángjou chyù ma?
Wǒ syǎng gěi nǐ shŕshr wēndù.	Wǒ syǎng gěi nǐ shŕshr wēndù.
tā	Wǒ syáng gěi tā shŕshr wēndù.
nǐmen	Wǒ syǎng gěi nǐmen shŕshr wēndù.
tāmen	Wǒ syáng gěi tāmen shŕshr wēndù.
Hwá-míng	Wǒ syáng gěi Hwá-míng shŕshr wēndù.
Mǐ-lǐ	Wǒ syáng gěi Mǐ-lǐ shŕshr wēndù.
Búyùng chr̄ shémma yàu ba.	Búyùng chr̄ shémma yàu ba.
tsài	Búyùng chr̄ shémma tsài ba.
shwéigwǒ	Búyùng chr̄ shémma shwéigwǒ ba.
bīnggān	Búyùng chr̄ shémma bīnggān ba.
ròu	Búyùng chr̄ shémma ròu ba.

Wǒ jèihwěr yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.	Wǒ jèihwěr yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
syàndzài	Wǒ syàndzài yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
jīntyan	Wǒ jīntyan yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
dzǎushang	Wǒ dzǎushang yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
wǎnshang	Wǒ wǎnshang yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
Jèi lyǎngtyan wàitou gǎnmàu hěn lyóusyìng.	Jèi lyǎngtyan wàitou gǎnmàu hěn lyóusyìng.
chéng lǐtou	Jèi lyǎngtyan chéng lǐtou gǎnmàu hěn lyóusyìng.
syāngsya	Jèi lyǎngtyan syāngsya gǎnmau hěn lyóusyìng.
nèibyār	Jèi lyǎngtyan nèibyār gǎnmàu hěn lyóusyìng.
jèibyār	Jèi lyǎngtyan jèibyār gǎnmàu hěn lyóusyìng.
sywésyàu	Jèi lyǎngtyan sywésyàu gǎnmàu hěn lyóusyìng.
Dàifu, wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma?	Dàifu, wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma?
tsài	Dàifu, wǒ shémma tsài dōu néng chī ma?
ròu	Dàifu, wǒ shémma ròu dōu néng chī ma?
shwéigwǒ	Dàifu, wǒ shémma shwéigwǒ dōu néng chī ma?
yú	Dàifu, wǒ shémma yú dōu néng chī ma?

Wǒ gwò jityān dzài lái.	Wǒ gwò jityān dzài lái.
lyǎngtyan	Wǒ gwò lyǎngtyan dzài lái.
sāntyan	Wǒ gwò sāntyan dzài lái.
yíkè jūng	Wǒ gwò yíkè jūng dzài lái.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Nín shì kàn nèikē,	
háishr wàikē?	Nín shì kàn nèikē, háishr wàikē?
jǎu	Nín shì jǎu nèikē, háishr wàikē?
Tā	Tā shì jǎu nèikē, háishr wàikē?
dzài	Tā shì dzài nèikē, háishr wàikē?
Nímen	Nímen shì dzài nèikē, háishr wàikē?
Wǒ yàu gwà pǔtūng hàu.	Wǒ yàu gwà pǔtūng hàu.
tèbyé	Wǒ yàu gwà tèbyé hàu.
Tā	Tā yàu gwà tèbyé hàu.
Nà wǒ yàu kàn Lǐ Dàifu.	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Lǐ Dàifu.
Jāng	Nà wǒ yàu kàn Jāng Dàifu.
tā	Nà tā yàu kàn Jāng Dàifu.
Jàu	Nà tā yàu kàn Jàu Dàifu.
wǒmen	Nà wǒmen yàu kàn Jàu Dàifu.
Lǐ Dàifu jīntyan	
syōusyi, búdàu	Lǐ Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu
yīywàn lái.	yīywàn lái.
nèikē	Lǐ Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu
	nèikē lái.
Wáng	Wáng Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu
	nèikē lái.
wàike	Wáng Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu
	wàikē lái.
Lín	Lín Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu
	wàikē lái.

Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?	Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?
téng	Nǐ nǎr téng a?
Tā	Tā nǎr téng a?
jǔngle	Tā nǎr jǔngle a?
Wǒ sǎngdz yé yǒu yìdyǎr téng.	Wǒ sǎngdz yé yǒu yìdyǎr téng.
tóu	Wǒ tóu yé yǒu yìdyǎr téng.
Tā	Tā tóu yé yǒu yìdyǎr téng.
Búyùng chī shémma yàu ba.	Búyùng chī shémma yàu ba.
yú	Búyùng chī shémma yú ba.
mǎi	Búyùng mǎi shémma yú ba.
shū	Búyùng mǎi shémma shū ba.
sùng	Búyùng sùng shémma shū ba.
Wǒ jèihwěr yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.	Wǒ jèihwěr yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
syàndzài	Wǒ syàndzài yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
Tā	Tā syàndzài yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
dzǎushang	Tā dzǎushang yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
Tāmen	Tāmen dzǎushang yǐjing jywéde hǎude dwōle.
Jèi lyǎngtyan wàitou gānmàu hěn lyóusyǐng.	Jèi lyǎngtyan wàitou gānmàu hěn lyóusyǐng.
syāngsya	Jèi lyǎngtyan syāngsya gānmàu hěn lyóusyǐng.

Nèi	Nèi lyǎngtyan syāngsya gānmàu hěn lyóusyíng.
sywésyàuli	Nèi lyǎngtyan sywésyàuli gānmàu hěn lyóusyíng.

Nǐ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma?	Nǐ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma?
tsài	Nǐ shémma tsài dōu néng chī ma?
dzwò	Nǐ shémma tsài dōu néng dzwò ma?
fàn	Nǐ shémma fàn dōu néng dzwò ma?

Wó gwò jityān dzài lái.	Wǒ gwò jityān dzài lái.
lyangtyan	Wǒ gwò lyǎngtyan dzài lái.
Nǐ	Nǐ gwò lyǎngtyan dzài lái.
chyù	Nǐ gwò lyǎngtyan dzài chyù.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen gwò lyǎngtyan dzài chyù.

RESPONSE DRILL

Nín shì kàn nèikē, háishr wàikē?

(nèikē)	Wǒ shì kàn nèikē.
(wàikē)	Wǒ shì kàn wàikē.

Nín yàu gwà shémma hàu?

(pǔtūng)	Wǒ yàu gwà pǔtūng hàu.
(tèbyé)	Wǒ yàu gwà tèbyé hàu.

Lín Dàifu jīntyan dàu búdàu yīywàn lái?

(lái)	Lín Dàifu jīntyan dàu yīywàn lái.
(syōusyi)	Lín Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu yīywàn lái.

Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?

(késou...tóuténg) Wǒ yòu késou, yòu tóuteng.

(sǎngdz téng) Wǒde sǎngdz yǒu dyǎr téng.

Yàujīn búyaujīn a?

(yàujīn) Yàujīn.

(búyàujīn) Búyàujīn.

Wǒ hái néng dàu sywésyàu chyù ma?

(néng) Nǐ hái néng dàu sywésyàu chyù.

(bùnéng) Nǐ bùnéng dàu sywésyàu chyù.

Wǒ fāshāu fāde gāu ma?

(hěn gāu) Nǐ fāshāu fāde hěn gāu.

(bùgāu) Nǐ fāshāu fāde bùgāu.

(bútài gāu) Nǐ fāshāu fāde bútài gāu.

Búyùng chī shémma yàu ba.

(búyùng) Búyùng chī shémma yàu.

(yàu chī) Yàu chī dyǎr yàu.

Dǎ yìjēn pánnisyīlín jyou sying le ma?

(sying le) Dǎ yìjēn pánnisyīlín jyou sying le.

(bùsying) Dǎ yìjēn pánnisyīlín hái bùsying.

Jèi lyǎngtyan wàitou gǎnmàu hěn lyóusying ma?

(hěn lyóusying) Jèi lyǎngtyan wàitou gǎnmàu hěn lyóusying.

(bùhěn lyóusying) Jèi lyǎngtyan wàityou gǎnmàu bùhěn lyóusying.

Wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma?

(dōu néng) Nǐ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī.

(dōu bùnéng) Nǐ shémma dūngsyi dōu bùnéng chī.

Nǐ shémma shíhou dzài lái?

(gwò lyǎngtyan) Wǒ gwò lyǎngtyan dzài lái.

(gwò sāntyan) Wǒ gwò sāntyan dzài lái.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā shì kàn nèikē, háishr wàikē.

Nǐn shì kàn nèikē, hāishr wàikē?
Wǒ kàn nèikē.
Wǒ kàn wàikē.
Nèikē wàikē dōu kàn.
Wó syǎng kàn nèikē.
Wǒ jyòu kàn nèikē.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā yàu gwà shémma hàu.

Nǐn yàu gwà shémma hàu?
Wǒ yàu gwà pǔtūng hàu.
Wǒ yàu gwà tèbyé hàu.
Wǒ jyòu gwà tèbyé hàu ba.
Wó syǎng gwà pǔtūng hàu.
Pǔtūng hàu tèbyé hàu dōu kéyi.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā yàu kàn něiwèi Dàifu.

Nǐn yàu kàn něiwèi Dàifu?
Wǒ yàu kàn Lǐn Dàifu.
Swéibyàn shéi dōu kéyi.
Swéibyàn něiwèi Dàifu dōu kéyi.

Nǐ wèn tā, Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan dàubbúdàu yīywàn lái.

Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan dàu búdàu yīywàn lái?
Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu yīywàn lái.
Lǐn Dàifu yìhwěr jyou lái.

Lín Dàifu jīntyan bùyídìng dàu yīywàn lái.
Lín Dàifu jīntyan yídìng dàu yīywàn lái.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā nǎr bùshūfu a?	<u>Nǐn nǎr bùshūfu a?</u>
	Wǒ yóu dyǎr tóuteng.
	Wǒ yóu dyǎr késou.
	Wǒ yóu dyǎr fāshāu.
	Wǒ yòu késou, yòu tóuteng.
	Wǒ dàgài jāule dyǎr lyáng.
Nǐ wèn tā, tāde sǎngdz yé yóu dyǎr téng ma?	<u>Nǐde sǎngdz yé yóu dyǎr téng ma?</u>
	Wǒde sǎngdz yé yóu dyǎr téng.
	Wǒde sǎngdz bùténg.
	Wǒde sǎngdz hěn téng.
	Wǒde sǎngdz téngjíle.
Nǐ wèn tā, yàujīn búyaujīn.	<u>Yàujīn búyaujīn a?</u>
	Yàujīn.
	Hěn yàujīn.
	Búyàujīn.
	Yídyǎr dōu búyàujīn.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā hái néng bunéng dàu sywésyàu chyù?	<u>Nǐ hái néng bunéng dàu sywésyàu chyù?</u>
	Wǒ hái néng dàu sywésyàu chyù.
	Wǒ bùnéng dàu sywésyàu chyù.
	Wǒ dàgài bùnéng dàu sywésyàu chyù.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Chǐngwèn, Lǐ Dàifu jīntyan dàu budàu yīywàn lái.
Dwèibuchi, Lǐ Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, tā bùlái.
Ná swéibyàn shéi dōu kéyi.

Nǐn yàu gwà shémma hàu?
Jīntyande bìngren dwō budwō?
Nà wǒ gwà tèbyé hàu ba.
Tèibyé hàu yé déi děng.
Búyàujìn, wǒ jyòu děng yìhwěr hāule.
Nǐn shì kàn nèikē, háishr wàikē?
Wǒ yóu dyǎr fāshāu, kàn nèikē.
Hāu. Chíng nǐn dzài nèr děng yìhwěr.

Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?
Wǒ yòu késou, yòu tóuteng.
Nǐ bǎ shétou shēnchulai, wǒ kànkan.
Wǒde sǎngdz yé yóu dyǎr téng.
Búyàujìn, nǐ dàgài jāule dyǎr lyáng.
Yùng buyùng chī shémma yàu.
Búyùngle. Dǎ yìjēn pánnisyīlìn jyou syíngle.
Wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma.
Nǐ háishr dwō chī yìdyǎr shwéigwǒ ba.
Syèsye Dàifu. Wǒ gwò lyǎngtyan dzài lái.

NARRATION

Dzwótyan wǎnshang wǒ dzwòle hěn dwō syìtí, yìfen jūng dōu méidàu wàitou chyù wár. Wǒ lèijíle, bùsyǎusyīn yòu jāule dyǎr lyáng. Swóyi jīntyan dzǎushang yòu késou, yòu tóuteng. Wó yě jywéde sǎngdz hěn téng. Wǒ hén dzǎu jyòu dàu yīywàn chyùle. Kěshr Lǐn Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu yīywàn lái.

Jèi lyǎntyan wàitou gǎnmàu hěn lyóusyíng, swóyi yīywànde bìngrén dwōjíle. Wó syáng dzǎu yìdyǎr kàn, wǒ jyòu gwàle tèbyé hàu. Yáng Dàifu hěn kèchi. Tā syān géi wǒ shìshr wēndù, yòu jyàu wó bǎ shétou shēnchulai. Tā shwō wǒde bìng búyàujīn, dàgài shì jāule dyǎr lyáng, sǎngdz yé yóu dyǎr jǔng. Wǒ wèn tā wǒ jīntyan néng bunéng dàu sywésyàu chyù. Tā shwō: "Kéyi chyù, búgwò yàu tèbyé syǎusyīn." Wǒ yòu

wèn tā wǒ chī shémma yàu, tā shwō dà yìjiēn pánnísyǐlín jyòu syíngle. Wǒ yòu wèn tā wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma. Tā shwō shémma dōu kéyi chī, kěshr búyàu chīde tài dwō, tài bǎu. Shwèijyàude shíhou yě byé bǎ chwānghu kāide tài dà.

RHYMES

Jāule lyáng, bùshūfu,
Yòu tóuténg, yòu késou.
Dàu yīywàn,
Kàn Dàifu.
Shìshr wēndù,
Kàn shétou.
Wàitou gānmàu hěn lyóusyíng.
Nǐ děi tyāntyan yàu syǎusyīn.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking:

Nín shì kàn nèikē, háishr wàikē?
(Wǒ kàn nèikē.)
Nín yàu gwà shémma hàu?
(Wǒ yàu gwà pǔtūng hàu.)
Jīntyan bìngrén dwō budwō?
(Jīntyan bìngrén hěn dwō.)
Lín Dàifu jīntyan dàu budàu yīywàn lái?
(Lín Dàifu jīntyan syōusyi, búdàu yīywàn lái.)
Nín yàu kàn něiwèi Dàifu?
(Wǒ yàu kàn Lín Dàifu.)
Nǐ nǎr bùshūfu a?
(Wǒ yòu késou, yòu tóuteng.)
Nǐ sǎngdz shì bushì yóu dyǎr téng?
(Wó sǎngdz shì yóu dyǎr téng.)
Wǒ fāshāu fāde gāu ma?
(Bùgāu. Nǐ méiyou shémma bìng.)

Wǒ shémma dūngsyi dōu néng chī ma?
(Shémma dōu kéyi.)

2. Auditory Comprehension: (Retell the following in English)

Jèi lyǎngtyan wàitou gānmàu hěn lyóusyíng. Jǐr-píng yě jāule lyángle. Tā yòu késou, yòu tóuteng. Jīntyan tā yě méidàu sywésyàu lái. Tā dāle dyànhwà gěi wǒ, tā shwō tā yàu dàu yīywàn chyù.

Jǐr-píng dàule yīywàn tsái jīrdau nèrde bìngrén dwōjîle. Tā syáng jāu Lín Dàifu, kěshr Lín Dàifu syōusyi, búdàu yī-ywàn lái. Tā gwàle tèbyé hàu. Búgwò tā háishr yàu děng.

Yáng Dàifu syān kànle tāde shétou, yòu shǐle wēndù. Jǐr-píng dzwèi bùsyíhwan chī yàu, tā wèn Yáng Dàifu yùng buyùng chī shémma yàu. Yáng Dàifu shwō tā méiyou shémma bìng, dǎ yìjēn pánnísyīlín jyòu syíngle.

Dǎle jēn, Yáng Dàifu shwō: "Shwèijyàude shǐhou byé bǎ chwānghu kāide tài dàle. Nǐ shémma dūngsyi dōu kéyi chī, búgwò búyàu chīde tài bāu."

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese Characters)

UNIT XIV

WATCHING A BALL GAME

Hwá-míng and Jŕ-píng are at a basketball game. They watch the teams warming up in the court and compare their relative strengths and skills.

The second section of the dialogue consists of the two spectators' reactions to and commentary on the game in progress. The red team gets the ball first but the player dribbles the ball too slowly and misses the basket when he tries a shot. The white team now has the ball and scores two points. A few seconds later the guard of the red team is hit in the face by the ball. His eyes are hurt and yet he is still penalized by the referee. Fortunately the penalty yields no score. At the end of the dialogue the scoreboard remains two to nothing.

DIALOGUE

Hwá-míng: Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchāngle.

Jī-píng: Tsáipàn yě láile. Tāmen dōu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.

Hwá-míng: Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, něidwèi syíng a?

Jī-píng: Dōu chàbudwō, méi shémma chàbyé.

Hwá-míng: Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu, pǎude yé bǐ Báidwèide kwài.

Jī-píng: Kěshr tāmen tóulán méiyou Báidwèi tóude jwǔn a.

Hwá-míng: Bǐsài kāishǐle. Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule.

Jī-píng: Nǐ shwō tāmen pǎude kwài, kěshr dàichyóu dàide tài màn.

Hwá-míng: Kàn a! Tóulánle, ...āi, jēn kěsyī, méijìnchyu.

Jī-píng: Wǒ shwōde dwèi ba, Húngdwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba.

Hwá-míng: Hē, Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu a! Nǐ kànjyanle méiyou?

Jī-píng: Chígwài, tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán géi wǔhàur ne?

Hwá-míng: Ai, chyóu dàule Báidwèide shóu lí le.

Jī-píng: Kwài, kwài, kwài. Tóulán a, ...ha, ha, lyǎnfēr!

Hwá-míng: Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi yóu dyǎr jāujíle.

Jī-píng: Àiya, nèige shǒulánde gěi chyóu pèngle.

Hwá-míng: Jēn dǎuméi, tā yǎnjing shòule shāng, tsáipàn hái fá tā.

Jī-píng: Hái hǎu, syìngkwei méifájìnchyu.

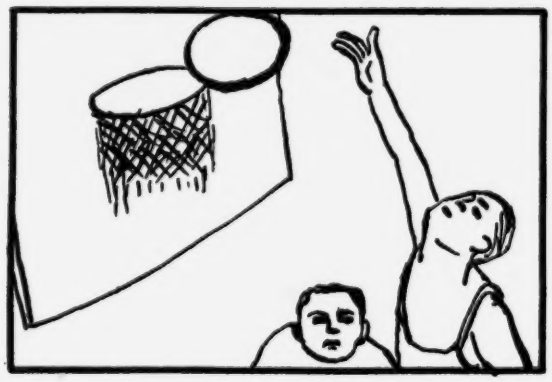
Hwá-míng: Syàndzài hái shǐ èr bǐ líng, shǐ bushǐ?

Jī-píng: Hái dzǎu ne, jèihwěr hái kànbuchū shéi shū shéi yíng ne.

Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu...
Tsáipàn yě láile. Tāmen dōu...
Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, něidwèi...?
Dōu chàbudwō, méi shémma chàbyé.

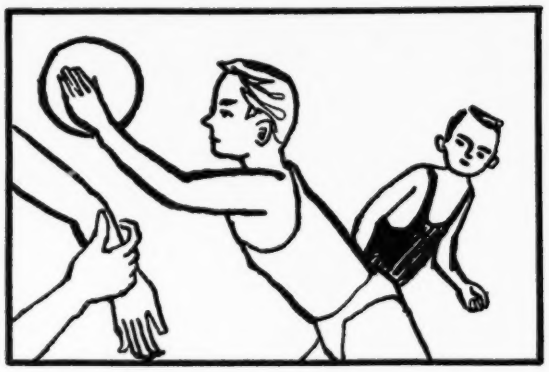
Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu, pǎude...
Kěshr tāmen tóulán méiyou...

Bǐsài kāishǐle. Chyóu bèi...
Nǐ shwō tāmen pǎude kwài, kěshr...



Kàn a. Tóulánle,...
Wǒ shwōde dwèi ba, Húngdwèi...

He, Húngdwèide,
sānhàur...
Chîgwài, tā dzěmma...?



Ài, chyóu dàule
Báidwèide...
Kwài, kwài, ...

Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi yóu
dyǎr...
Àiya, nèige shǒulánde
gěi...
Jēn dǎuméi, tā yǎnjīng...

Hái hǎu, syìngkwei...
Syàndzài hái shǐ èr
bǐ líng, ...?
Hái dzǎu ne, jèihwěr
hái...

Hwá-míng: Both teams are here.

Jŕ-píng: The referee is also here. They have started warming up already.

Hwá-míng: Of the two teams, which one do you think is stronger?

Jŕ-píng: About the same, there isn't much difference.

Hwá-míng: I think the fellows in the red team are taller, and they also run faster than those in the white team.

Jŕ-píng: But they are not as sharp as the white team in shooting the basket.

Hwá-míng: The game has started. The red team got the ball.

Jŕ-píng: You say they run fast, but they dribble the ball too slowly.

Hwá-míng: Look, he is shooting. Oh, what a shame, he didn't score.

Jŕ-píng: What I said was correct, wasn't it. The red team doesn't aim very well in shooting the basket.

Hwá-míng: Hey, No. 3 of the red team jumps really high. Did you see it?

Jŕ-píng: That's strange. Why doesn't he pass the ball to No. 5?

Hwá-míng: Oh, they lost the ball to the white team.

Jŕ-píng: Hurry up, hurry up. Shoot... Ha, ha... two points.

Hwá-míng: Look, the red team is a bit worried.

Jŕ-píng: Oh! The ball hit the guard.

Hwá-míng: Really tough luck. He hurt his eye, and yet the referee still called a penalty on him.

Jŕ-píng: Well, fine. Fortunately the penalty did not score.

Hwá-míng: It's still two to nothing, isn't it?

Jŕ-píng: It's still too early. Nobody can tell yet at this moment who is going to lose and who is going to win.

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

dwèiywán	member of team
tsáipàn	referee
chàbyé	difference
Húngdwèi	Red (uniformed Team)
gèdz	height; physical stature
Báidwèi	White (uniformed Team)
bǐsài	match; contest
chyóu	ball
shǒu	hand
yǎnjing	eyes

2. Verb

chūchǎng	come out to the field (VO)
kāishǐ	begin
lyànsyí	practice; warm up
pǎu	run
tóulán	shoot the basket (VO)
chyángdzǒu	seize and run; rob (RV)
dàichyóu	carry ball
tyàu	jump
chwán	pass
shǒulán	guard the basket (VO)
kànjyan	see (RV)
pèng	hit; meet
shòushāng	get wounded (VO)

fá	penalize
kànchū	discern (RV)
shū	lose (the game)
yíng	win

3. Resultative Compound Verb

The action verbs kànjyan, chyángdzǒu, kànchū, etc. are compounds of two members of which the first or root verb indicates the kind of action involved, while the second shows the result or extent of the action. Hence, chyángdzǒu literally means "to seize and run away." By taking a dē in the middle, a resultative compound verb can express potentiality of the result. A regular resultative verb has the following four forms:

kàndejyàn	(be able to see)
kànbujyàn	(be unable to see)
kànjyanle	(saw or have seen)
méikànjyan	(did not see or have not seen)

Not every resultative verb behaves in all the four ways mentioned above. As to the position of the object, the resultative verb is like any other simple verb in that the logical object may appear in the subject position.

Nǐ kàndejyàn nèige rén ma?

Nèige rén nǐ kàndejyàn ma?

One reliable distinguishing property of the resultative verb that sets it apart from all other types of compound verbs is that it can take a de or bu in the middle.

4. Co-Verb

bèi	by (indicates agent of action)
gěi	by (indicates agent of action)

5. Adjective

syǐng	good (cf. Unit VI)
jwǔn	sharp (cf. Unit VII)
chígwài	strange

dwèi	correct; right

6. Adverb

búdà	not too
syìngkwēi	fortunately

7. Measure

-dwèi	team
-hàur	number
-fēr	point

8. Idiomatic Expression

chàbudwō	almost; about
àiya	(exclamation)
ài	oh
hā	ha
dǎuméi	bad luck
jēn kěsyī	what a pity

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

1. Noun

bídz	nose
ěrdwō	ear
lyǎn	face
twěi	leg
tóu	head
dzwěi(ba)	mouth

2. Co-Verb

jyàu	by (indicates agent of action)
ràng	by (indicates agent of action)

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Co-Verb of agent

The co-verb bèi, gěi, jyàu, or ràng, with agent nouns, is used to point out the agent of an action:

Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule.

In addition to bèi, jyà, or ràng, gěi sometimes also appears immediately before the main verb, without affecting the meaning of the sentence. When the adverb dōu is required, it may stand either before the co-verb, or before the main verb, with no difference in meaning

Chyǒu dōu bèi Húngdwèi gěi chyángdzǒule.

Chyǒu bèi Húngdwèi dōu gěi chyángdzǒule.

Sentences using these co-verbs of agent are most conveniently translated into the English passive voice.

2. Comparison

In Unit XII the co-verb bǐ is used to express comparison. Another form of comparison is:

Jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi hǎu a?

3. Clauses functioning as nouns

Certain modifying clauses, through general use and association, have become fused into single words which function as nouns. These correspond to certain English nouns ending in -er, etc.

shǒulánde (rén)	guard (as in basketball game)
màibàude (rén)	newsboy
dzwòfànde (rén)	cook
màipyǎude (rén)	ticket clerk

Since these expressions behave like nouns, they may be specified and/or numbered in the same manner as other nouns:

Nèige shǒulánde gěi chyǒu pèngle.

Nèr yǒu lyǎngge màibàude.

There are more formal terms for many of these descriptive expressions, as for example: chúdz for dzwòfànde.

NOTES

Culture Notes

a. There were many traditional Chinese games. Archery and charioteering were probably the most ancient; they were

practiced in China centuries before Christ was born. (There is, indeed, a valid comparison with the Homeric world on these matters.) By the time of Confucius, circa Sixth or Fifth Century, B.C., archery and charioteering had already become a part of the basic official curriculum for all students, which also included the study of rites, music, mathematics, and writing - altogether known as the six arts. You may have seen some Han Dynasty relief sculpture that shows the design of Chinese cross bows and chariots. Throwing arrows (darts) into an earthenware vase was another game played in ancient China. Later, around the beginning of the Christian era, the Chinese learned games from the Turko-Mongolian tribes. The polo game became popular. A large variety of past-time games, none too strenuous, prevailed in many parts of China, such as chess, playing grass (several types of this game were known), and, very befittingly among the leisure class, drinking games.

b. A form of bullock or water buffalo fighting has been preserved in many parts of China. Rooster and cricket fights are still seen, though not too commonly now. Some games go with festive seasons, such as dragon boat racing on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month. Playing on swings, kicking balls or shuttlecocks, kept many people busy in China in more recent centuries.

c. Western ball games were introduced into China toward the end of the 19th Century. By the 1920's the students in modernized schools proved themselves to be enthusiasts for these games. Rugby or American football, however, trailed way behind the soccer in popularity. Basketball courts in China are, nowadays, just about as crowded as football grounds, and the Chinese national basketball team has maintained an enviable record in many international tournaments. Tennis is considered a bit aristocratic. Table tennis leads

among many lesser games of Western origin. There has been no baseball craze in China. The game rules used are authentically Western. Quite a few English terms used in ball games have been adopted among the Chinese players without translations.

FLUENCY DRILL

Chūchǎng.
Chūchǎng buchūchǎng?
Dwèiywán chūchǎng buchūchǎng?
Húngdwèide dwèiywán chūchǎng buchūchǎng?
Jīntyan húngdwèide dwèiywán chūchǎng buchūchǎng?

Pǎu.
Kwài pǎu.
Kwài dyár pǎu.
Děi kwài dyár pǎu.
Nǐ děi kwài dyár pǎu.
Nǐmen yé děi kwài dyár pǎu.

Tóulán.
Tóulán jwǔn.
Tóulán tóude jwǔn.
Tāmen tóulán tóude jwǔn.
Kěshr tāmen tóulán tóude jwǔn.

Kāishǐ.
Kāishǐle.
Bǐsài kāishǐle.
Bǐsài kwài kāishǐle.
Bǐsài kwài yàu kāishǐle.
Syàndzài bǐsài kwài yàu kāishǐle.

Dàichyóu.
Dàichyóu màn.
Dàichyóu dàide màn.
Dàichyóu dàide tài màn.
Tā dàichyóu dàide tài màn.

Pèngle.
Chyóu pèngle.
Gěi chyóu pèngle.
Shǒulánde gěi chyóu pèngle.
Nèige shǒulánde gěi chyóu pèngle.

Fá.
Fá tā.
Hái fá tā.
Hái yàu fá tā.
Tsáipàn hái yàu fá tā.

Shū.
Shéi shū.
Kànbuchū shéi shū.
Syàndzài kànbuchū shéi shū.
Syàndzài hái kànbuchū shéi shū.

Chàbyé.
Méi chàbyé.
Méi shémma chàbyé.
Tāmen méi shémma chàbyé.
Tāmen lyǎngdwèi méi shémma chàbyé.

Chyángdzǒu.
Chyángdzǒule.
Chyóu chyángdzǒule.
Chyóu bèi chyángdzǒule.
Chyóu bèi Báidwèi chyángdzǒule.
Nèige chyóu bèi Báidwèi chyángdzǒule.

Chwán.
Chwán géi wǔhàur.
Chyóu chwán géi wǔhàur.
Bā chyóu chwán géi wǔhàur.

Shòushāng.
Shòushāngle.
Yǎnjīng shòushāngle.
Tá yǎnjīng shòushāngle.
Dǎuméi, tā yǎnjīng shòushāngle.
Jēn dǎuméi, tā yǎnjīng shòushāngle.

Yīng.
Shéi yīng.
Bùjīrdau shéi yīng.
Hái bùjīrdau shéi yīng.
Syàndzài hái bùjīrdau shéi yīng.

Gèdz.
Gèdz gāu.
Húngdwèide gèdz gāu.
Húngdwèide dwèiywán gèdz gāu.
Húngdwèide dwèiywán gèdz hěn gāu.

Tyàu.
Tyàude gāu.
Tyàude jēn gāu.
Sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu.
Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu.

REPETITION DRILL

Co-Verb of Agent

Chyóu bèi Báidwèi chyángdzŏule.
Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzŏule.
Tāng bèi tā hēle.
Tsài bèi tā chīle.
Chyóu ràng Báidwèi chyángdzŏule.
Chyóu ràng Húngdwèi chyángdzŏule.
Tāng ràng tā hēle.
Tsài ràng tā chīle.

Chyóu jyàu tāmen chyángdzŏule.
Chyóu jyàu shŏulánde chyángdzŏule.
Nyóunăi jyàu tā hēle.
Jájī jyàu tā chīle.

Chyóu gěi Húngdwèi chyángdzŏule.
Chyóu gěi Báidwèi chyángdzŏule.
Bĭngshwěi gěi tā hēle.
Chăumyàn gěi Hwá-mĭng chīle.
Chăufàn gěi Měi-fāng chīle.

Comparison

Jèi lyǎngdwèi, něi dwèi syǐng a?
Jèi lyángběn shū, néiběn hǎu?
Jèi lyǎngjāng jǐ, něijāng hòu?
Jèi lyǎngjī bǐ, něijī pyányi?
Jèi lyǎngpán tsài, něipán hǎuchī?
Jèi lyǎngjāng chàngpyaī, něijāng hǎutǐng?
Jèi lyǎngbēi chá, něibēi rè?
Jèi lyǎnggre rěn, něige gāu?
Jèi lyǎngge jwōdz, něige dà?
Jèi lyǎngjī gāngbǐ, něijr gwèi?
Jèi lyǎngge yǐdz, něige syǎu?
Jèi lyǎngge dwèiywán, něige pǎude kwài?

Clauses Functioning as Nouns

Shǒulánde shì shéi?
Nèige màishūde shì bushì hěn kèchi?
Tā dìdi shì màibàude.
Nèige dzwòfànde syǐng Lǐn.
Nèr yǒu lyǎngge màibàude.
Nǐ yǒu méiyou kànjyan nèige màitángde?
Wǒ shì chànggērde.
Nèige syáujye shì yǎn dyànyǐngrde.
Nèige màipyàude shì wǒde péngyou.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán

dōu chūchǎngle.	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchǎngle.
láile.	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu láile.
shòushāngle.	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu shòushāngle.
tóulánle.	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu tóulánle.
lyànsyǐle.	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu lyànsyǐle.
lèile.	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu lèile.

Tāmen dōu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.
tóulánle.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ tóulánle.
chǐfànle.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ chǐfànle.
láile.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ láile.
dzǒule.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ dzǒule.
dàichyóule.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ dàichyóule.

Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi syíng a?	Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi syíng a?
hǎu	Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi hǎu a?
kwài	Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi kwài a?
màn	Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi màn a?
gāu	Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi gāu a?

Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu.	Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu.
Báidwèide	Wǒ kàn Báidwèide gèdz gāu.
Tāmende	Wǒ kàn tāmende gèdz gāu.
Mǎ-lìde	Wǒ kàn Mǎ-lìde gèdz gāu.
shǒulánde	Wǒ kàn shǒulánde gèdz gāu.
wǔhàurde	Wǒ kàn wǔhàurde gèdz gāu.

Pǎude yé bǐ Báidwèide kwài.	Pǎude yé bǐ Báidwèide kwài.
Húngdwèide	Pǎude yé bǐ Húngdwèide kwài.
wǒmende	Pǎude yé bǐ wǒmende kwài.
tāmende	Pǎude yé bǐ tāmende kwài.
shǒulánde	Pǎude yé bǐ shǒulánde kwài.
dàichyóude	Pǎude yé bǐ dàichyóude kwài.

Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule.	Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule.
Báidwèi	Chyóu bèi Báidwèi chyángdzǒule.
Jŕ-píng	Chyóu bèi Jŕ-píng chyángdzǒule.
chīhàur	Chyóu bèi chīhàur chyángdzǒule.
shǒulánde	Chyóu bèi shǒulánde chyángdzǒule.
tāmen	Chyóu bèi tāmen chyángdzǒule.

Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba.	Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba.
Húngdwèi	Húngdwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba.
Jyǒuhàur	Jyǒuhàur tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba.
Tāmen	Tāmen tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba.
Nǐ	Nǐ tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba.

Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu a!	Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu a!
báhàur	Húngdwèide báhàur tyàude jēn gāu a!
shŕèrhàur	Húngdwèide shŕèrhàur tyàude jēn gāu a!
sìzhàur	Húngdwèide sìzhàur tyàude jēn gāu a!
èrshrsānhàur	Húngdwèide èrshrsānhàur tyàude jēn gāu a!

Tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán géi wǔhàur ne?	Tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán géi wǔhàur ne?
jyǒuhàur	Tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán géi jyǒuhàur ne?
lyòuhàur	Tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán gěi lyòuhàur ne?
sìzhàur	Tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán gěi sìzhàur ne?
shŕyihàur	Tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán gěi shŕyihàur ne?

báhàur	Tā dzěmma bùbă chyóu chwán gěi báhàur ne?
Chyóu dàule Báidwèide shóu li le.	Chyóu dàule Báidwèide shóu li le.
Húngdwèide	Chyóu dàule Húngdwèide shóu li le.
tāmende	Chyóu dàule tāmende shóu li le.
wŏmende	Chyóu daule wŏmende shóu li le.
Hwá-mǐngde	Chyóu dàule Hwá-mǐngde shóu li le.
Jŕ-pǐngde	Chyóu dàule Jŕ-pǐngde shóu li le.
Nèige shŏulánde gěi chyóu pèngle.	Nèige shŏulánde gěi chyóu pèngle.
dàichyóude	Nèige dàichyóude gěi chyóu pèngle.
tóulánde	Nèige tóulánde gěi chyóu pèngle.
màibàude	Nèige màibàude gěi chyóu pèngle.
dzwòfande	Nèige dzwòfande gěi chyóu pèngle.
Syàndzài hái shŕ èr bǐ líng.	Syàndzài hái shŕ èr bǐ líng.
jyŏu	Syàndzài hái shŕ jyŏu bi líng.
chī	Syàndzài hái shŕ chī bǐ líng.
èrshr	Syàndzài hái shŕ èrshr bi líng.
shŕlyòu	Syàndzài hái shŕ shŕlyòu bǐ líng.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Lyăngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchăngle.	Lyăngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchăngle.
láile.	Lyăngdwèide dwèiywán dōu láile.
Nèidwèide	Nèidwèide dwèiywán dōu láile.
lyànsyíle.	Nèidwèide dwèiywán dōu lyànsyíle.
Báidwèide	Báidwèide dwèiywán dōu lyànsyíle.

Tāmen dōu kāishǐ lyàn-	
syíle.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.
chūchǎngle.	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ chūchǎngle.
Dwèiywán	Dwèiywán dōu kāishǐ chūchángle.
tóulánle.	Dwèiywán dōu kāishǐ tóulánle.
Shǒulánde	Shǒulánde dōu kāishǐ tóulánle.
Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi,	
nèidwèi syíng a?	Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi syíng a?
hǎu	Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi hǎu a?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi nèidwèi hǎu a?
kwài	Nǐmen kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi kwài a?
Tā	Tā kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi kwài a?
Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide	
gèdz gāu.	Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu.
Báidwèide	Wǒ kàn Báidwèide gèdz gāu.
Wǒmen	Wǒmen kàn Báidwèide gèdz gāu.
shǒulánde	Wǒmen kàn shǒulánde gèdz gāu.
Tā	Tā kàn shǒulánde gèdz gāu.
Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi	
chyángdzǒule.	Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule.
fájìnchyule.	Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi fájìnchyule.
wǒmen	Chyóu bèi wǒmen fájìnchyule.
Kěshr dàichyóu dàide	
tài màn.	Kěshr dàichyóu dàide tài màn.
kwài.	Kěshr dàichyóu dàide tài kwài.
Búgwò	Búgwò dàichyóu dàide tài kwài.
dwō.	Búgwò dàichyóu dàide tài dwō.
Kěsyǐ	Kěsyǐ dàichyóu dàide tài dwō.

Báidwèi tóulán tóude
búdà jwǔn ba? — Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba?
hǎu — Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà hǎu ba.
Húngdwèi — Húngdwèi tóulán tóude búdà hǎu ba.
kwài — Húngdwèi tóulán tóude búdà kwài ba.
Tāmen — Tāmen tóulán tóude búdà kwài ba.

Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude
jēn gāu a? — Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu a.
jyǒuhàur — Húngdwèide jyǒuhàur tyàude jēn gāu a.
Báidwèide — Báidwèide jyǒuhàur tyàude jēn gāu a.
shŕèrhàur — Báidwèide shŕèrhàur tyàude jēn gāu a.
Tāmende — Tāmende shŕèrhàur tyàude jēn gāu a.

Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi yǒu dyǎr
jāujîle. — Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi yǒu dyǎr jāujîle.
Báidwèi — Wǒ kàn Báidwèi yǒu dyǎr jāujîle.
lèile. — Wǒ kàn Báidwèi yǒu dyǎr lèile.
Tāmen — Wǒ kàn tāmen yǒu dyǎr lèile.
mànle. — Wǒ kàn tāmen yǒu dyǎr mànle.

RESPONSE DRILL

Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchǎngle ma?
(dōu yǐjing) — Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu yǐjing chūchǎngle.
(jyòu yàu) — Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán jyòu yàu chūchǎngle.
(kwài yàu) — Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán kwài yàu chūchǎngle.

Tāmen dōu kāishř lyànsyîle ma?
(dōu kāishř) — Tāmen dōu kāishř lyànsyîle.
(yǐjing) — Tāmen yǐjing kāishř lyànsyîle.

(dzǎu) Tāmen dzǎu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.
(kwài) Tāmen kwài kāishǐ lyànsyíle.

Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi něidwèi syíng a?
(Húngdwèi) Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi syíng.
(Báidwèi) Wǒ kàn Báidwèi syíng.
(dōu syíng) Wǒ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi dōu syíng.
(dōu bùsyíng) Wǒ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi dōu bùsyíng.

Nǐ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu ma?
(gāu) Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu.
(bùgāu) Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz bùgāu.
(hěn gāu) Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz hěn gāu.
(tài gāule) Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz tài gāule.

Pàude bǐ Báidwèi kwài ma?
(kwài) Pǎude bǐ Báidwèi kwài.
(méiyou) Pǎude méiyou Báidwèi kwài.
(bùbǐ Pàude bùbǐ Báidwèi kwài.

Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn ba?
(búdà jwǔn) Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwǔn.
(jwǔn) Báidwèi tóulán tóude jwǔn.
(bútài jwǔn) Báidwèi tóulán tóude bútài jwǔn.
(hén jwǔn) Báidwèi tóulán tóude hén jwǔn.

Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude gāu bugāu?
(gāu) Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude gāu.
(jēn gāu) Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu.
(hěn gāu) Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude hěn gāu.
(bùgāu) Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude bùgāu.

Nǐ kànjyanle méiyou?

(kànjyanle)	Wǒ kànjyanle.
(yijing kànjyanle)	Wǒ yǐjing kànjyanle.
(dzǎu kànjyanle)	Wǒ dzǎu kànjyanle.
(méi kànjyan)	Wǒ méi kànjyan ne.
(kànbujyan)	Wǒ kànbujyan.

Chyóu dàule Báidwèide shóu lǐ le ma?

(dàule)	Chyóu dàule Báidwèide shóu lǐ le.
(yǐjing dàule)	Chyóu yǐjing dàule Báidwèide shóu lǐ le.
(dzǎu dàule)	Chyóu dzǎu dàule Báidwèide shóu lǐ le.

Syàndzài hái shì èr bǐ líng ma?

(hái shì)	Syàndzài hái shì èr bǐ líng.
(búshì)	Syàndzài búshì èr bǐ líng.
(yǐjing búshì)	Syàndzài yǐjing búshì èr bǐ líng le.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchǎngle ma?	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchǎngle ma?
	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchǎngle.
	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywán jyòu yàu chūchǎngle.
	Lyǎngdwèide dwèiywǎn hái méichūchǎng ne.
Nǐ wèn tā, tāmen dōu kāishǐ lyànsyíle ma?	Tāmen dōu kàishǐ lyànsyíle ma?
	Tāmen dōu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.
	Tāmen dōu yǐjing kāishǐ lyànsyíle.
	Tāmen dzǎu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.
	Tāmen jyòu yàu kāishǐ lyànsyíle.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, něidwèi sying.	<u>Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, něidwèi sying</u>? Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi sying. Wǒ kàn Báidwèi sying. Wǒ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi dōu chàbudwō. Wǒ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi dōu bùsying. Wǒ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi dōu yíyàng.
Nǐ wèn tā Húngdwèide gèdz gāu bugāu.	<u>Nǐ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu bugāu</u>? Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu. Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz jēn gāu. Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz tài gāule. Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz bùgāu. Wǒ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz bútài gāu.
Nǐ wèn tā, chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule ma?	<u>Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule ma</u>? Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule. Chyóu dzāu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule. Chyóu yǐjing bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule. Chyóu kwài bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒule. Chyóu méiyou bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzǒu.
Nǐ wèn tā, Báidwèi tóulán tóude jwūn bújwūn.	<u>Báidwèi tóulán tóude jwūn bujwūn</u>? Báidwèi tóulán tóude jwūn. Báidwèi tóulán tóude jēn jwūn. Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwūn. Báidwèi tóulán tóude hěn jwūn. Báidwèi tóulán tóude jwūnjíle.
Nǐ wèn tā, Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude gāu bugāu.	<u>Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude gāu bugāu</u>? Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude gāu. Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu. Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude hěn gāu.

	Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude gāujǐle.
	Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude bùgāu.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā kànjyanle ma?	Nǐ kànjyanle ma?
	Wǒ kànjyanle.
	Wǒ yǐjing kànjyanle.
	Wǒ dzāu kànjyanle.
	Wǒ méikànjyan.
	Wǒ hái méikànjyan.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā kàn Húngdwèi yǒu dyǎr jāujǐ ma.	Nǐ kàn Húngdwèi yǒu dyǎr jāujǐ ma?
	Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi yǒu dyǎr jāujǐle.
	Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi dzāu jyòu jāujǐle.
	Wǒ kàn Húngdwèi yǐdyǎr dōu bu jāujǐ.
Nǐ wèn tā, syàndzài hái shr èr bǐ líng ma.	Syàndzài hái shr èr bǐ líng ma?
	Syàndzài hái shr èr bǐ líng.
	Syàndzài dàgài hái shr èr bǐ líng ba.
	Wǒ bùjrdau.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Jr-píng kwài dyǎr jìnlai ba.
Byé nèmma jāujǐ hāu buhau.
Bǐsài jyòu yàu kāishrle, dwèiywán dōu chūchǎngle.
Nǐde pyàu shr dìjǐpáide?
Jēn dāuméi. Wǒde shr dìèrshrsìpáide.
Nǐde yǎnjing hāu, yǐdìng kànde jyàn.
Nǐ kàn jèi lyǎngdwèi, nèidwèi hāu a.
Wǒ syǎng dōu chàbudwō.
Húngdwèide gèdz bǐ Báidwèi gāude dwōle.
Búgwò Báidwèi tóulán bǐ Húngdwèi tóude jwūn.

Dzěmma yikāishǐ chyóu jyòu bèi Báidwèi chyángdzǒule.
NÍ kàn, Húngdwèide chíhàur pǎude jēn kwài a.
Tā dàichyóu dàide yě bútswò.
Tá tóulánle... Jēn kěsyǐ, méijìnchyu.
Kàn a. Chyóu yòu gěi Báidwèide lyòuhàur chyángdzǒule.
Chígwài. Tā dzěmma bùbǎ chyóu chwán gěi èrhàur ne.
Tā dzwèi syíhwan dàichyóule.
Tā pǎude tài mànle, tóulán yòu tóude bùjwǔn.
Wǒ kàn Báidwèi yídìng hwèi shū.
Bùyídìng, syàndzài hái kànbuchū shéi shū shéi yíng ne.

NARRATION

Jūnggwo sywésheng gēn Měigwo sywésheng yíyàng, tāmen dōu syíhwan kàn lánchyóu bísài.

Wǒmen sywésyàude lánchyóudwèi hén hǎu. Dwèiywánde gèdz gāu, pǎude kwài, tyàude yé hěn gāu. Tāmen dōu shì wǒmen sywésyàude hǎu sywésheng. Swóyi wǒmen sywésyàude lǎushī gēn túngsywé dōu syíhwan tāmen.

Dzwótyan wǎnshang wǒ gēn wǒ dìdi chyù kànle yítsž lánchyóu bísài. Wǒmen dzwò dzài dìsānpái. Shémma dōu kàndejyàn. Nèi lyǎngdwèi dōu chàbudwō. Tāmen tóulán dōu tóude hén jwǔn. Wǒ kànbuchū něidwèi sying. Búgwò Húngdwèide gèdz gāu yìdyǎr, tāmen dàichyóu yé bǐ Báidwèide kwài. Kěshr tāmen chwán chyóu méiyou Báidwèide hǎu.

Bísài kāishǐ shǐfēn jūngde shǐhou hái kànbuchū shéi shū shéi yíng. Húngdwèi shǒulánde nèige dwèiywán gěi chyóu pèngle, tāde yǎnjīng gēn bídz dōu shòushāngle. Tsáipàn hái fále tā yíge chyóu. Syíngkwei méifājìnchyu, kěshr Húngdwèide dwèiywán dōu jāujíle. Tóulán dōu tóubujìnchyule.

RHYMES

Báidwèi gèdz gāu,
Húngdwèi dàichyóu hău.
Tóulán jwŭn,
Tyàude gāu,
Lyăngdwèi dwèiywán dou néng pău.
Chyóu gĕi sānhàur chyángdzŏule,
Báhàur lyán gĕi chyóu pèngle.
Yănjīng, bídz shòushăngle.
Syàndzài hái shř èr bī lĭng,
Shéi shū shéi yĭng dōu yíyàng.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Lyăngdwèide dwèiywán dōu chūchăngle ma?
(Dōu chūchăngle.)
Tāmen dōu kāishř lyànsyíle ma?
(Tāmen dōu kāishř lyànsyíle.)
Nĭ kàn jèi lyăngdwèi, nĕidwèi syĭng a?
(Dōu chàbudwō, méi shémma chàbyé.)
Chyóu bèi nĕidwèi chyángdzŏule?
(Chyóu bèi Húngdwèi chyángdzŏule)
Nĕidwèide gèdz gāu?
(Wŏ kàn Húngdwèide gèdz gāu.)
Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude gāu bugāu?
(Húngdwèide sānhàur tyàude jēn gāu a.)
Báidwèi tóulán tóude jwŭn bujwŭn?
(Báidwèi tóulán tóude búdà jwŭn.)
Shéi gĕi chyóu pèngle?
(Nèige shŏulánde gĕi chyóu pèngle.)
Tā fājìnchyule méiyou?
(Syìngkwei méifājìnchyu.)

Syàndzài hái shì èr bǐ líng, shì bushì?
(Hái dzǎu ne, jèihwěr hái kànbuchū shéi shū shéi yíng ne.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following in English)

Dzwótyan wǎnshang wǒ gēn wǒ dìdi dàu chéng lǐtou chyù kànle yǐtsž lánchyóu bǐsài. Nèr rén jēn dwō, hǎude pyàu dōu méiyoule. Syíngkwai wó dzǎu jyòu màile, swóyi wǒmen dzwò dzài dìsānpái, nèr shémma dōu kàndejyàn.

Nèi lyángdwèide dwèiywán dōu bútswò. Gèdz yě dōu hěn gāu. Tāmen dàichyóu dàide kwài, tóulán yě tóude jwǔnjíle. Búgwò tāmen chwán chyóu chwánde hěn màn. Bǐsài kwài wánde shǐhou hái shì èrshrèr bǐ èrshrèr, kànbuchū shéi syíng. Fáchyóu fáde hěn dwō, kěshr shéi dōu fábujìnchyu. Nèige tsáipàn jēn bútswò, pǎude yé hěn kwài, kěsyǐ tài pàngle, swóyi tyàude bùgāu.

3. Reading and Writing (Chinese Characters)

UNIT XV

PLANNING A SUMMER VACATION

Chén Jyā-jyùn and Yáng Jŕ-píng discuss their summer vacation plans. Chén is going to see the Great Wall while Yáng counts on going to Hangchow with his parents. They talk about these places, including Soochow and Tsingtao and what a summer tourist can do there. Chén decides to bring a swimming suit and a camera, but he realizes at the last minute that he has yet to learn how to take pictures with a camera.

DIALOGUE

Jŕ-píng: Shŕhou gwòde jēn kwài a. Syàlībài jyou kāishř fàng shŭjyà le.

Jyā-jyūn: Jīnnyan shŭjyà nĭ dăswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù ma?

Jŕ-píng: Wŏ yésyu hwèi gēn wŏ fùmŭ dàu Hángjōu chyù.

Jyā-jyūn: Nà tài hăule. Wŏ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle lyăngge ywè.

Jŕ-píng: Tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjōu yiyàng - bùlĕng yĕ búrè.

Jyā-jyūn: Dwèile. Búgwò Sūjou wárde dìfang mèiyou Hángjou nèmma dwō.

Jŕ-píng: Jēnde a! Nà nĭ bùsyăng dzài chyù wárwar ma?

Jyā-jyūn: Jīnnyan wó kĕnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár.

Jŕ-píng: Wó fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyŭsyínggwo yítsž.

Jyā-jyūn: Nĭ shwō Chángchéng jēn yŏu yíwànlĭ nèmma cháng ma?

Jŕ-píng: Wó syăng búhwèi ba. Kĕshr rénren dōu shwō "Wànlĭchángchéng."

Jyā-jyūn: Chángchéng lĭ Shànghái yŏu dwó ywăn?

Jŕ-píng: Nà kĕ bújìn a. Dĕi dzwò sān-sžtyānde hwŏchē ba.

Jyā-jyūn: Wŏmen hái dăswàn dàu Chīngdău chyù.

Jŕ-píng: Nèr shŕ bìshŭ dzwèi hăude dìfang. Kéyi dzài hăibyār yóuyŭng.

Jyā-jyūn: Hăujíle. Wó dĕi jìje dài yóuyŭngyī chyù.

Jŕ-píng: Nèr fēngjíng hén mĕi, yōu yŏu shān, yòu yŏu hăi.

Jyā-jyūn: Nà wó dĕi dài jàusyàngjī chyù dwō jàu jījāng syàng.

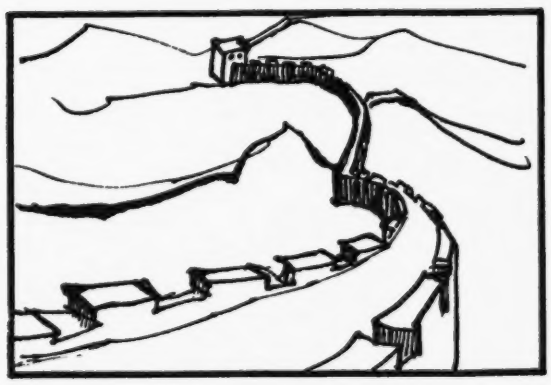
Jŕ-píng: Byé wàngle dwō dài jĭhér tsăisède jyaūjywăr chyù a.

Jyā-jyūn: Hău. Kĕshr wŏ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng, dzĕmma bàn ne?

Shŕhou gwòde jēn
kwài a. ...
Jīnnyan shŭjyà nĭ
dāswàn dàu...
Wŏ yésyu hwèi gēn
wŏ fùmŭ...

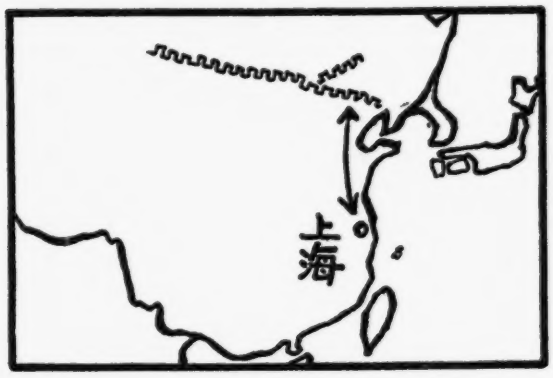
Nà tài hăule. Wŏ
chyùnyan...
Tīngshwō nèrde
tyānchi gēn...

Dwèile. Búgwò Sūjou
wárde dìfang...
Jēnde a! Nà nĭ
bùsyăng...

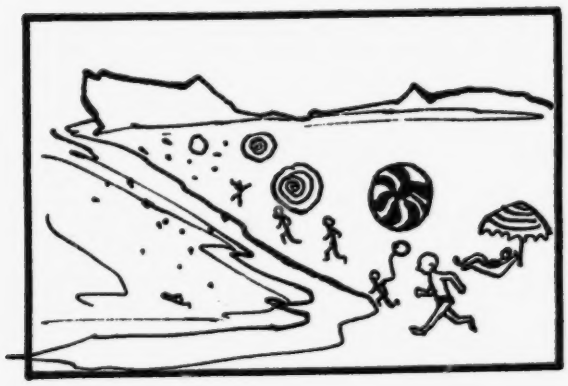


Jīnnyan wó kĕnéng
dàu...
Wŏ fùchin tsúngchyán
dàu...

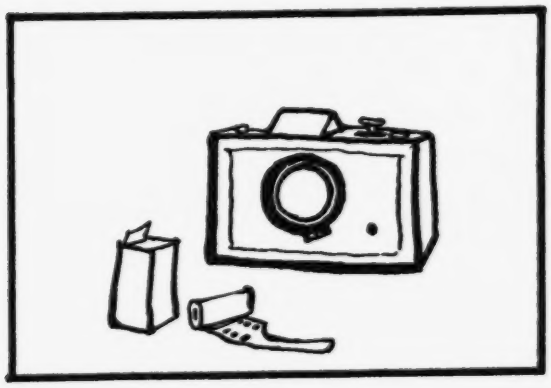
Nǐ shwō Chángchéng
jēn yǒu...?
Wó syǎng búhwèi ba.
Kěshr...



Chángchéng.lǐ Shànghái
yǒu...?
Nà kě bújìn a. Děi
dzwò...
Wǒmen hái dǎswàn dàu...



Nèr shì bìshǔ dzwèi
hǎude dìfang...
Hǎujíle. Wó děi
jìje...
Nèr fēngjǐng hén měi,
yǒu...



Nà wó děi dài
jàusyàngjǐ chyù...
Byé wàngle dwō dài...
Hǎu. Kěshr wǒ hái
méisywéhwèi...

Jŕ-pǐng: Time really flies. The summer vacation is going to start next week.

Jyā-jyùn: Are you planning to go somewhere else this summer?

Jŕ-pǐng: Perhaps I will go to Hangchow with my parents.

Jyā-jyùn: Wonderful. I stayed there for two months last year.

Jŕ-pǐng: I heard people say that the weather there is about the same as Soochow - neither hot nor cold.

Jyā-jyùn: That's correct. But there aren't as many interesting places in Soochow as those in Hangchow.

Jŕ-pǐng: Is that so! Don't you wish to go to spend some time there again?

Jyā-jyùn: This year probably I'll go to see the Great Wall.

Jŕ-pǐng: Once my father made a trip to the Great Wall.

Jyā-jyùn: Do you think the Great Wall is really 10,000 li long?

Jŕ-pǐng: I don't think it could be, but everybody says "The 10,000-li Long Wall."

Jyā-jyùn: How far is the Great Wall from Shanghai?

Jŕ-pǐng: Quite far. It must take about a couple of days by train.

Jyā-jyùn: We also plan to go to Tsingtao from the Great Wall.

Jŕ-pǐng: That's the best place to spend a summer. You can go swimming on the beach.

Jyā-jyùn: Good, I must remember to bring a swimming suit.

Jŕ-pǐng: It's very beautiful there. You can see mountains; you can also see the ocean.

Jyā-jyùn: I must bring a camera to take lots of pictures.

Jŕ-pǐng: Don't forget to bring a few extra rolls of color film.

Jyā-jyùn: Right. But I have not yet learned how to use a camera. What shall I do?

Chinese-Mandarin I

VOCABULARY

1. Noun

shǔjyà	summer vacation
dìfang	place
fùmǔ	parents
tyānchi	weather
fùchin	father
rénren	everybody
hǎibyār	beach
yóuyǔngyī	swimming suit
hǎi	sea
shān	mountain
jàusyàngjī	camera
jyāujywǎr	film

2. Verb

fàng(jyà)	have a vacation (VO)
dǎswan	plan
lyǔsyíng	travel
yóuyǔng	swim
jì	remember
sywéhwèi	learn (RV)
jàusyàng	take a picture (VO)
bìshǔ	escape summer (VO) (pass summer at a summer resort)

3. Place Word

Sūjou	Soochow (a city near Shanghai)
Chángchéng	Great Wall
Chīngdǎu	Tsingtau (a city in Shantung Province)

4. Adjective

lěng	cold
rè	warm; hot
cháng	long (length)
měi(lì)	beautiful

5. Adverb

yésyu	perhaps (MA)
kěnéng	possibly (MA)

6. Time Word

syà(ge) lǐbài	next week
tsúngchyán	formerly

7. Measure

-lǐ	a Chinese lǐ (1/3 mile)
-tyān	day

8. Idiomatic Expression

tīngshwō	they say; I hear people say
jēnde a!	really!
dzěmma bàn ne?	what shall I do?

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Similarity and Dissimilarity

To indicate similarity and dissimilarity between two or more persons or things, the co-verb pattern with gēn (with, and), and the adjective yìyàng (similar, cf. Unit X) in its positive or negative form, are used:

Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yìyàng.
Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou bùyìyàng.
Nèrde tyānchi bùgēn Sūjou yìyàng.

To indicate in what particular respect the two are similar or different, an appropriate adjective follows yìyàng, the latter of which then functions adverbially:

Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yìyàng hǎu.

Another way to approach similarity and dissimilarity is the verb yǒu (be as much as) and jēmma or nèmma (so):

Chángchéng jēn yǒu yǐwànlǐ nèmma cháng ma?
Sūjou wárde dìfang méiyou Hángjou nèmma dwō.

2. Measured objects and single or double -le

A sentence in which the object is measured as to its quantity, may be said with verb -le only, or with both verb and sentence -le. Both constitute finished sentences, but there is a difference. With verb -le only, simple completion at some time in the past is indicated. With both verb and sentence -le, the action of the verb is brought down to the present, and in some way related to it. Contrast the following pair of sentences:

Wǒ (chyùnyán) dzài nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè.
(I lived there two months.)

Wǒ dzài jèr jùle lyǎngge ywè le.
(I have been living here for two months.)

3. Indefinite Numbers

Indefinite numbers like "two or three," in Chinese, use the pattern, "two - three:"

yī-lyǎngge rén
lyǎng-sānběn shū
sž-wǔtyān(de) hwǒchē.

NOTES

Culture Notes

This is a unit where the teacher can bring in much extra illustrative material related to the land and people of China.

China is a land of many regional variations and scenic wonders. Underdeveloped transportation has prevented that country from becoming a major vacationland of the world. Even the Chinese themselves do not have convenient access to most sections of their country.

Take the Great Wall, for example. The Chinese emperor started building it in pre-Christian times to ward off the

invasions by non-Chinese tribes to the north. Various sections of the wall were constructed at different times, and repaired at different times. During the periods when the wall was best maintained, it ran from Shanhaikwan on the Gulf of Chihli to Kiayukwan (Jya-yu Pass) in western Kansu Province, zigzagging a course of over 1,000 miles, or about 3,500 Chinese li, but the round figure 10,000 is commonly used to suggest its awe-inspiring length. Nowadays most of its western sections are in disrepair, with some parts completely reduced to the level of the ground. The section immediately to the north of Peking, however, has been kept up and still stands majestically as a perpetual reminder of the past splendor of the Chinese Empire and its historical chronic fear of the marauding Turko-Mongolian tribes from the north.

There is a folk tale about the building of the Great Wall. It is said that when the Chinese emperor in the beginning of the Second Century, B.C., ordered a grand project to connect the existing sections of the wall into a long wall, many civilians from all parts of China were drafted to work on it. One young man was among the labor gang. His wife, Mêng-jyāng-nyŭ, went on foot to search for him. She nearly died of exhaustion before reaching the Great Wall, and when she arrived there, she could not find her husband. She wept so bitterly that a section of the wall collapsed, yielding a few bleached human bones. Her tears fell on the bones and turned into blood. Whereupon, she recognized that those were the remains of her husband who had toiled to death, like many of his fellow corvée laborers. The story has been written into many folk songs that are still sung today.

Perhaps some day it will become possible for everyone who so wishes to travel freely in China. Then the world

will have the good fortune to see the beautiful West Lake a short distance south of Shanghai, a place so ecstatically described by many classical Chinese poets, or the breath-taking torrents of the Yangtse River Gorges in West China. Some of the mountain regions, particularly in Southwest China, preserve the flora and fauna of all climates, from arctic to tropical, because it is hot and humid in the valley and, 15 or 20 thousand feet immediately above, the peaks remain under perpetual snow.

The old cultural sites in China are always worthy to behold. The palaces in Peking, which is not the oldest capital of China, are carefully preserved. Compared with American standards, every Chinese village house is an antique collection. Much of the folk ways of life in a mountain town or a fishing village will remain with its local flavor and color, perhaps, forever.

FLUENCY DRILL

Fàng.
Fàng shūjyà.
Syàlībài fàng shūjyà.
Syàlībài kāishǐ fàng shūjyà.
Syàlībài jyou kāishǐ fàng shūjyà.
Syàlībāi jyou kāishǐ fàng shūjyà le.

Lyǔsying.
Chyù lyǔsying.
Wǒ chyù lyǔsying.
Wǒ chángchang chyù lyǔsying.
Wǒ tsúngchyán chángchang chyù lyǔsying.

Yǒuyǔng.
Kéyi yǒuyǔng.

Kéyi chyù yóuyŭng.
Wŏmen kéyi chyù yóuyŭng.
Wŏmen kéyi yíkwàr chyù yóuyŭng.

Jì.
Jìje.
Jìje yóuyŭngyī.
Jìje dài yóyŭngyī.
Děi jìje dài yóuyŭngyī.
Děi jìje dài yóuyŭngyī chyù.

Sywéhwèi.
Sywéhwèi jàusyàng.
Méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.
Hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.
Wŏ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.
Kĕshr wŏ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.

Lĕng.
Lĕng bulĕng?
Chīngdău lĕng bulĕng?
Chīngdăude háibyār lĕng bulĕng?

Dìfang.
Hăude dìfang.
Dzwèi hăude dìfang.
Bìshŭ dzwèi hăude dìfang.
Shr bìshŭ dzwèi hăude dìfang.
Nèr shr bìshŭ dzwèi hăude dìfang.

Tyānchi.
Tyānchi lěng.
Nèrde tyānchi lěng.
Nèrde tyānchi hén lěng.
Syàndzài nèrde tyānchi hén lěng.

Jàusyàng.
Jàu jāng syàng.
Jàu jijāng syàng.
Dwō jàu jijāng syàng.
Chyù dwō jàu jijāng syàng.
Wǒ chyù dwō jàu jijāng syàng.

Cháng.
Nèmma cháng.
Yǒu nèmma cháng.
Yǒu yíwànlǐ nèmma cháng.
Jēn yǒu yíwànlǐ nèmma cháng.
Chángchéng jēn yǒu yíwànlǐ nèmma cháng.
Chángchéng jēn yǒu yíwànlǐ nèmma cháng ma?

Měi.
Hén měi.
Fēngjǐng hén měi.
Nèr fēngjǐng hén měi.
Wǒmen nèr fēngjǐng hén měi.

Yésyu.
Yésyu hwèi.
Yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ.
Yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ.
Yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ chyù.
Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ chyù.

Kěnéng.
Kěnéng chyù.
Tá kěnéng chyù.
Tā jīntyan kěnéng chyù.
Tā jīntyan wǎnshang kěnéng chyù.

REPETITION DRILL

Lǎushr̄ — Sywésheng

Similarity and Dissimilarity

Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou bùyiyàng.
Nèrde tyānchi búgēn Sūjou yiyàng.
Shànghǎi gēn Sūjou chàbudwō yiyàng rè.
Tā gēn nǐ chàbudwō yiyàng gāu.
Tāde Jūngwén gēn nǐ chàbudwō yiyàng hǎu.
Wǒ jīntyan gēn nǐ yiyàng máng.
Wǒmen gēn tāmen yiyàng lèi.
Nǐde jr̀fú gēn wǒde yiyàng syǎu.
Wǒ dàu sywésyàu gēn tā yiyàng dzǎu.
Hwǒchē gēn chwán yiyàng shūfu.

Hángjōu yǒu Sūjou nèmma lěng ma?
Túshūgwǎn yǒu shŕyànshr̀ nèmma gāu ma?
Wó yǒu tā nèmma gāu.
Nǐ yǒu tā nèmma máng ma?
Fēijī yǒu chwán nèmma shūfu ma?
Nǐ dàu sywésyàu yóu wǒ nèmma dzǎu ma?
Nǐde sǎngdz yóu yǎnjing némma téng ma?
Tā yóu nǐ nèmma lèi ma?
Nǐ chàngde yóu wǒ jèmma hǎu ma?
Dzwótyande dyànyǐngr yǒu jīntyande nèmma hǎu ma?

Measured Objects and Single or Double -le

Tā dzài nèr jùle sānnyán.
Tāmen dzài hwǒchē shang dzwòle lyǎngtyān.
Wǒmen dzài jyā li kànle yìtyān dyànshì.
Tā dzài fàngwǎr li chīle sānwǎn fàn.
Wǒmen dzài jèr děngle sāntyān le.
Tāmen dzài nèr jùle wǔtyān le.
Wǒmen kànle sìběn shū le.
Wǒ tīngle lyǎngjāng chàngpyār le.

Indefinite Numbers

Děi dzwò sān-sìtyande hwǒchē.
Tā yǐjing chīle lyǎng-sānwǎn fàn le.
Wó yǒu chī-bājāng hòude jǐ.
Tā mǎile wǔ-lyòujīn chyānbǐ.
Wǒ kànle sì-wúběn shū le.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Syàlìbài jyou kāishǐ
fàng shǔjyà le. — Syàlìbài jyou kāishǐ fàng shǔjyà le.
Hòutyan — Hòutyan jyou kāishǐ fàng shǔjyà le.
Lǐbaisì — Lǐbaisì jyou kāishǐ fàng shǔjyà le.
Chǐywe yǐhau — Chǐywe yǐhau jyou kāishǐ fàng shǔjyà le.
Míngtyan — Míngtyan jyou kāishǐ fàng shǔjyà le.

Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde
dìfang chyù ma? — Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù ma?
sywésyàu — Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde sywésyàu chyù ma?
fàngwǎr — Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde fàngwǎr chyù ma?
túshūgwǎn — Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde túshūgwǎn chyù ma?
hǎibyār — Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde hǎibyār chyù ma?

Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.	Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.
dìdi	Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ dìdi dàu Hángjou chyù.
jyějye	Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wó jyějye dàu Hángjou chyù.
gēge	Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ gēge dàu Hángjou chyù.
mèimei	Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ mèimei dàu Hángjou chyù.
Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè.	Wǒ chyùnyan dzai nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè.
sānge	Wǒ chyùnyan dzai nèr jùle sānge ywè.
chǐge	Wǒ chyùnyan dzai nèr jùle chǐge ywè.
jyǒuge	Wǒ chyùnyan dzai nèr jùle jyǒuge ywè.
sìge	Wǒ chyùnyan dzai nèr jùle sìge ywè.
Tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng.	Tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
shān	Tīngshwō nèrde shān gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
chējàn	Tīngshwō nèrde chējàn gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
lóufáng	Tīngshwō nèrde lóufáng gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
shwéigwǒ	Tīngshwō nèrde shwéigwǒ gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
Nà nǐ bùsyǎng dzài chyù wárwar ma?	Nà nǐ bùsyǎng dzài chyù wárwar ma?
kànkan	Nà nǐ bùsyǎng dzài chyù kànkan ma?
tīngting	Nà nǐ bùsyǎng dzài chyù tīngting ma?

Jīnnyan wó kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.	Jīnnyan wó kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.
Míngnyan	Míngnyan wó kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.
Syàlībài	Syàlībài wó kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.
Jyǒuywe	Jyǒuywe wó kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.
Shǔjyà	Shǔjyà wó kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.
Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yítsž.	Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yítsž.
jyěfu	Wǒ jyěfu tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yítsž.
mèimei	Wǒ mèimei tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yítsž.
péngyou	Wǒ péngyou tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yítsž.
túngsywé	Wǒ túngsywé tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yítsž.
Chángchéng lí Shànghǎi yóu dwō ywǎn?	Chángchéng lí Shànghǎi yǒu dwō ywǎn?
Sūjou	Chángchéng lí Sūjou yǒu dwō ywǎn?
Chīngdǎu	Chángchéng lí Chīngdǎu yǒu dwō ywǎn?
Hángjou	Chángchéng lí Hángjou yǒu dwō ywǎn?
Nà kě bújìn a.	Nà kě bújìn a.
bùpyányi	Nà kě bùpyányi a.
bùsyíng	Nà kě bùsyíng.
bùhǎu	Nà kě bùhǎu a.

Děi dzwò sān-sztyānde	
hwŏchē ba.	Děi dzwò sān-sztyānde hwŏchē ba.
chwán	Děi dzwo sān-sztyānde chwán ba.
fēijī	Děi dzwò sān-sztyānde fēijī ba.
chìchē	Děi dzwò sān-sztyānde chìchē ba.
Wŏmen hái dăswàn dàu	
Chīngdău chyù.	Wŏmen hái dăswàn dàu Chīngdău chyù.
Shànghăi	Wŏmen hái dăswàn dàu Shànghăi chyù.
Sūjou	Wŏmen hái dăswàn dàu Sūjou chyù.
Hángjou	Wŏmen hái dăswàn dàu Hángjou chyù.
Chángchéng	Wŏmen hái dăswàn dàu Chángchéng chyù.
Nèr shì bìshŭ dzwèi	
hăude dìfang.	Nèr shì bìshŭ dzwèi hăude dìfang.
nyànshū	Nèr shì nyànshū dzwèi hăude dìfang.
chànggēr	Nèr shì chànggēr dzwèi hăude dìfang.
[illegible]	[illegible]
yóuyŭng	Nèr shì yóuyŭng dzwèi hăude dìfang.
Kéyi dzài hăibyār	
yóuyùng.	Kéyi dzài hăibyār yóuyŭng.
jàusyàng.	Kéyi dzài hăibyār jàusyàng.
chànggēr.	Kéyi dzài hăibyār chànggēr.
jyùtsān.	Kéyi dzài hăibyār jyùtsān.
bìshŭ.	Kéyi dzài hăibyār bìshŭ.
wárwar.	Kéyi dzài hăibyār wárwar.
Wó děi jìje dài	
yóuyŭngyī chyù.	Wó děi jìje dài yóuyŭngyī chyù.
shū	Wó děi jìje dài shū chyù.
dždyăn	Wó děi jìje dài dždyăn chyù.
swànpan	Wó děi jìje dài swànpan chyù.
máubĭ	Wó děi jìje dài máubĭ chyù.

Byé wàngle dwō dài jihér	
tsǎisède jyāujyǎr chyù a.	Byé wàngle dwō dài jihér tsǎisède jyāujywǎr chyù a.
hēibáide	Byé wàngle dwō dài jihér hēibáide jyāujywǎr chyù a.
Měigwode	Byé wàngle dwō dài jihér Měigwode jyāujywǎr chyù a.
Dégwode	Byé wàngle dwō dài jihér Dégwode jyāujywǎr chyù a.
Kěshr wǒ hái méisywé-	
hwèi jyàusyàng.	Kěshr wǒ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.
chànggēr	Kěshr wǒ hái méisywéhwèi chànggēr.
yóuyǔng	Kěshr wǒ hái méisywéhwèi yóuyǔng.
tóulán	Kěshr wǒ hái méisywéhwèi tóulán.
jřhwēi	Kěshr wǒ hái méisywéhwèi jřhwēi.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde	
dìfang chyù ma?	Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù ma?
hǎibyār	Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde hǎibyār chyù ma?
Tā	Tā dǎswàn dàu byéde hǎibyār chyù ma?
sywésyàu	Tā dǎswàn dàu byéde sywésyàu chyù ma?
Nǐmen	Nǐmen dǎswàn dàu byéde sywésyàu chyù ma?
Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ	
fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.	Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.
Sūjou	Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Sūjou chyù.
Tā	Tā yésyu hwèi gēn tā fùmǔ dàu Sūjou chyù.

Chīngdāu	Tā yésyu hwèi gēn tā fùmǔ dàu Chīngdāu chyù.
Tāmen	Tāmen yésyu hwèi gēn tāmen fùmǔ dàu Chīngdāu chyù.
Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè.	Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè.
sānge	Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle sānge ywè.
Tā	Tā chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle sānge ywè.
wǔge	Tā chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle wǔge ywè.
Tāmen	Tāmen chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle wǔge ywè.
Tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng.	Tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
Hángjou	Tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi gēn Hángjou yiyàng.
fēngjǐng	Tīngshwō nèrde fēngjǐng gēn Hángjou yiyàng.
Shànghǎi	Tīngshwō nèrde fēngjǐng gēn Shànghǎi yiyàng.
lóufáng.	Tīngshwō nèrde lóufáng gēn Shànghǎi yiyàng.
Nà nǐ búsyǎng dzài chyù wárwar ma?	Nà nǐ bùsyǎng dzài chyù wárwar ma?
kànkan	Nà nǐ bùsyǎng dzài chyù kànkan ma?
tā	Nà tā bùsyǎng dzài chyù kànkan ma?
tīngting	Nà tā bùsyǎng dzài chyù tīngting ma?
nǐmen	Nà nǐmen bùsyǎng dzài chyù tīngting ma?
Jīnnyan wǒ kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.	Jīnnyan wǒ kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.

Chīngdǎu	Jīnnyan wó kěnéng dàu Chīngdǎu chyù wár chyu.
Míngnyan	Míngnyan wó kěnéng dàu Chīngdǎu chyù wár chyu.
hǎibyār	Míngnyan wó kěnéng dàu hǎibyār chyù wár chyu.
Syàlíbài	Syàlíbài wó kěnéng dàu hǎibyār chyù wár chyu.
Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyíngguo yítsž.	Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyíngguo yítsž.
Sūjou	Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Sūjou chyù lyǔsyíngguo yítsž.
jyějye	Wó jyějye tsúngchyán dàu Sūjou chyù lyǔsyíngguo yítsž.
Chīngdǎu	Wó jyějye tsúngchyán dàu Chīngdǎu chyù lyǔsyíngguo yítsž.
jyěfu	Wó jyěfu tsúngchyán dàu Chīngdǎu chyù lyǔsyíngguo yítsž.
Chángchéng lí Shànghǎi yǒu dwó ywǎn?	Chángchéng lí Shànghǎi yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Hángjou	Chángchéng lí Hángjou yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Chīngdǎu	Chīngdǎu lí Hángjou yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Sūjou	Chīngdǎu lí Sūjou yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Jèr	Jèr lí Sūjou yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Děi dzwò sān-sžtyānde hwǒchē ba?	Děi dzwò sān-sžtyānde hwǒchē ba.
fēijī	Děi dzwò sān-sžtyānde fēijī ba.
wǔ-lyòutyānde	Děi dzwò wǔ-lyòutyānde fēijī ba.

chwán	Děi dzwò wū-lyòutyānde chwán ba.
chǐ-bātyānde	Děi dzwò chǐ-bātyānde chwán ba.
Wǒmen hái dāswàn dàu	
Chǐngdāu chyù.	Wǒmen hái dāswàn dàu Chǐngdāu chyù.
Sūjou	Wǒmen hái dāswàn dàu Sūjou chyù.
Tāmen	Tāmen hái dāswàn dàu Sūjou chyù.
Hángjou	Tāmen hái dāswàn dàu Hángjou chyù.
Wáng Lǎushī	Wáng Lǎushī hái dāswàn dáu Hángjou chyù.
Kéyi dzài hǎibyār	
yóuyǔng.	Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.
jàusyàng	Keyi dzài hǎibyār jàusyàng
nèibyār	Kéyi dzài nèibyār jàusyàng.
chànggēr	Kéyi dzài nèibyār chànggēr.
jèibyār	Kéyi dzài jèibyār chànggēr.
Wǒ děi jǐje dài	
yóuyǔngyǐ chyù.	Wǒ děi jǐje dài yóuyǔngyǐ chyù.
jàusyàngjǐ	Wǒ děi jǐje dài jàusyàngjǐ chyù.
Nǐ	Nǐ děi jǐje dài jàusyàngjǐ chyù.
jyāujywǎr	Nǐ děi jǐje dài jyāujywǎr chyù.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen děi jǐje dài jyāujywǎr chyù.
Wǒ hái méisywéhwèi	
jàusyàng.	Wǒ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.
chànggēr	Wǒ hái méisywéhwèi chànggēr.
Tā	Tā hái méisywéhwèi chànggēr.
dzwòfàn	Tā hái méisywéhwèi dzwòfàn.
Nǐmen	Nǐmen hái méisywéhwèi dzwòfàn.

RESPONSE DRILL

Syàlībài jyou kāishǐ fàng shūjyà le ma?

(jyou kāishǐ) Syàlībài jyou kāishǐ fàng shūjyà le.

(hái bùkāishǐ) Syàlībài hái bùkāishǐ fàng shūjyà.

Nǐ dāswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù ma?

(dāswàn) Wǒ dāswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù.

(Chǐngdāu) Wǒ dāswàn dàu Chǐngdāu chyù.

(Hángjou) Wǒ dāswàn dàu Hángjou chyù.

(bùdāswàn) Wǒ bùdāswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù.

Nǐ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle jǐge ywè?

(lyǎngge ywè) Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè.

(sānge ywè) Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle sānge ywè.

(yíge ywè) Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle yíge ywè.

Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng ma?

(yiyàng) Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng.

(bùyiyàng) Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou bùyiyàng.

(chàbudwō) Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou chàbudwō.

(dàgài yiyàng) Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou dàgài yiyàng.

Jīnnyan nǐ kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu ma?

(kěnéng) Jīnnyan wǒ kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.

(hén kěnéng) Jīnnyan wǒ hén kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.

(bùyidìng) Jīnnyan wǒ bùyidìng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.

(bùkěnéng) Jīnnyan wǒ bùkěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.

Nǐ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo ma?

(lyǔsyínggwo yìtsž) Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yìtsž.

(háujitsž) Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo háujitsž.

(wǔ-lyòutsž) Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo wǔ-lyòutsž.

(méidàu) Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán méidàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo.

Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi yǒu dwō ywán?

(hén ywán) Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi hén ywán.

(ywánjìle) Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi ywánjìle.

(lyángchyánlǐ) Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi yóu lyángchyánlǐ.

(bùywán) Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi bùywán.

Děi dzwò jǐtyánde hwǒchē?

(lyángtyánde) Děi dzwò lyángtyánde hwǒchē.

(sž-wǔtyánde) Děi dzwò sž-wǔtyánde hwǒchē.

(Bùjrdau) Bùjrdau děi dzwò jǐtyánde hwǒchē.

(lyòu-chǐtyánde) Děi dzwò lyòu-chǐtyánde hwǒchē.

Nǐmen hái dǎswàn dàu Chǐngdǎu chyù ma?

(hái dǎswàn) Wǒmen hái dǎswàn dàu Chǐngdǎu chyù.

(bùdǎswàn) Wǒmen bùdǎswàn dàu Chǐngdǎu chyù.

(bùyídìng) Wǒmen bùyídìng dàu Chǐngdǎu chyù.

Nèr shr̄ bìshū dzwèi hǎude dìfang ma?

(shì) Nèr shì bìshū dzwèi hǎude dìfang.

(kěnéng shì) Nèr kěnéng shì bìshū dzwèi hǎude dìfang.

(bùyídìng shì) Nèr bùyídìng shì bìshū dzwèi hǎude dìfang.

(búshì) Nèr búshì bìshū dzwèi hǎude dìfang.

Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng ma?

(kéyi) Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.

(dàgài kéyi) Dàgài kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.

(yésyu kéyi) Yésyu kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.

(bùkéyi) Bùkéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.

Nǐ yǒu méiyou sywéhwèi jàusyàng?

(sywéhwèile) Wǒ sywéhwèi jàusyàng le.

(yǐjing sywéhwèi) Wǒ yǐjing sywéhwèi jàusyàng le.

(méisywéhwèi) Wǒ méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.

(hái méisywéhwèi) Wǒ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.

DIRECTED CONVERSATION

Nǐ wèn tā, tā dǎswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù ma.

Nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù ma?

Wǒ dǎswàn dàu Sūjou chyù lyǔsyíng chyù.

Wǒ bùdǎswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù.

Wǒ nǎr dōu bùdǎswàn chyù.

Wǒ dàgài nǎr dōu búchyù.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā hwèi buhwèi gēn tā fùmu dàu Hángjou chyù.

Nǐ hwèi gēn nǐ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù ma?

Wǒ yésyu hwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.

Wǒ kěnéng gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.

Wǒ búhwèi gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle jǐge ywè.	<u>Nǐ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle jǐge ywè</u>? Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè. Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle wǔge ywè. Wǒ chyùnyan dzài nèr jùle yíge ywè. Wǒ chyùnyan méi dzài nèr jùgwo.
Nǐ wèn tā nǎrde tyān-chi gěn Sūjou yiyàng.	<u>Nǎrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng</u>? Tīngshwō Hángjōude tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng. Tīngshwō Chīngdǎude tyānchi gēn Sūjou yiyàng.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā syǎng busyǎng dzài chyù wárwar.	<u>Nǐ syǎng busyǎng dzài chyù wárwar</u>? Wǒ syǎng dzài chyù wárwar. Wǒ hén syǎng dzài chyù wárwar. Wǒ bùsyáng dzài chyù wárle.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā jīnnyan kěnéng bukěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.	<u>Nǐ jīnnyan kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu ma</u>? Jīnnyan wǒ kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu. Jīnnyan wǒ yídìng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu. Jīnnyan wǒ bùkěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu. Jīnnyan wǒ yésyu dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyu.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo ma.	<u>Nǐ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo ma</u>? Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo yítsž.

Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán dàu Chángchéng chyú lyǔsyínggwo háujitsž.
Wǒ fùchin tsúngchyán méidàu Chángchéng chyù lyǔsyínggwo.

Nǐ wèn tā, Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi yǒu dwó ywǎn.

Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi yǒu dwó ywǎn?
Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi hén ywǎn.
Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi ywǎnjìle.

Nǐ wèn tā, tā děi dzwò jītyān hwǒchē.

Nǐ děi dzwò jītyān hwǒchē?
Wǒ děi dzwò sān-sžtyānde hwǒchē.
Wǒ kěnéng děi dzwò lyǎngtyānde hwǒchē.
Wǒ dàigài děi dzwò wǔ-lyòutyānde hwǒchē.
Wǒ yésyu děi dzwò chītyānde hwǒchē.

Nǐ wèn tā, tāmen hái dǎswàn dàu nǎr chyù.

Nǐmen hái dǎswàn dàu nǎr chyù?
Wǒmen hái dǎswàn dàu Chīngdǎu chyù.
Wǒmen hái dǎswàn dàu Chángchéng chyù.
Wǒmen bùdǎswàn dàu nǎr chyù.
Wǒmen nǎr dōu búchyù.

Nǐ wèn tā nèr bìshǔ dzwèi hǎude dìfang.

Nèr shì búshì bìshǔ dzwèi hǎude dìfang?
Nèr shì bìshǔ dzwèi hǎude dìfang.
Nèr kěnéng shì bìshǔ dzwèi hǎude dìfang.
Nèr dàgài shì bìshǔ dzwèi hǎude dìfang.
Nèr búshì bìshǔ dzwèi hǎude dìfang.

Nǐ wèn tā, kéyi bukéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.	Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng ma? Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng. Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng ba. Bùkéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā hwèi buhwèi jyàusyàng.	Nǐ hwèi buhwèi jàusyàng? Wǒ hwèi jàusyàng. Wǒ búhwèi jàusyàng. Wǒ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng.
Nǐ wèn tā, tā dài něiyàngrde jyāujywǎr.	Nǐ dài něiyàngrde jyāujywǎr ne? Wǒ dàile tsǎidède jyāujywǎr. Wǒ dàile hēibáide jyāujywǎr. Wǒ dàile Měigwode jyāujywǎr. Wǒ dàile Dégwode jyāujywǎr.

DIALOGUE EXPANSION

Nǐmen sywésyàu shémma shŕhou fàng shǔjyà a?

Syàlībài. Nǐmen sywésyàu ne?

Wǒmen sywésyàu yě shì syàlībài fàng shǔjyà.

Fàngle shǔjyà nǐ dǎswàn dzwò shémma?

Wó dǎswàn dàu wó jyějye nèr chyù.

Nǐ jyějye hái jù dzài syāngsya ma?

Hái jù dzài syāngsya. Nèrde tyānchi hǎujíle.

Wó yě tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi bútswò. Bùlěng, yě búrè.

Jèrde tyānchi tài rèle. Wǒ jēn bùsyǐhwan.

Nǐ syǐhwan busyǐhwan yóuyǔng.

Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan. Wó yǒu hěn pyàulyangde yóuyǔngyǐ.

Nǐ dàu Chīngdǎu chyùgwo ma?

Wǒ tsúngchyán chyùgwo, nèrde fēngjǐng jēn měi a.

Shì a. Yǒu yǒu shān, yòu yóu hǎi.

Nèr shì bìshǔ dzwèi hǎude dìfang.

Wǒ chyánnyan dzài nèr jàule hěn dwō syàng.

Shr hēibáide ne, háishr tsǎisède ne?
Hēibáide tsǎidède dōu yǒu.
Wǒ hái méisywéhwèi jàusyàng ne.
Nà hěn rúngyi. Búgwò nǐ děi chángchang jàu.

NARRATION

Yáng Jr-píng tsúngchyán jù dzài Shànghǎi. Tā shǔjyà dōu gēn tā fùchin yíkwàr dàu Sūjōu chyòu wár. Sūjōu lǐ Shànghǎi bútài ywǎn, dzwò hwǒchē, dzwò chìchē dōu kéyi dàu. Sūjōu nèige dìfang bútài dà, kěshr nèrde tyānchi hén hǎu, bùléng yě búrè. Nèrde syáujye dōu pyàulyangjǐle. Jr-píng hái dàugwo Wànglǐchángchéng yítsz. Wǒ wèn tā Wànlǐchángchéng jēn yǒu yíwànlǐ nèmma cháng ma. Tā shwō méiyou nèmma cháng.

Tā jīnnyan shūjyà dāswàn dàu Chīngdǎu chyù lyǔsyíng chyù. Tā gège dzài nèr yǐjing jùle sānyán le. Wǒ yě hén syǐhwan dàu Chīngdǎu chyù wár, búgwò wǒ bàba gēn wǒ māma shǔjyà dōu hěn máng, swóyi wǒ nǎr dōu bùdǎswàn chyù. Wǒ syǎng jyou dzài jyā li tīngting chàngpyār, kànkan dyànshr, dzài dzwò yìdyǎr shùsywé syǐti.

Wǒ mèimei gēn wǒ dìdi tāmende syǘesyàu syàlībài yě fàng shǔjyà le. Tāmen lyǎngge rén dōu dǎswàn dàu wó jyějye nèr chyù. Wó jyějye gēn wó jyěfu jù dzài syāngsya. Dàu nèr chyù, kéyi dzwò hwǒchē, yě kéyi dzwò chìchē. Nèr yǒu yíge hěn dàde dūngwuywán. Wǒ dìdi gēn wǒ mèimei dōu syǐhwan dàu nèr chyù wár.

RHYME

Syàlībài fàng shǔjyà,
Shǔjyà dǎswàn dzwò shémma?
Wǒ dàu Chīngdǎu chyù lyǔsyíng,
Tā gēn māma dàu syāngsya.
Sūjou Hángjou hǎu dìfang,

Wǒmen tsúngchyán cháng chyù wár,
Tyānchi bùléng yé búrè,
Wó dzwèi syǐhwan jù dzài nèr.
Wànlǐchángchéng wànlǐ chàng,
Yǐjing dzài nèr lyǎngchyānnyán,
Nǐ děi dàu nèr chyù kànkan.

PROGRESS EVALUATION

1. Listening and Speaking

Jīnnyan shǔjyà nǐ dǎswàn dàu byéde dìfang chyù ma?
(Wǒ yésyu gēn wǒ fùmǔ dàu Hángjou chyù.)
Nǐ chyánnyan dzài nèr jùle jǐge ywè?
(Wǒ chyánnyan dzài nèr jùle lyǎngge ywè.)
Tīngshwō nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yíyàng - bùlěng, yě búrè.
(Dwèile. Nèrde tyānchi gēn Sūjou yíyàng.)
Nà, nǐ bùsyǎng dzài dàu nèr chyù wár ma?
(Bùsyǎng chyù. Jīnnyan wó kěnéng dàu Chángchéng chyù wár chyù.)
Nǐ shwō Chángchéng jēn yǒu yǐwànlǐ nèmma cháng ma?
(Wó syǎng méiyǒu ba. Kěshr rénren dōu shwō Wànlǐchángchéng.)
Chángchéng lǐ Shànghǎi yǒu dwó ywǎn?
(Nà kě bújìn a. Děi dzwò sān-sztyānde hwǒchē.)
Nèr shìr bushìr bìshū dzwèi hǎude dìfang?
(Nèr shìr bìshū dzwèi hǎude dìfang.)
Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng ma?
(Kéyi dzài hǎibyār yóuyǔng.)
Nǐmen hái dǎswàn dàu Chǐngdǎu chyù ma?
(Wǒmen hái dǎswàn dàu Chǐngdǎu chyù.)
Nǐ yǒu méiyou dài jàusyàngjǐ?
(Wǒ wàngle dài jàusyàngjǐ le.)

2. Auditory Comprehension (Retell the following in English)

Wǒmen sywésyàu syàlǐbài jyòu fàng shǔjyà le. Wǒ dǎswàn dàu Chīngdǎu chyù wárwar. Tīngshwō nèrde hǎibyār hén mǎi. Nèr yòu yǒu shān, yòu yóu hǎi, fēngjǐng pyàulyangjile. Chīngdǎu lǐ wǒmen jyā tài ywǎn, děi dzwò sān-sztyānde hwǒchē. Wǒ jīnnyan syǎng dzwò chwán chyù. Dzwò chwán yòu pyányi, yòu shūfu. Búgwò děi dzwò sān-sztyān tsái néng dàu. Chīngdǎude tyānchi gēn Hángjou chàbudwō, bùlěng yě búrè. Kěshr Chīngdau wárde dìfang méiyou Hángjou nèmma dwō.

Wǒ dìdi dzwótyan mǎile yíge hén hǎude jàusyàngjī, tā yé mǎile bùshǎu tsǎisède jyaūjywǎr. Chrle fàn, wǒmen dōu dzài kètīng li kàn dyànshìde shŕhou dìdi géi wǒmen jàule hěn dwō syàng. Bùjrdau tā jàude hǎu buhǎu. Kěshr tā shwō tā jàude hǎujile.

Wó yǐjing sywéle yìnyande Jūngwén le. Syàndzài wǒ néng shwō hěn dwō Jūnggwo hwà. Wó yě kéyi kàn yìdyǎr Jūnggwo shū. Míngnyan wǒ hái yàu sywé Jūngwén, wǒ gēge gēn wǒ mèimei yě dōu yàu sywé Jūngwén.

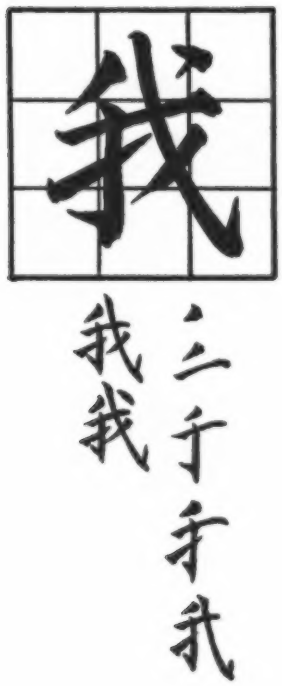
3. Reading and Writing (Chinese Characters)

Chinese-Mandarin I

CHINESE CHARACTERS

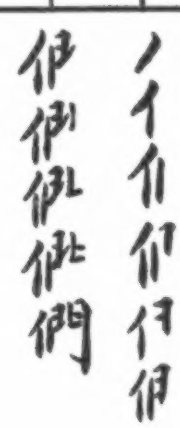
漢字教材

UNIT I



他

們



我們．
你們．
他們．

好

ㄑㄆㄆㄡ好

你好．你們好．
他好．他們好．

忙

ㄟㄐㄐㄦ忙

我忙．
我們忙．
他忙．
他們忙．

很

很很很

我很忙。
他很好。
我們很好。
你們很忙。
他們很好。

都

都都都

我們都忙。
你們都好。
他們都很好。

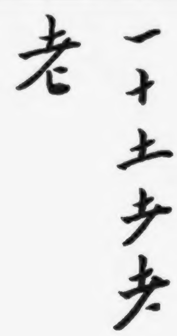
一ナ不不

我不忙。
你不忙。
他不很忙。
我們都不忙。

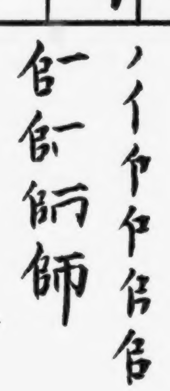
丨口口口口吗吗吗

你好嗎？
他不忙嗎？
你們都不忙嗎？

老



師



老師好、
老師忙、

學

學學學學學學學學

學生都忙嗎？

學生都很忙。

生

生生生生

他是老師．
我是學生．
你們都是學生．

是

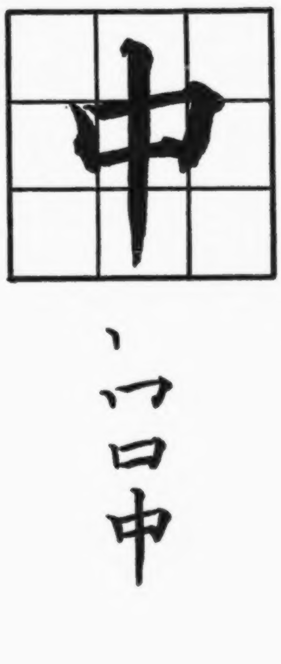
丨 ㄇ 日 日 旦 早 早
昰 是

你也是老師、
他也是老師．
我也是學生．
他們也是學．

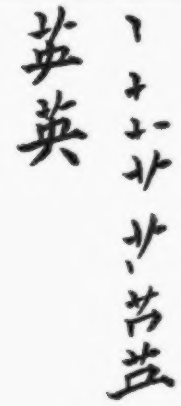
也

乛 力 也

他是我的老師．
我是你的學生．
我們都是你的學生．



英



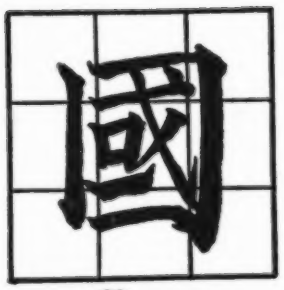
文

他是中文老師.

你不是英文老師.

美

丶丷丷丷羊羊
羊羊美



國

丨冂冂冂同同
同國國國國

我是美國學生.
你是中國學生.
他們都不是美國學生.

我是美國人．
你是中國人．
他們都是英國人．

人

丿人

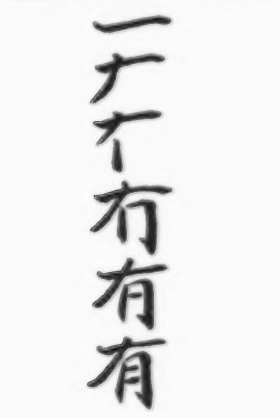
你是誰？
他是誰？
中文老師是誰？
英文老師是誰？

誰

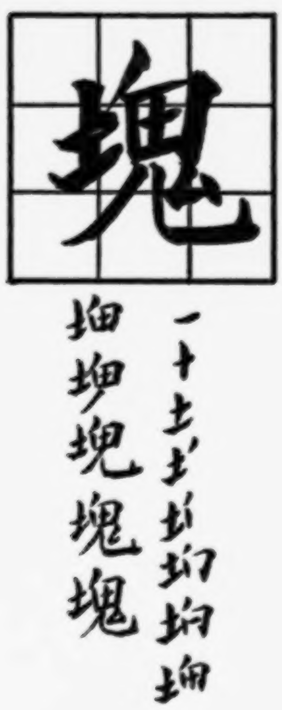
、亠亠亠言言言
言訁訁訁訁誰誰
誰

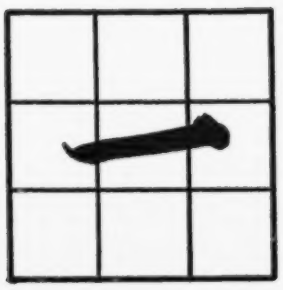
UNIT III

美國人有錢。
中國人有錢。
英國人也有錢。
他們都很有錢。



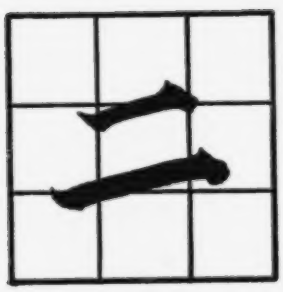
我沒有錢．
你也沒有錢．
他們都沒有錢．





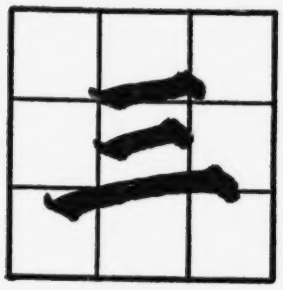
一

我有一塊錢.
你也有一塊錢.
他一塊錢都沒有.



一二

你們有一塊二嗎?
我們沒有一塊二.
他們都有一塊二.



一 二 三

老師有三塊錢。
學生也有三塊錢。
中文老師有一塊三。
英文老師有三塊二。

丶 冂 冂 四 四

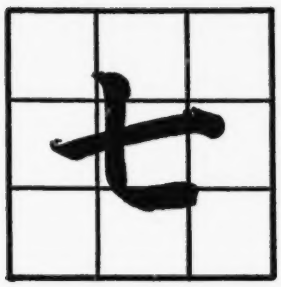
我們的老師有四塊錢。
你們的老師有四塊二。
他們的中文老師有一塊四。
我們的英文老師也有三塊四。

一丅五五

我有五塊錢。
你有五塊四嗎？
他們也都有三塊五嗎？

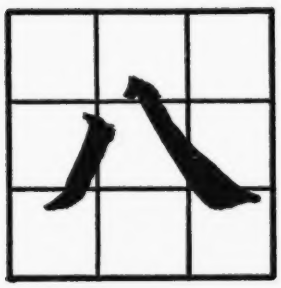
、亠六六

我們都有六塊錢。
他們也有六塊五。
你們有五塊六嗎？
我們的中文老師有六塊六。



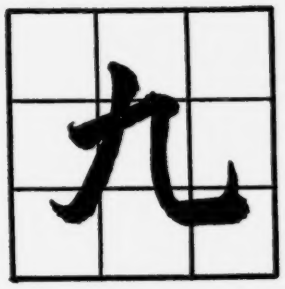
一七

一二三四五六七。
七六五四三二一、
我有七塊六。
他有六塊七。



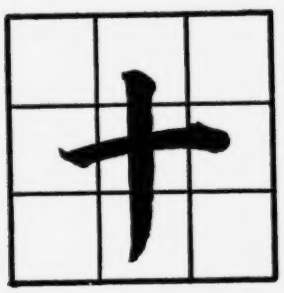
丿八

誰有八塊錢？
誰都沒有八塊錢。
誰也沒有七塊八。



丿九

你有沒有九塊錢？
他有沒有九塊八？
你們有九塊九沒有？

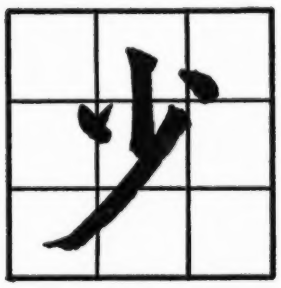


一十

二五一十，
三六一十八，
四七二十八，
八九七十二，

ノクタ多多

他有很多錢.
你有很多錢嗎?
他們有沒有很多錢?



丨小少

你有多少錢?
他有多少錢?
你們有多少錢?
老師有多少錢?

你給我多少錢？
我給你一塊五．
我給他很多錢．
他給我不少錢．

給

ㄑㄧㄠㄠ、ㄠㄠㄠ糾
糾給給給給

ノ二三毛

我給你一毛錢。
他給你五塊三毛錢。
你給他四毛二。

ノ八分分

我有二毛五分。
你有沒有六毛三分錢？
他有七塊二毛九分。

我有兩塊錢．
他没有兩塊兩毛錢．
你有没有兩塊兩毛兩分？

這是他的嗎？
這也是你的．
這是兩毛錢．

一 二 丆 丙 丙
丙 丙 丙

丶 亠 亠 亠 言 言 言
言 這 這

那是我的．
那是誰的？
那是六毛兩分錢．

那

ㄱ ㄋ ㄋ ㄌ
那那

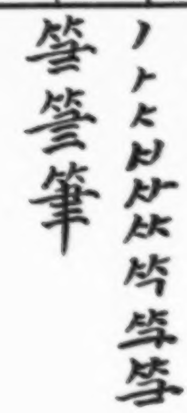
這個是我的．
那個是他的．
這個人是中國人．
那個人是美國人．

個

ㄅ ㄔ ㄔ 们 们 們
們個個個

我有筆．
這是中國筆．
那是美國筆．

筆



我有兩支筆．
這支筆多少錢？
他有很多支英國筆．

支

我買筆。
他買這支筆。
你買不買那支筆？

丨冂冂冂冂罒罒罒罒罒罒罒罒買買買

這支筆賣多少錢？
一支賣五毛錢。
他賣中國筆。

一十土士士士吉吉吉吉吉吉吉吉賣賣賣

他賣紙．
我買紙．
你們有很多紙嗎？

我買這張紙．
他賣那張紙．
我們有六十張紙．

這是什麼？
那是什麼？
用什麼？

什

ノイ仁什

他賣什麼？
你買什麼？
你們有什麼筆？

麼

丶亠广广庁庁床
床麻麻麻麼麼麼

一 丆 丆 百 百 百

我買一百張紙.
他有兩百塊錢.
你有兩百二十支筆嗎?

ノ 二 千

他的老師有兩千塊錢.
我有一千兩百張紙.
五千張紙賣一百塊錢.

誰有一萬塊錢？
我買兩萬張紙。
誰都沒有五萬支筆。
我們有一萬兩千五百張。

萬

萬萬萬

這兒有學生．

那兒沒有錢．

我們這兒有很多紙．

這是我們的學校．

那兒有學校．

那是他的學校．

我去買紙。
他去賣筆。
你去不去？

一十土去去

你到那兒去？
我到學校去。
他到不到那兒去？

一工云云至至
到到

你也來嗎？

他到學校來嗎？

他們來不來？

他從那兒來？

我從英國來。

你到那兒去？

乡 乡 乡 纟 纟 纟

城

一十土圡圢圻
城城城

裏

丶亠亠亠亩亩亩亩
重重裏裏裏

我到城裏去．
他從城裏來．
城裏有很多人．

丨卜上

你早上到那兒去？
他早上從那兒來？
我早上不到學校去。

丨冂日旦早

我晚上到城裏去．
他晚上從鄉下來．
這兒晚上沒有人．

晚

丶冂日日日昒昒
昒昒昒晚晚

天

一二于天

今天我有中文。
你今天早上到那兒去？
今天他從鄉下來。
今天你買什麼？

ノ人今今

明天早上我有英文。
明天我到學校去。
明天晚上他從鄉下來。
你明天早上到那兒去？

丨冂日明明

昨天晚上他没去．
昨天我什麼都没買．
昨天早上你有没有來？
昨天我有錢．

昨

丨冂日日旷旷
昨昨昨

你今天到那兒去了没有？
他買了兩張紙．
他去了．
他們都到學校去了．

了

了

吃

丨口口吃吃

你吃了嗎？
我吃了。
他吃不吃？

飯

ノ人今今今食
食飠飠飯飯

我去吃飯。
他吃中國飯。
你們到城裏去吃飯嗎？
中國飯好吃嗎？

中國菜很好吃．
今天有很多菜．
你明天晚上吃什麼菜？
那兒的菜很好吃．

菜

丶十十廿廿廿廿廿
苎苹菜菜

今天你有沒有吃肉？
我今天吃了肉了．
這塊肉很好吃．
今天的菜有肉沒有？

肉

丨冂内内肉肉

你喝不喝？
我不喝了．
你喝什麼？
他什麼都不喝．

喝

丨口口口口口口口口口口
喝喝喝喝

你喝茶嗎？
我今天晚上不喝茶
他們都不喝茶．
他也沒喝茶．

茶

丨十十廿廿艹艹
茶茶茶

我今天沒渴湯.
你今天喝了湯沒有?
他喝什麼湯?
我們都渴美國湯.

我喝了水了.
你喝水嗎?
他不喝水.
我也不喝水.

我渴了兩杯茶．
他渴了兩杯水．
這杯水很好喝．
你渴不渴水？

杯

一丨才木朩
朩朩杯

你在那兒吃飯？
我在學校吃飯．
他在城裏賣紙．
他們也在城裏買筆．

在

一ナ才在
在在

你餓不餓？
我也不餓了。
你餓了嗎？
他們都餓了。

你飽了嗎？
我飽了。
你飽了沒有？
我沒飽。

又

我又買了一支筆。
他又吃了一塊肉。
他們又到鄉下去了。
我們又餓了。

子

我們有筷子．
他又賣了很多筷子．
你買不買筷子？
你有筷子嗎？

筷

ノ𠂉𠂉𠂉𠂉𠂉𠂉𠂉𠂉
竹竹筷筷

棹子在那兒？
這兒有一張棹子．
我的茶在那個棹子上．
那兒沒有棹子．

棹

一十才木朩朩朩
朩朩朩桓棹

這兒有兩張椅子．
那是中國椅子．
你不買椅子嗎？
他有很多椅子．

椅

一 丁 才 木 木 杉 杕
杕 梏 梏 梏 椅

我也用中國筆．
我用中國筷子．
你用筷子嗎？
他不用筷子．

用

丿 冂 冃 月 用

我要買美國筆．
他要吃中國飯．
他們要買五張紙．
你要喝茶嗎？

要

一 丆 丆 丙 丙 西 西 要
要 要

你有書嗎？
我們學校有書．
他賣書．
中文書賣多少錢？

書

ㄱ ㄱ ㄹ ㄹ ㄹ 聿 聿
書 書 書

我有兩百本書．
他買了九本書．
這本書多少錢？
他一本書都沒有．

本

一丁才木本

我晚上在家裏吃飯．
你家在那兒？
我家在城裏．
他家在鄉下．

家

丶丶宀宀宀宀
家家家

他在樓下吃飯．

我在樓上喝茶．

我們樓上有兩張桌子．

你的中國書在不在樓上？

樓

一 十 才 木 朩 朷

枂 枂 柙 椙 椙 樓

樓 樓

我跟他一塊兒去．

你跟他一塊兒來嗎？

我明天跟你一塊兒到鄉下去．

我們跟他們一塊兒去吃飯．

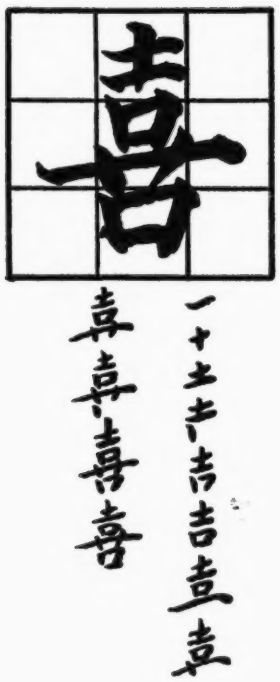
跟

丶 口 口 早 早 足 足

趴 跙 跙 跟 跟 跟

你愛吃中國飯嗎？
我很愛吃．
他愛用筷子．
我不愛喝湯．

你今天想吃什麼？
我什麼都不想吃．
他想吃美國菜．
我們想到城裏去．



你喜歡他嗎？
我喜歡中文。
你喜歡這本書嗎？
我們都喜歡美國。

我喜歡我爸爸，
他也喜歡他爸爸。
你爸爸在那兒？
我爸爸到鄉下去了。

爸

ㄅㄚ ㄅ父 爷 爷 爷

爸

我愛我爸爸，也愛我媽媽。
他媽媽會中文。
你媽媽今天到那兒去？
我媽要到學校去。

媽

ㄑ ㄆ ㄆ ㄅ ㄅ ㄅ ㄅ

妈 妈 媽 媽 媽 媽 媽

你有多少朋友、
我有四個朋友、
你的朋友要來嗎？
他的朋友在那兒？

丿月月月朋朋

一ナ方友

一十大

這張桌子很大。
我喝了一大杯茶。
那本大書在那兒？
這張大紙賣多少錢？

丨小小

這支中國筆很小。
他有一本小的書。
那兒有一張小椅子。
他們的學校很小。

知

ノ人ㄥ午矢知

知知

道

丶ソ丷丷芹芹首

首首首道道

你知道他是誰嗎？

我不知道。

他也不知道。

我們都不知道。

你有幾本書？
他有幾本書？
他有幾張紙？
你有幾塊錢？
他有幾個朋友？

幾

ㄥㄠㄠㄠㄠㄠㄠㄠㄠ
幾幾幾幾

一個月有幾天？
你到那兒去幾個月？
我九月去，
你知道這個月是幾月嗎？

月

丿月月月

一年有幾個月？
去年你在那兒？
今年我要到鄉下去。
明年他從那兒來？

年

丿𠂉𠂉𠂉年

禮

丶ラ礻礻礻礻礻礻礻礻礻礻礻礻礼礼礼

一個禮拜有幾天？
今天是禮拜幾？
明天是禮拜六．
一年有幾個禮拜？

拜

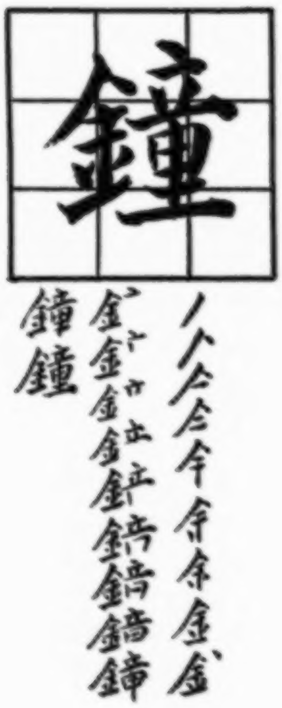
一 二 三 手 手 手 手 手
拜 拜

我兩點十分吃飯．
他八點十分從鄉下來．
你昨天早上七點五分在家嗎？
我明天晚上九點十分在家．

點

丨 冂 冂 冃 冃 甲 甲 里 里 里 里
點 點 點 點 點 點 點 點

你幾點鐘到學校去?
我早上八點鐘去.
他今天幾點鐘從鄉下來.
你們幾點鐘吃飯?



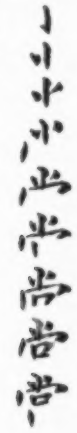
我今天九點半有中文.
他們明天晚上十點半來.
你明天六點半能不能來?
你昨天三點半在那兒?

我兩點一刻來．
一刻有幾分？
他四點三刻去．
我六點一刻要到城裏去．

刻

我常常吃中國飯．
他不常到這兒來．
你常買紙嗎？
他也常常沒有錢．

常



你不能再吃肉了．
我明天再來．
我再買幾張紙．
他再不想跟你去了．

一 丆 丆 丙 丙 再

老師再見、
小朋友再見．
昨天我沒見他．
今天我也沒見他．

丨 冂 冃 冃 目 目 見

吧

丨口口叮叮吧

你吃飽了吧！
他不餓了吧！
我們一塊兒走吧！
他明天會來吧？

呢

丨口口叮叮呢呢

我吃中國菜、你呢？
你幾點鐘去呢？
他能不能去呢？
你們去不去呢？

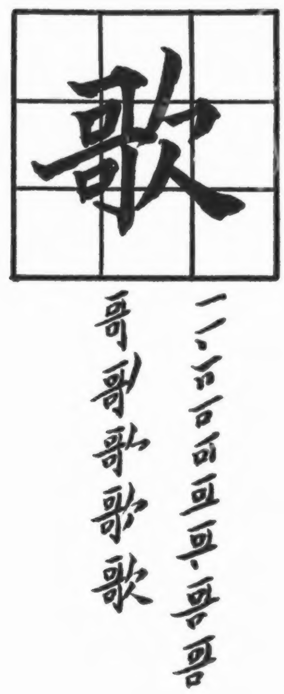
等等

我在這兒等你.
你等一等.
你們能等我嗎?
你在這兒等我一會兒.

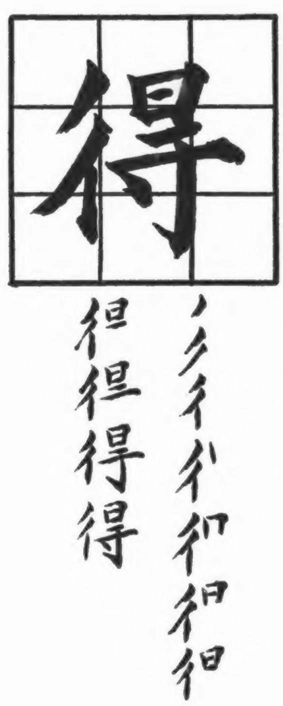
唱唱

你會唱嗎?
我不會唱.
他喜歡唱.
我們一塊兒唱.

我唱中國歌.
他也會唱中國歌.
你唱什麼歌?
我們都喜歡唱歌.



我唱歌唱得很好.
他吃得很飽.
你買得很多.
他也唱得好.



他唱得真好．
你吃得真多．
中國菜真好吃．
美國湯真好喝．

真

一十十丨冇冇有有直
真真

你今天晚上做什麼？
他會做中國飯．
我媽媽做菜做得真好．
他們什麼都不會做．

做

丿亻亻什什估估
做做做做

他中文說得很好．
你會不會說中文？
他說他明天早上不來．
不要說英文．

說

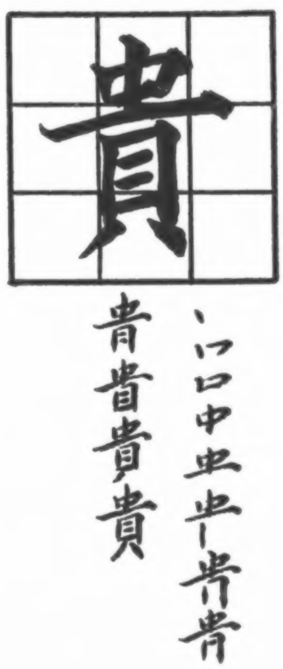
丶亠亠亠言言言
訁訁訁訁訁說

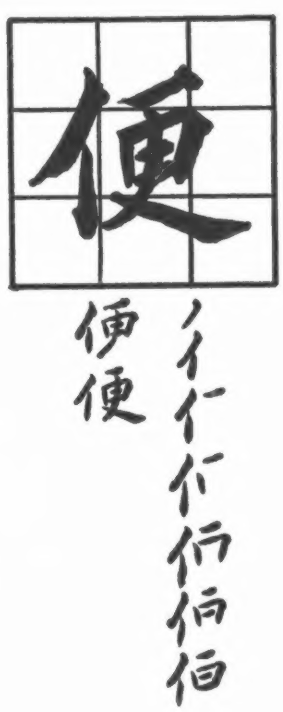
我去叫他來．
你去叫他們來吃飯．
我去叫他吧．
他叫你到那兒去？

叫

丨口口叶叶叫

這本書真貴.
那支筆貴不貴?
兩毛錢一張貴嗎?
中國茶一點兒都不貴.





這兒的紙很便宜．
那支筆一點兒都不便宜．
那張棹子真便宜．
九塊錢一本，不貴，也不便宜．

宜

宜

請你給我兩本書.
請他到我們家來.
請你等一會兒.
請再吃一點兒吧.

謝謝老師.
謝謝你.
謝謝你給我書.
謝謝你媽媽.

我還有兩張椅子，
樓上還有人嗎？
你還有什麼書？
他是去，還是不去？

還

一 丆 不 不 罒 罒 罒

我坐車去．
他喜歡坐車．
你坐幾點鐘的車去呢？
他坐九點三刻的車來．

車

一 ㄧ 丆 百 百 亘 車

一會兒我就來．
我就有兩個朋友．
他就要一杯茶．
你就有三塊錢嗎？

就

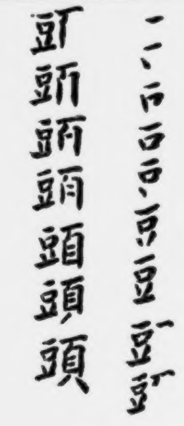
、 ㄧ 亠 亠 亠 京 京 京
京 就 就 就

我太餓了。
他太飽了。
那太貴了。
中國菜太好吃了。

一ナ大太

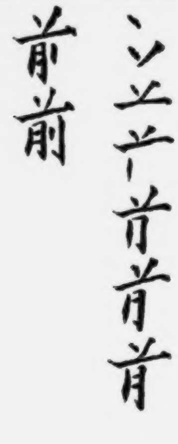
ノクタ外外

頭



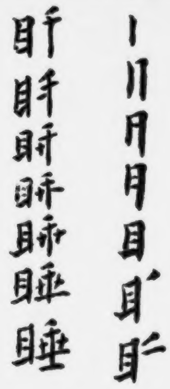
他的頭很大.
我媽媽在裏頭做飯呢.
他們在外頭唱歌呢.
我們到外頭去吧.

前



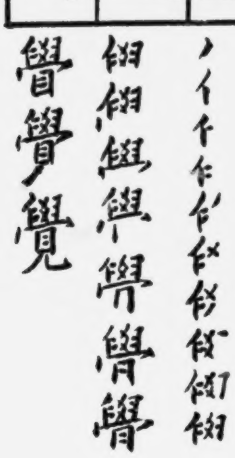
我們得坐前頭的車.
你到前頭去吧.
前頭有沒有學生?
我們家前頭有一個學校.

睡



你昨天晚上睡得好嗎？
我晚上九點鐘睡。
他常常八點半睡。
我昨天晚上一點兒都沒睡。

覺



他太喜歡睡覺了。
你睡覺睡得好嗎？
他不愛睡覺。
我覺得餓了。

快

丶丨忄忄忄快

車快到了．
飯快好了吧？
你快一點兒來．
他們快來了．

走

一十土丰丰走走

快走吧．
他一個人走了．
他們還沒走呢．
你走得太快了．

他最喜歡睡覺．
我中文說得最好．
你最喜歡誰？
他最愛喝湯．

最

丶冂日旦旱昇昇
昇昇最最

我更愛唱英文歌．
他更喜歡吃中國菜．
我走得更快．
美國筆更貴．

更

一丶冂冂百更更

時

日 旷 時 時

丨 冂 日 日 日

你要買那樣兒的筆？
這樣兒的紙賣多少錢？
我不要那樣兒的．
他要不要這樣兒的？

樣

樣

怎麼能用筷子吃？
你怎麼不去呢？
他怎麼不會說中文．
你怎麼不到樓上去．

怎

怎 怎

你看什麼?

我看中文書.

他今天晚上不想看書.

我昨天早上看見他了.

我愛聽他唱歌.

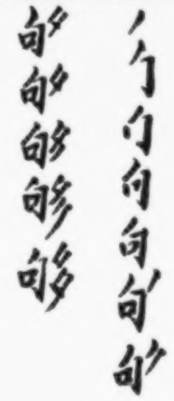
我常常聽他說中文.

他聽不見我唱歌.

他們最喜歡聽唱歌.

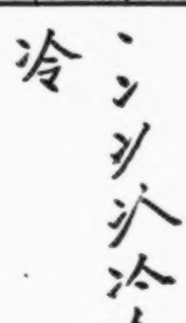
九塊錢够不够?
一杯茶就够了.
我的錢不够.
你的紙怎麼不够了?

够



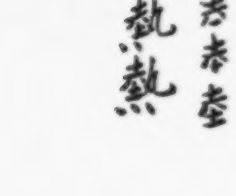
今天冷不冷?
今天不太冷.
昨天晚上最冷了.
明天更冷,你知道嗎?

冷



昨天真熱．
今天不熱也不冷．
那兒太熱了．
我們樓上真熱．

熱



453

APPENDIX I
ABBREVIATIONS

A	adverb
Adj	adjective
AV	auxiliary verb
CV	co-verb
dirO	direct object
IE	idiomatic expression
indO	indirect object
M	measure
MA	movable adverb
N	noun
neg	negative
Nu	number
O	object
P	particle
PE	purpose expression
proN	pronoun
PW	place word
QW	question word
RV	resultative compound verb
S	subject
Sp	specifier
TW	time word
V	verb
VO	verb-object compound

APPENDIX II

STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

	Unit
Answer Forms	I
Repetition of the Verb of the Question	I
Omission of the Subject of the Question	I
Auxiliary Verbs, Sentence with Auxiliary Verbs	VI
Ba, Probability with Ba	VI
Ba, Request with Ba	VI
Bă, the Bă Construction	XIII
Bǐ, Comparison with Bǐ	XII
Bu, Negative Forms with Bu	I
Chyù, Purpose of Going	III
S CV O V PE	III
S CV O PE V	III
S CV O V PE V	III
Clauses Functioning as Nouns	XIV
Comparison	XIV
Co-verb of Agent	XIV
Describing Manner with an Object	IX
-De in Computing	V
De Shŕhou, Specific Relative Time with De Shŕhou	XIII
Dōu, Different Senses with Dōu	II
Expressing Manner in Command	IX
Gèng and Dzwèi, Degree of Comparison with Gèng and Dzwèi	X
Gwò, Experience with Gwò	X
Inclusiveness and Exclusiveness	XIII
Indefinite Numbers	XV
Inquiring about Prices	V
-Je, Continuance with -Je	XIII
-Le, Changed Status with -Le	IV
With Adjectives	IV
With Auxiliary Verbs	IV
-Le, Changed Status with -Le (negative verb)	V
-Le, Completed Action with -Le	III

-Le, Imminent Action with -Le	VII
Le, Imminent Change of Status with Le	VI
Le, Measured Object and Le	XV
Lǐ, Distance with Lǐ	XI
Méi, Incomplete Action with Méi	III
Méi, Negative Form with Méi	II
Modification with Adjectives	V
Multiple Objects	IV
Ne, Continuance with Ne	VI
Ne, Questions with Ne	VIII
Nde N	II
N N	I
N Ne Question Form	IV
N Sp-M N	VI
Nu-M N	IV
Object, A Sentence as an Object	I
Omission of Subject and Object	III
Ordinal Numbers	XI
O S V	II
Positions of Apiece	V
ProN N	VI
ProN (N) PW	IV
PW Yǒu N	III
Question Forms	I
Affirmative Statement with Ma	I
Negative Statement with Ma	I
Simple Choice-Type Question	I
Question with Question Word	I
Choice-Type Question with Object	II
Choice between Two Predicates	II
Choice between Two Subjects	II
Question Emphatic (Choice-Type)	VIII
Question Forms of Completed and Incomplete Action	III
Question Words in a Sentence	III
Question and Answer	III
Without Question Suffix Ma	III

S A Adj	I
S Adj	I
S CV PW (N) V	III
S Dzài PW	VI
S Dzwò N Chyù (Lái)	VII
Shì...De Construction	XII
Similarity and Dissimilarity	XV
Sp-M-N	III
Sums of Money	V
S V Dàu...Chyù (Lái)	XI
S Vde Adj	VIII
(S) Vde N	IX
S V Dzài PW Construction	XII
S V indO dirO	V
S Vle O, Jyòu	VII
S V N	I
S V O	II
S V PE	VI
S YiV (O), (S) Jyòu V (O)	VIII
Time, Inquiring about Time of Day	VII
Time, Larger Unit of Time	VII
Time, Telling Time by the Clock	VII
Tsúng...Lái Pattern	VI
-Tsz and -Hwéi, Occasion and Occurrence with -Tsz and -Hwéi	XII
Vde Sp-M N	IX
Yàushr...Jyòu...Structure	X
Yìdyǎr or -De Dwō, Comparison with Yìdyǎr or -De Dwō	XIII
Yǒu, in Measurement	XI
Yǒu, Omission of Subject with Yǒu	VI

APPENDIX III

VOCABULARY

			Unit	
a	sentence suffix, suggesting exclamation	P	1	
àai	like to; love to	AV	4	
àai	oh!	IE	14	
àaichíngpyāndz	love-story movie	N	10	
àaiya	(exclamation)	IE	14	
bā	eight	NU	3	S
bǎ	take hold of	CV	13	
ba	sentence suffix implying probability of request	P	6	
-bǎ	a unit measure for sppon, knife, fork, etc.	M	6	
Bàba	Daddy (father)	N	6	
báhau	eighth (the eighth day)	TW	3	
bǎi	set; put	V	6	
Báidwèi	White (uniformed) Team	N	14	
bàinyán	go to extend New Year's greeting	V(VO)	8	
-bàn	half	Nu	5	
-bàng	pound	M	11	
báu	thin	Adj	5	
bǎu	full (for eating)	Adj	4	S
bàu	newspaper	N	3	S
bāugwǒ	parcel	N	11	
báusyǎn	insure	V(VO)	11	
Báywe	August (eight-month)	TW	3	S
bèi	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	14	
-bēi	cup; glass	M	4	
bēijyù	tragedy	N	10	
-běn	volume (for books)	M	5	
bǐ	compare with	CV	12	

			Unit	
bídz	nose	N	14	S
bǐjìběr	notebook	N	5	
bìng	sickness	N	13	
bīngbàng	popsicle	N	9	
bǐnggān	biscuit	N	8	
bīngjilíng	ice cream	N	10	
bìngrén	patient	N	13	
bīngshwěi	ice water	N	4	S
bǐsài	match; contest	N	14	
bìshǔ	escape summer (pass summer at a summer resort)	V(VO)	15	
bù	not; no	A	1	
búdà	not too	A	14	
búgwò	but; however	A	9	
bùshǎu	quite a few	Adj	5	S
bútswò	nice; not bad	Adj	4	
(nà) búyaujǐn	that's nothing; never mind	IE	3	
búyùng	not necessarily	A	13	
bwómǔ	aunt	N	7	
byáuyǎn	perform	V	9	
-byār	-side	M	12	
byé	other; different	Adj	5	
byé	don't (contracted form of búyàu)	AV	7	
byé kāi wánsyàu	don't joke with me; quit kidding	IE	10	
byé kèchi	"don't be too polite"	IE	8	
byé máng a	don't hurry; take it easy	IE	8	
chá	tea	N	8	
chà	lack; be short	V	7	
chàbudwō	almost; about	IE	14	
chàbyé	difference	N	14	

			Unit	
cháng	long (length)	Adj	15	
chàng(gēr)	sing	V(VO)	9	
chángchang	often; usually	A	2	
Chángchéng	Great Wall	PW	15	
chàngpyār	phonograph record	N	2	
chăufàn	fried rice	N	4	S
chăumyàn	fried noodles	N	4	S
chē	wheeled vehicle	N	7	
Chén	a common Chinese surname	N	3	
chēng	weigh	V	11	
chéng	city	N	6	
chī	seven	Nu	3	S
chìchē	automobile	N	11	
chígwài	strange	Adj	14	
chĭng	please; invite; request	V	5	
chĭng	treat	V	9	
Chīngdău	Tsingtau (a city in Shantung province)	PW	15	
chĭng dzwò	please sit down	IE	8	
chĭngkè	treat	V(VO)	10	
chīngtsài	vegetable; green vegetable	N	4	
chĭngwèn	may I ask you	IE	7	
Chíywe	July (seven-month)	TW	3	S
chōuti	drawer	N	6	
chī	eat	V	4	
chīfàn	eat (meals)	V(VO)	4	
chūchăng	come out to the field	V	14	
chūchyu	go out	V	10	S
chūlai	come out	V	10	S
chwān	wear; put on (clothes, shoes)	V	7	
chwán	ship	N	12	
chwán	pass	V	14	
chwānghu	window	N	12	

			Unit	
chwēi	play (a musical instrument by blowing)	V	9	
chyán	money	N	5	
chyán(tou)	front	PW	12	
chyángdzǒu	seize and run; rob	RV	14	
chyánnyán	the year before last year	TW	12	
chyānbǐ	pencil	N	5	
chyánpái	front row	N	10	
chyántyan	the day before yesterday	TW	2	S
chyóu	ball	N	14	
chyù	go	V	3	
dǎ	knit	V	6	
dǎ	call (telephone)	V	7	S
dǎ	hit	V	9	
dà	big; large	Adj	5	
dàgài	probably	A(MA)	3	
dài	take or bring along	V	8	
dàichyóu	carry ball	V(VO)	14	
dàifu	doctor (medical)	N	13	
dǎjēn	have a shot (injection)	V(VO)	13	
dāngrán	of course	A	9	
dǎswan	plan	V	15	
dàu	functioning as "to go to" together with chyù in dàu...(place)...chyù.	CV	3	
dàu	arrive	V	7	
dāuchā	knife and fork	N	4	
dǎuméi	bad luck	IE	14	
dàyī	overcoat	N	2	S
-de	noun suffix which makes a modifier out of the noun to which it is attached	P	2	

			Unit	
Dégwo	Germany	PW	2	S
děi	must	AV	7	
děng	wait	V	7	
Déwén	German	N	2	S
dì-	ordinal prefix to numbers	P	11	
dìdi	younger brother	N	6	
dìfang	place	N	15	
dōu	all; both; in all cases	A	2	
dūngsyi	thing	N	5	
dùngwuywán	zoo	N	7	
dwèi	correct; right	Adj	14	
-dwèi	team	M	14	
dwèibujù	excuse me; I'm sorry	IE	8	
dwèile	that's right (yes, it is)	IE	4	
dwèiywán	member of team	N	14	
dwō	many; much	Adj	5	
dwó (me)	very much	A	9	
dwōshau	how much? how many?	Nu	5	
-dyǎn	o'clock; hour	M	7	
dyànhwà	telephone	N	7	S
dyànshì	television	N	2	
dyànyǐngr	movie	N	10	
dyànywán	clerk; salesman	N	5	S
dyédz	saucer	N	6	
dyōu	lose; be lost	V	12	
dzài	again (in the future	A	3	
dzài	then	A	7	
dzài	"be at" a point in space or time	CV	3	
dzài	be at, in or on	V	6	
dzàijyàn	good-bye; see you again	IE	1	
dzájì	magazine	N	3	S
dzǎu	early; good morning	Adj	1	

			Unit	
dzǎushang	morning	TW	2	S
dzěmma	how, in what way? why, how is it that?	A	4	
dzěmma bàn ne?	what shall I do?	IE	15	
dzěmma jèmma	why so	IE	10	
dzìdyǎn	dictionary	N	3	
dzǒu	walk; go; leave	V	8	
dzrán	natural science	N	2	
dzwèi	the most; -est	A	10	
dzwěi (ba)	mouth	N	14	S
dzwò	do	V	2	
dzwò	sit	V	3	
dzwò	ride; take (transportation)	CV	7	
dzwǒbyār	left (side)	PW	6	
dzwòr	seat	N	12	
dzwótyan	yesterday	TW	2	S
è	hungry	Adj	4	
èr	two	Nu	3	S
ěrdwō	ear	N	14	S
Èrywe	February (two-month)	TW	3	S
fá	penalize	V	14	
Fàgwo	France	PW	2	S
fàn	meal; cooked rice	N	4	
fàng	put	V	12	
fàngjyà	have a vacation	VO	15	
fàngsyīn	rest assured	Adj	12	
fàngwǎr	restaurant	N	4	
fàntīng	dining room; cafeteria	N	4	S
fāshāu	have a fever	V	13	
Fàwén	French	N	2	S
fēi	fly	V	12	

			Unit
fēijī	airplane	N	12
-fēn	cent	M	5
-fēn	minute	M	7
-fēng	unit measure for letters	M	11
fēngjǐng	landscape	N	12
-fēr	point	M	14
fùchin	father	N	15
fùjìn	neighborhood	N	11
fùmǔ	parents	N	15
gàn	do	V	6
gāngbǐ	fountain pen; western-style pen	N	5
gāng(gāng)	just this minute	A	10
gāngtsái	just a moment ago	A	9
gǎnmào	flu	N	13
gàn shémma	why	IE	8
gāu	high	Adj	13
gāusyìng	delightful; enjoyable	Adj	8
-ge	for person or thing	M	3
gèdz	height; physical stature	N	14
gēge	elder brother	N	6
gěi	give	V	5
gěi	for; to (for benefit of)	CV	8
gěi	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	14
gēn	be with; and; follow	CV	4
gèng	still more; even; -er	A	10
gòu	enough	Adj	9
gǔ	drum	N	9
gūngfu	leisure time	N	7
gūnggùng	public	Adj	11
gūngsyǐ	congratulate	V	8
gùshr	story	N	10

			Unit	
gwàhàu	register	V(VO)	11	
gwèi	expensive	Adj	5	
gwèisyìng	what is your (sur)name?	IE	7	
gwò	pass	V	13	
-gwo	experiential suffix to verbs	P	10	
gwònyán	celebrate New Year	VO	8	
hā	ha!	IE	14	
hái	still; yet	A	3	
hǎi	sea	N	15	
hǎibyār	beach	N	15	
háishr	had better	A	8	
Hángjou	Hangchow (a city south of Shanghai)	N	12	
hángkūng	aviation	N	11	
hǎu	good; well	Adj	1	
hǎu	ready; complete	Adj	6	
hǎu	very	A	7	
-hau	-(the day of the month)	TW	3	
hǎu a	fine (all right)	IE	4	
hǎu buhǎu	how about it?	IE	7	
hǎuchr̄	delicious; tasty	Adj	4	S
hǎukàn	good-looking	Adj	2	
-hàur	number	M	14	
hǎusyàng	seem	V	12	
hǎutīng	good to listen to	Adj	9	
hǎuwár	of fun	Adj	12	
hē	drink	V	4	
he	hey!	IE	4	
hēibáide	black and white	Adj	10	
hěn	very; quite	A	I	
-hér	box	M	8	
hòu	thick	Adj	5	

			Unit	
hòunyán	the year after next year	TW	12	S
hòupái	rear row	N	10	
hòutyan	the day after tomorrow	TW	2	S
Húngdwèi	Red (uniformed) Team	N	14	
Hwá-mǐng	a boy's name	N	7	
hwèi	can; know how to	AV	4	
hwèi	will	AV	12	
-hwéi	a time; occurrence	M	12	
hwǒchē	train	N	12	
hwǒchējàn	train station	N	12	
jájī	fried chicken	N	4	
Jāng	common Chinese surname	N	2	
-jāng	a unit measure for paper, pictures, tables, etc.	M	5	
jǎu	find; look for	V	3	
jǎu	make change (money)	V	5	
Jàu	Chinese surname	N	9	
jāujǐ	worried; excited	Adj	9	
jāulyáng	catch a cold	V(VO)	13	
jàusyàng	take a picture	V(VO)	15	
jàusyàngjī	camera	N	15	
-je	verb suffix, indicating continuance	P	3	
jei-	this (here)	SP	3	
jèihwěr	right now	TW	13	
jèi lyǎngtyan	these days	IE	13	
jènma	in this way; to this degree; so	A	4	S
jēn	truly; really	A	4	
jēnde a!	really!	IE	15	
jèng(dzài)	just in the midst of	A	8	
jènghǎu	just; exactly	A	11	

			Unit	
jēn kěsyī	what a pity	IE	14	
jèr	here	PW	3	
jī	chicken	N	4	
jǐ-	how many; how much; several; a few	Nu	7	
jì	send; mail	V	11	
jì	remember	V	15	
-jíle	suffix to adjectives, indicating extreme degree	P	6	
jìn	near	Adj	11	
jìnchyù	go in	V	10	
jìnlái	come in	V	10	
jīnnyán	this year	TW	12	S
jīntyan	today	TW	2	
-jī	a unit measure for writing brushes and similar slender objects	M	5	
-jī	unit measure for ships	M	12	S
jǐ	paper	N	5	
jīdau	know; know of or about	V	3	
jìfú	uniform	N	9	
jǐhwēi	conduct	V	9	
Jǐ-píng	boy's name	N	9	
jǐyàu	as long as	A(MA)	10	
jǐywán	clerk	N	13	S
jù	live	V	12	
jūng	o'clock; clock	N	7	
jǔng	swell	V	13	
jùng	heavy	Adj	11	
Jūnggwo	China	PW	2	
jūngjyàr	middle	PW	10	
Jūng-shān	name of Dr. Sun Yat-sen	N	11	
Jūngwén	the Chinese language	N	1	
jwōdz	desk; table	N	3	

			Unit	
jwŭn	sharp; punctual (time)	A	7	
jwŭn	sharp	Adj	14	
jyā	home	N	6	
-jyà	unit measure for airplanes	M	12	
jyàchyán	cost; price	N	5	
jyàdz	shelf; luggage rack	N	12	
Jyā-jyùn	a Chinese boy's name	N	3	
jyàngyóu	soy sauce	N	6	
jyàu	tell (somebody to do something)	V	6	
jyàu	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	14	S
jyāujywăr	film	N	15	
jyàushr̀	classroom	N	3	S
jyē	street	N	11	
jyē	meet; pick up a person at a terminal or station	V	12	
jyĕfu	brother-in-law (elder sister's husband)	N	6	
jyĕjye	elder sister	N	6	
jyēkŏur	block; intersection	N	11	
jyèshau	introduce	V	9	
jyìnchyu	go in	V	10	
jyŏu	nine	Nu	3	S
jyŏu	wine; liquor	N	6	
jyŏu	long (time)	A	7	
jyòu	only; just	A	3	
jyŏubēi	wine glass	N	6	
(nà) jyòu jèiyàng ba	let's do it this way	IE	8	
jyòu nèmma bàn	let's do it that way!	IE	7	
Jyŏuywe	September (nine-month)	TW	3	S
-jyù	sentence; utterance	M	7	
jyúdzshwĕi	orange juice	N	10	
jyùtsān	group dinner or any group party (usually no host)	N	9	

			Unit	
jywéde	feel; think	V	12	
kāi	open	V	7	
kāi	start (engine)	V	12	
kāishř	begin	V	14	
kāiyǎn	start to perform (movie and show)	V	10	
kàn	watch; look	V	2	
kàn	think	V	8	
kànchū	reveal	V	14	
kànjyan	see	V(RV)	14	
kǎu	take an examination	V	3	
kě	indeed; certainly; however	A	11	
kè	subject of study	N	3	S
-kè	quarter of an hour	M	7	
kèchi	polite; standing on ceremony	Adj	8	
kěnéng	possibly	A(MA)	15	
kèren	guest; patron	N	5	S
kěshr	but; however	A(MA)	4	
késou	cough	V	13	
kètīng	parlor; living room	N	6	
kéyi	may; can; be permitted to	AV	4	
kwài	quickly; soon	A	6	
-kwài	piece (lit. lump)	M	4	
-kwài	dollar (Chinese monetary unit)	M	5	
kwàidz	chopsticks	N	4	
lǎbā	trumpet	N	9	
lái	come	V	6	
lǎu	always	A	6	
lǎushr̄	teacher	N	1	
-le	verb and sentence suffix	P	3	
lèi	tired	Adj	8	

			Unit	
lěng	cold	Adj	15	
lí	from (be separated or distant from)	CV	11	
Lǐ	a Chinese surname	N	1	S
lǐ(tou)	inside	PW	6	
-lǐ	a Chinese li (1/3 mile)	M	15	
Lǐbaièr	Tuesday	TW	3	S
Lǐbailyòu	Saturday	TW	3	S
Lǐbaisān	Wednesday	TW	3	S
Lǐbaisì	Thursday	TW	3	S
Lǐbaityan	Sunday	TW	3	S
Lǐbaiwǔ	Friday	TW	3	S
Lǐbaiyī	Monday	TW	3	S
Lín	a Chinese surname	N	7	
líng	zero	Nu	5	
lóufáng	building (of more than one story)	N	12	
-lǒur	basket	M	8	
lǒushàng	upstairs	PW	6	
lóusyà	downstairs	N	6	S
lù	road	N	11	
-lù	route number of bus	M	11	
lyǎn	face	N	14	S
lyǎng-	two or a couple of	Nu	5	
-lyàng	unit measure for wheeled vehicles	M	12	
lyànsyí	practice; warm up	V	14	
lyòu	six	Nu	3	S
lyóusyíng	popular	Adj	13	
Lyòuywe	June	TW	3	S
lyǔsyíng	travel	V	15	
ma	sentence suffix used to convert a declarative sentence into an interrogative sentence	P	1	

			Unit	
Mā(ma)	Mommy (mother)	N	6	
máfan	troublesome	Adj	11	
mǎi	buy	V	5	
mài	sell	V	5	
màipyàude	ticket clerk	N	10	S
Mǎ-lì	girl's name	N	9	
màn	slow	Adj	12	
máng	busy	Adj	1	
máng shémma?	what's the hurry?	IE	9	
mànmār	slowly	A	9	
mànmār lái	go slowly; do it slowly; take your time	IE	9	
-máu	dime	M	5	
máubǐ	Chinese writing brush	N	5	S
máuyī	sweater	N	2	S
méi	no; not; have not; did not	A	2	
Měi-fāng	a Chinese girl's name	N	2	
Měigwo	America	PW	2	
měi(lì)	beautiful	Adj	15	
mèimei	younger sister	N	6	
méi shemma	don't mention it; it's nothing at all; not at all	IE	8	
mén	door; gate	N	7	
míngnyán	next year	TW	12	S
míngsyìnpyàr	post card	N	11	
míngtyan	tomorrow	TW	2	S
mǔchīn	mother (more formal than māma)	N	6	S
myànbāu	bread	N	14	
nà	in that case	IE	6	
nà dzěmma hǎu yìsz	that would be embarrassing	IE	10	
nán	difficult	Adj	2	
nánjújyǎu	actor in major role	N	10	S

			Unit	
nǎr	where? (question word)	PW	3	
nǎrde hwà	not at all	IE	2	
ne	sentence suffix usually with méi to indicate incomplete action	P	3	
ne	sentence suffix indicating continuance of action	P	6	
ne	sentence suffix - functions as simplified question form to avoid unnecessary repetition of what is already understood	P	4	
něi-	which?	SP	3	
nèi-	that (there)	SP	3	
nèikē	medical department	N	13	
něityan	which day?	TW	3	
nèmma	in that way; to that degree	A	4	
néng	can; be able	AV	4	
nèr	there	PW	3	
nǐ	you (singular)	ProN	1	
nǐ hǎu a?	how are you?	IE	1	
nǐ jēn tǎuyàn	you are being silly! (you are really disgusting)	IE	7	
nǐmen	you (plural)	ProN	1	S
nǐn	a polite form of nǐ	ProN	1	
nyànshū	study	V(VO)	4	S
nyóunǎi	milk	N	4	
nyóupái	beefsteak	N	4	
nyújújyǎu	actress in major role	N	10	
O!	oh, I see	IE	7	
pàng	fat	Adj	4	
pángbyār	side	PW	12	
pánnǐsyīlǐn	penicillin	N	13	
-pár	plate	M	4	

			Unit	
pǎu	run	V	14	
pèng	hit; meet	V	14	
péngyou	friend	N	9	
píngsyìn	ordinary mail	N	11	
pǔtūng	ordinary	Adj	13	
pyányi	cheap	Adj̄	5	
-pyàr	slice	M	4	
pyàu	ticket	N	10	
pyàulyang	pretty	Adj	7	
ràng	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	14	S
rè	warm; hot	Adj	15	
rén	man; person	N	2	
rènau	prosperous; bustling	Adj	12	
rénren	everybody	N	15	
rènshr	know; recognize; be acquainted with	V	9	
ròu	meat	N	4	
rúngyi	easy	Adj	2	S
sān	three	Nu	3	S
săngdz (hóulung)	throat	N	13	
sānlwúnchē	Chinese pedicab	N	11	
Sānywe	March (three-month)	TW	3	S
shān	mountain	N	15	
shàng	functioning as "to go to" together with chyù	CV	6	
shàngchē	get on a car	V(VO)	12	
Shànghăi	Shanghai	PW	12	
shàng(tou)	top; upper end or side	PW	3	
shău	few; little	Adj	5	S
shău	short	V	6	
sháur	spoon	N	6	

			Unit	
shèhwèi	social science	N	2	
shéi	who	ProN	1	
shémma	what; any	ProN	2	
shēn	stretch	V	13	
shénchì	impressive; the "air" surrounding a person	Adj	9	
shétou	tongue	N	13	
shǒu	hand	N	14	
shòu	skinny; thin	Adj	4	
shōujyù	receipt	N	11	
shǒulán	guard the basket	V(VO)	14	
shòushāng	get wounded	V(VO)	14	
shŕ	ten	Nu	3	S
shì	to be	V	1	
shì	try	V	13	
shì(ching)	affair; undertaking	N	7	
Shrèrywe	December (twelve-month)	TW	3	S
shŕhou	time	N	7	
shīmǔ	teacher's wife	N	8	
shŕyànshì	science laboratory	N	3	S
Shŕyīywe	November (eleven-month)	TW	3	S
Shŕywe	October (ten-month)	TW	3	
shū	book	N	3	
shū	lose (the game)	V	14	
shūfu	comfortable	Adj	12	
shǔjyà	summer vacation	N	15	
shūjyàdz	bookshelves	N	3	
shùsywé	mathematics	N	3	
shwéigwǒ	fruit	N	8	
shwèi(jyàu)	sleep	V(VO)	8	
shwōhwà	carry on conversation	V(VO)	6	
Sūjou	Soochow (a city near Hangchow)	PW	15	
sùnglǐ	present gift	V(VO)	8	

			Unit	
swàn	count	V	5	
swànpan	abacus	N	5	
swéibyàn	as one wishes	IE	9	
swóyi	so; therefore	A	11	
syàchē	get off a wheeled vehicle	V(VO)	11	
syà(ge)lǐbài	next week	TW	15	
syān	first	A	3	
syàndzài	now	TW	6	
syǎng	want to; consider to; plan to	AV	4	
syàng	resemble	V	10	
syāngdz	luggage; box; suitcase	N	12	
syāngsya	countryside	N	6	
syānsheng	Mr.; sir	N	1	S
syǎu	small	Adj	5	
syáujye	Miss; young lady	N	9	
syǎusyǐn	careful	Adj	12	
-syē	quantity of; several	M	5	
Syībānyá	Spain	PW	2	S
Syībānyáwén	Spanish	N	2	S
Syībupyāndz	Western movie	N	10	
syǐhwan	like; enjoy	V, AV	2, 10	
syǐjyù	comedy	N	10	S
syìn	mail; letter	N	11	
syǐng	satisfactory; all right	Adj	6	
syǐng	good	Adj	14	
syìng	be surnamed	V	7	
syìngkwēi	fortunately	A	14	
syǐtǐ	exercise	N	3	
syōusyi	rest	V	13	
sywéhwèi	learn	V(RV)	15	
sywésheng	student	N	1	S
sywésyàu	school	N	3	S

			Unit	
sì	four	Nu	3	S
Sìywe	April (four-month)	TW	3	S
tā	he; him	ProN	1	
tài	too; excessively	A	4	
tāmen	they; them	ProN	1	S
tán	talk	V	8	
tāng	soup	N	4	
táng	candy; sugar	V	8	
tèbyé	special	Adj	13	
tèbyé	specially	A	13	
téng	painful	Adj	13	
tīng	listen to	V	2	
tīngshwō	they say; I hear people say	IE	15	
tóu	head	N	14	S
-tou	head; end; side	PW	3	
tóulán	shoot the basket	V(VO)	14	
tóuténg	have a headache	V	13	
tsái	only then; not...until	A	7	
tsái	only	A	9	
tsài	vegetables; a dish of food other than a staple	N	4	
tsáipàn	referee	N	14	
tsǎisède	color	N	10	
tsānchē	dining car	N	12	
tsānjyā	join	V	8	
tsù	vinegar	N	6	
tsúng	from	CV	6	
tsúngchyán	formerly	TW	15	
-tsì	a time; occasion	M	12	
túngsywé	schoolmate	N	7	
túshūgwǎn	library	N	3	
twánbài	exchange New Year's greeting in a group	N	8	

			Unit	
twěi	leg	N	14	S
-tyān	day	M	15	
tyānchi	weather	N	15	
tyāntyān	everyday	TW	6	
tyàu	jump	V	14	
-tyáu	line	M	11	
tyē	stick; affix	V	11	
wài(tou)	outside	PW	6	
wàigwo	foreign country	PW	5	
wàikē	surgery	N	13	
wán	finish; get through	V	8	
wān	bowl	N	6	
wān	late	Adj	7	
-wān	bowl	M	4	
wānfàn	supper	N	7	
Wáng	a common Chinese surname	N	1	
wàng	towards	CV	11	
wàng	forget	V	6	
wānhwèi	evening party	N	9	
wānshang	evening; night	TW	2	
wár	play	V	6	
wèi!	hello	IE	7	
-wèi	person (polite form)	M	9	
wèn	ask	V	1	S
-wén	language	N	2	
wēndù	temperature	N	13	
wǒ	I; me	ProN	1	
wǒmen	we; us	ProN	1	S
wǔ	five	Nu	3	S
Wǔywe	May (five-month)	TW	3	S

			Unit	
ya!	added at the end of a sentence to express something unexpected	IE	9	
yǎn	perform	V	10	
Yáng	Chinese surname	N	9	
-yàngr	kind; sort	M	5	
yǎnjīng	eyes	N	14	
yàu	want; like	V	4	
yàu	going to; expect to; shall; will	AV	5	
yàu	medicine; drug	N	13	
yàujǐn	serious	Adj	13	
yàushr	if; in case	A(MA)	10	
yě	also; too; either; all; both; in all cases	A	2	
yè	night	N	8	
-ye	night	M	8	
yésyu	perhaps	A(MA)	15	
yī	one	Nu	3	S
-yī	garment	M	2	S
yìbǎi	100	Nu	5	S
yìchyān	1,000	Nu	5	S
yídìng	necessarily; certain	A	6	
yìdyǎr	a little; a bit; some	N	4	
yǐdz	chair	N	3	S
yígùng	altogether	A(MA)	5	
yìhwěr	a moment	TW	3	
yǐjing	already	A	3	
yíkwàr	together	A	4	
yíng	win	V	14	
Yīngwén	the English language	N	1	
yīnwei	because; for	A(MA)	10	
yīshang	clothes	N	2	
yìsz	idea	N	8	

			Unit	
yíwàn	10,000	Nu	5	S
yíwànwan	one hundred million	Nu	5	S
yíyàng	one kind; the same	Adj	10	
yīyuàn	hospital	N	13	
Yíywe	January (one-month)	TW	3	S
yǒu	have	V	2	
yòu	again	A	9	
yòu	...and also...	A	13	
yòubyār	right (side)	PW	6	S
yóu(jèng)jyú	post office	N	11	
yóujyǎn	air letter	N	11	
yóupyào	stamp	N	11	
yóusyíng	parade	N	9	
yóutǔng	mailbox	N	11	
yóuyǔng	swim	V	15	
yóuyǔngyī	swimming suit	N	15	
yú	fish	N	4	
yùbei	prepare	V	3	
yùng	use	V	4	
yùng	with	CV	11	
ywǎn	far	Adj	11	
ywē	make an appointment	V	7	
-ywè	month	TW	3	
ywèdwèi	musical band	N	9	